

# Learn Macrame



Learn Macrame is a knot gallery of detailed instructions for tying a variety of basic as well as unique knots. You should use scrap pieces of material and practice each of these decorative knots individually.

**After you have practiced**, choose an **easy** project from the many free patterns in the other areas of this site. This way you can learn Macrame while you are making something interesting.

The decorative knots found in most Macrame patterns are listed below. Just click on the images of the knots you want to learn. The step-by-step process, with photos, will come up in a new window.

To learn Macrame properly, I recommend that beginners practice **all the basic knots**, which are labeled **Basic** or **Vintage** above the image.

**Vintage Macrame** is a real interest of mine. When I first began to learn Macrame, I didn't know about the older decorative knots used in the past. Many knots featured in the early days of this craft are truly unique, and you may not find them in modern Macrame books.

**Chinese Macrame** features a variety of **combination** knots. Some have been around for over 2000 years. Entire families used to create a variety of elaborate combinations to form new Chinese knots.

Several basic techniques are listed near the bottom of the Learn Macrame page. If you follow the step-by-step process for each of these design, you will progress in skill and be able combine them to create your own works of art.

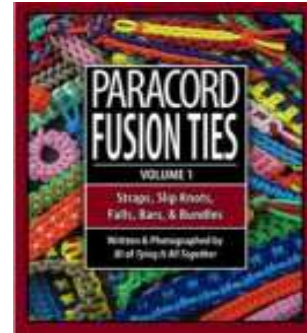
I've also added a variety of **Celtic Knots**. These highly artistic, interwoven designs are not very well known. They are beautiful and perfect for making handcrafted jewelry and fashion accessories.

Several of the knots I have listed here in Learn Macrame came from the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

**Designs by JD Lenzen.**

These combination knots can be used for jewelry, key chains, purse straps, and a variety of other projects.

(Click on the image or link to go to the knot gallery, which contains [video tutorials](#))



Here's the key for the terms above the images:

- **NEW!** = Recently added
- **Basic** = Commonly used in Macrame projects
- **Fusion** = Listed on the Fusion Knots website
- **Vintage** = Knot used frequently in the early 1900's or prior

Please visit the home page for instructions on how to convert these pages to a PDF prior to printing.

## Square Knot Designs

**Basic**



[Square Knot](#)

**Vintage**



[Picot Designs](#)

**Basic**



[Alternating Square Knots](#)

**Basic**



[Alternating V Patterns](#)

**Vintage**



[Snowflake Design](#)

**Vintage**



[Spiral Stitch](#)

**Vintage**



[Square Knot Button](#)

**Basic**



[Square Knot Sennits](#)

**Fusion**



[Ara Batur Bar](#)

**Vintage**



[Fleur de Lis](#)



[Portuguese Sennit](#)



[Caged Solomon Bar](#)

---

## Half Hitch Designs

**Basic**



Alternating  
Half Hitch

**Vintage**



Half Hitch  
Spiral

**Vintage**



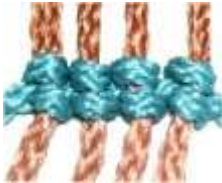
Basket Stitch

**Basic**



Half Hitch  
Patterns

**Basic**



Vertical  
Half Hitch

**Basic**



Double  
Half Hitch



Cockscomb  
Knot



Double Half Hitch  
Patterns

**Vintage**



Shell Knot



Spiral Design

**Fusion**



Guitar Bar

**Vintage**



Empty  
Diamond

**Vintage**



Vintage  
Diamonds

---



# LARKS HEAD DESIGNS

**Basic**



Larks Head Knot

**Basic**



Vertical Larks Head

**Basic**



Larks Head Designs

**Basic**



Larks Head Sennits

**Vintage**



Double Buttonhole

**Vintage**



Buttonhole Scallops



Buttonhole Clasp

---

## MOUNTING & FINISHING KNOTS

Basic



Wrapped Knot

Fusion



Wrapped Ring

Basic



Overhand Knot

Basic



Barrel Knot

Basic



Double Half Hitch Mount

Vintage



Chain Picot Mount

Vintage



Unique Mount Designs

Vintage



Venetian Picot Mount

Vintage



Matthew Walker Knot



Linen Stitch



Oysterman Knot



Stevedore Knot

Basic



Clove Hitch



Spanish Hitching



Cats Paw Hitch

Basic



Slipknot



# UNIQUE DECORATIVE KNOTS

Fusion



Lambda Knot

Vintage



Triangle Knot

Fusion



Eternity Knot



Linked Overhand Knots

Vintage



Knife Knot

Fusion



Clasped Hands Knot



Monkey Fist

Basic

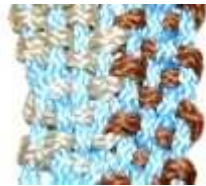


Lanyard Knots

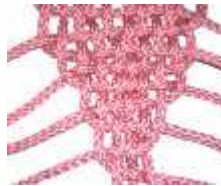
Fusion



Angel Wings



Interlocking Weave



Clew Knot



Masthead Mat Technique

Fusion



Ashoka Chakra

Fusion



Barnacle Knot

Vintage



Pitcher Knot

Fusion



Trilobite Knot



# BRAIDS and BARS

Fusion



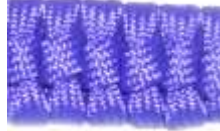
Feather Bar

Fusion



Switchback Strap

Fusion



Stitched Switchback

Fusion



Lizard Tail

Fusion



Zipper Sennit

Fusion



Genoese Zipper

Fusion



Double Zipper

Vintage



Bugle Braid

Fusion



Coyote Trail

Fusion



Blaze Bar

Fusion



Jagged Ladder Bar

Vintage



Chain Sennit

Fusion



Ladder Strap

Fusion



Corset Spine

Fusion



River Bar

Fusion



Endless Falls

Fusion



Bug Belly Bar

Fusion



Aztec Sun Bar

Fusion



Rattlesnake

Vintage



Interlaced

Bar

Plaits

Fusion



Link Weave

Fusion



Round Braid

Fusion



Bush Bar

Fusion



Woven Wave

Fusion



Bonobo Bar

Fusion



Crashing Waves Bar

Fusion



Asclepius Rod Bar

Fusion



Mycelium Bar

Fusion



Mated Snake Knot

Fusion



Spring Sinnet

Fusion



Mystical Chain

Fusion



Snake Braid





## CHINESE MACRAME KNOTS



Cloverleaf Knot



Brocade Knot



Chinese Button knot



Chinese Snake Knot



Chinese Step Knot



Cross Knot + Diamond Stitch



Double Connection



Hanger Knot



Plafond Knot



Mystic Knot



Pagoda Knot



Pipa Knot



Crown Knot



Crown Designs



Tea Cup Knot



Maedate Knot





# CELTIC KNOTS



Celtic Button Knot



Josephine Knot



Sailors Knot



Celtic Triangle Knot



Handbasket Knot



Ring Knots



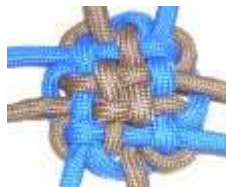
Celtic Circle



Celtic Square Knot



Star Knot



Celtic Weave



Hole in Your Heart



Celtic Mat



Celtic Bar



Turks Head Knot



Celtic Heart



Bumblebee Knot

Fusion

Fusion

Fusion

Fusion



Round Knots



Panel Knot



Pendant Knot



Tree of Life

**Fusion**



River Knot

**Fusion**



Woven  
Triangles

**Fusion**



Double Coin  
Patterns

**Fusion**



Ring of Coins

**Fusion**



Kinky Lovers  
Knot



Figure Eight  
Patterns



Globe Knot

Here's the key for the terms above the images:

- **NEW!** = Recently added
- **Basic** = Commonly used in Macrame projects
- **Fusion** = Listed on the Fusion Knots website
- **Vintage** = Knot used frequently in the early 1900's or prior

## Macrame Terms



In Macrame Terms you begin the process of learning the definitions and abbreviations used in this craft.

Words that start with the letters **A through E** are featured on this page.

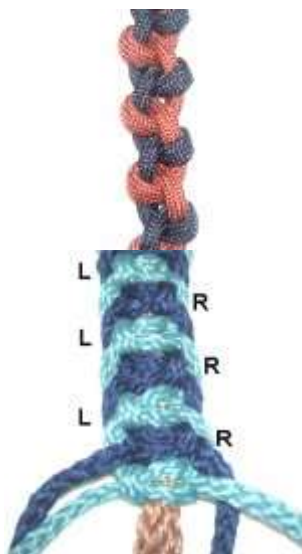
**Click on the links or images for more information.**

### A



**Adjacent:** Cords or knots resting next to each other.

For example: When tying [Alternating Square Knots](#), you use 2 strands from the two knots resting next to each other (3 - 6) , to tie the knots in next row down.



**Alternating:** Patterns where you tie one knot with a cord, and then switch to a second cord to tie the next knot.

The [Alternating Half Hitch](#) shown is a good example of this technique.

Another way to create an Alternating pattern is to use two colors, as in this [Contrast Belt](#).

Notice that the Square knots are tied in alternating directions as well; right with blue and left with turquoise.



**(ASK) = Alternating Square Knots:** This abbreviation is one of the most important Macrame terms you need to know, since these knots are frequently used in Macrame patterns.



## B



**Band:** A knotted design that is wide and flat.

This image shows the [Link Weave](#), a modern decorative knot.



**Bangle:** A design with a continuous pattern, usually made with only one knot.

This [Bangle Bracelet](#) was made with the [Turks Head Knot](#).



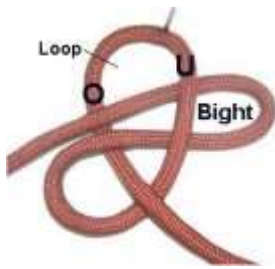
**Bar:** A series of knots that form a distinct, raised area in the pattern. A bar can be horizontal, vertical or diagonal.

This image shows how the [Double Half Hitch](#) is used to create a horizontal bar.

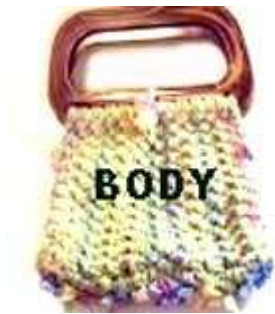


Macrame terms often have two meanings.

The term "bar" is also used to describe a wide, flat design, such as in this [Bug Belly Bar](#).



**Bight:** A narrow folded segment of a cord, which can be pushed through loops or other portions of the knot.



**Body:** You need to fully understand Macrame terms like this one, in order to master this craft. The body is the main section of the project, created after you complete the mounting process.

The body of this [Ribbon Handbag](#), for example, is the portion between the handle and the bottom.



**Braid (or Plait):** Crossing 3 or 4 cords so they weave over or under each other.

This image shows an [Interlaced Plait](#) made with several cords.



**Braided Cord:** A type of material in which the individual fibers are braided to form the cord. It's usually sturdier than materials that are twisted style.

The image shows a close-up of what braided cord looks like. For more information, see [Macrame Cord](#).



**Bundle:** Refers to a group of cords that are gathered together. A knot is usually tied around them, to keep the cords in a group.

In this example, a [Wrapped Knot](#) is tied around a bundle of cords.





Button Knot

**Button Knot:** This is one of several Macrame terms that are unique to this craft. It is a specific type of decorative Knot that is **round** and tight.

This image shows a [Celtic Button Knot](#).



Buttonhole Clasp

**(BH) = Buttonhole:** In the early days of Macrame, the Vertical Larks Head Knot was called the **Buttonhole Knot**. It was used to create circular designs that a button could pass through, or for decoration.

See the [Buttonhole Clasp](#) and [Buttonhole Scallops](#) for more information.



## C



**Celtic:** Artistic patterns and designs that originated in Europe, particularly Wales, Ireland and Scotland. The Macrame knots from these designs have the same qualities found in **weaving**.

This is a [Celtic Triangle Knot](#), which is derived from the **Triquetra** symbol.



**Center:** This word is used to indicate the knot or space that is in the **middle** of a design, like the Square Knot outlined in this vintage diamond.

**It is also used to describe the ACTION of folding a cord in half by matching the ends.**

## Charm



**Charm:** A small, detailed bead made of metal or other material, that is designed to dangle. They are usually less than 1-inch in size.

Charms are used in bracelets, necklaces and even earrings. They usually have a hole or tab at the top.





**Chinese Macrame:** Knotted designs that originate in China and other Asian countries.

This **Crown Knot** is one of several Chinese knots described in the [Learn Macrame](#) section of this site.



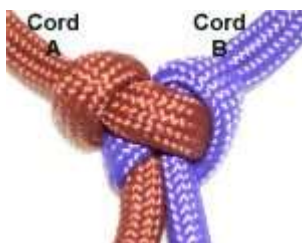
**Cloisonné:** A type of bead that has metal filaments, which are added to outline a color or design. These beads are usually made of metal and are very colorful.

See [Macrame Beads](#) for more information.



**Combination Knot:** Two or more decorative knots that are used together to form a new type of knot or design.

The **Double Buttonhole Stitch** is made with both Lark's Head knots and Square Knots.



**Cord:** Macrame Terms sometimes have two meanings. Cord (or cord material) is what you use to create Macrame projects.

This term is also used to describe a **specific cord** when you are using two or more in a design.



**Core:** You need to learn Macrame terms like this one, in order to understand vintage and modern patterns.

The Core refers to the cords that run through the **center** of a knot. You use the working cords to tie the knot onto them. It means the same as the terms "**fillers**" or "**holding cords**", but usually means a **group** of cords.



**Crook:** The curved portion of a loop, which is usually directly across from the crossing point.

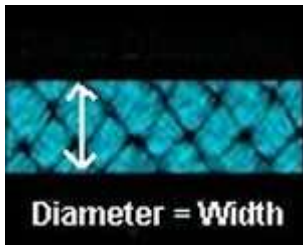


## D - E



**Diagonal:** A cord, or row of knots, that runs from upper left to lower right (or the opposite).

The image shows a design of [Double Half Hitches](#) arranged in diagonal rows.



**Diameter:** The **width** of a strand of material, usually described in millimeters.

Most cord materials used in standard Macrame projects are either 4mm or 6mm in size. For Micro-Macrame, the cord's width is usually less than 2mm.



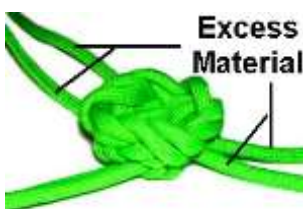
**(DHH) = Double Half Hitch:** This is one of many Macrame terms you won't see in other crafts, since it refers to a specific type of knot. You will see this abbreviation frequently in Macrame patterns.

The knot is simply two Half Hitches resting side-by-side.



**Doubled:** Patterns in which the ends, or separate cords, are used to thicken the knot.

Following the path of the first cord is the preferred method for doubling a design. Contrasting colors are often used in this process, as in this [Celtic Bracelet](#).



**Excess Material:** The ends of cords that are left over after a knot or pattern is completed.

Usually you cut off the extra material, but sometimes extra steps are taken to hide the ends or to make a fringe.

# Macrame Definitions



**F - M**

These Macrame Definitions describe words and abbreviations used in this craft, which start with the letters **F thru M**.

Click on the images or links for more information.

## F



**Filler Cords:** Many Macrame definitions are unique to this craft. This term is used to describe the specific strands that run through the center of certain knots.

This is the same as the "core" and "holding cords", and you will see it most often in vintage Macrame patterns.

In this [Square Knot](#), the pink cords are the fillers.



**Findings:** Fasteners or closures for necklaces, bracelets, and earrings. Usually made of delicate metal, like the earrings shown.

See [Decorative Fasteners](#) for examples.



**Finishing Knot**

**Finishing knot:** A specific type of knot tied at the ends of the cords to secure them, or to prevent unraveling.

The [Barrel Knot](#) in the image is one of several useful finishing knots.



**Flax Linen:** A type of cord material that is made from the same plant Linseed Oil comes from. It's very strong, and is a great choice for jewelry.

This unique natural fiber has been used to make clothing for over 5000 years. See [Macrame Cord](#) for more details.



**Fringe:** When the ends of cords are left to dangle, forming an area that has no knots.



**Fusion Knots:** Also called "combination" knots. These techniques usually start with one knot, and elements are added to turn it into a completely new design.

This is a **Mayan Temple Knot**. The instructions are on the page called [Double Coin Patterns](#).

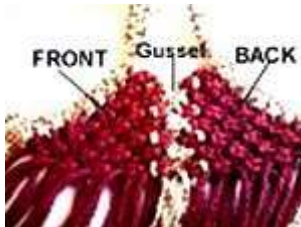


## G - K



**Gemstones:** Semi-precious stones that are polished and shaped into chips, beads and pendants.

The stones in this image are Amazonite. Turquoise, Jade and Lapis Lazuli are other types of gemstones.



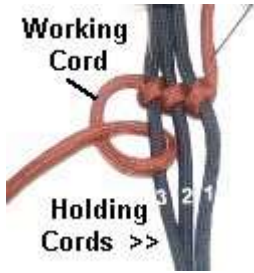
**Gusset:** This is a term used to describe the **sides** of handbags. Many patterns will have you **add** cords to widen the sides so the purse will not be completely flat.

This is part of the [Teardrop Purse](#), where you can see the gusset between the front and back sections.



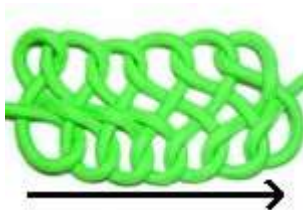
**Hitch:** A type of decorative knot that is used to attach cords to a ring, dowel, or cord.

The image shows the **Double Half Hitch**, which is the most common knot used for this purpose.



**Holding Cord:** Macrame definitions like this one are very important.

This term refers to the specific cord that the knots are **attached** to. In some patterns, the words "core" or "fillers" are used instead. In this image, Half Hitches are tied with the brown cord. The three black cords hold the knots.



**Horizontal:** This term means that the cord, knot, or design is created from side to side.

The first **Figure Eight knot** in this example was made on the left. The design progressed to the right (arrow).



**Interlace:** A pattern where you intertwine and weave the loops (or cords) together, to link the different areas.

This is a **Celtic Circle Knot**, which shows the loops connected.



**Inverted:** This term means upside down, and it's often used when describing V formations like the one shown.

The point of this **Alternating V Pattern** is at the top instead of the bottom.



## L - M



**(LH) = Larks Head Knot:** One of the most common Macrame knots. It's used to attach cords to rings, dowels, and other cords.

It can rest horizontally, vertically, or be used to make a sennit (chain).





**Loop:** This is one of several Macrame definitions that are very important for you to understand.

A Loop is a circular or oval shape that is usually made by **crossing two parts of the cord**. This image shows a loop, with the crook, or rounded portion, at the top.



**Metallic:** A type of material that looks like gold, silver, or brass metal.

This twisted cord is a combination of silver and gold strands.



**Micro-Macrame:** Macrame definitions are sometimes difficult to find in standard dictionaries. The term "Micro" means small. So it's used to describe projects using very delicate and slender materials.

These [Circle Earrings](#) are dainty, since they are made with fine leather cord, 2mm thick.



**Mount:** Macrame definitions like this one are very important for you to know. Mounting is the process of attaching one or more strands of material to a ring, handle, frame, or another cord. This term is usually seen in the beginning stages of a Macrame project.

Here you will continue to learn important Macrame terms and their definitions.



On this page are terms and abbreviations starting with the letters **N thru Z**.

**Click on the images or links for more information.**



## N - O



**Natural:** Cord materials are often made from plants, wood, or other substances found in nature. Flax and Hemp are both made from plant fibers, and are very popular materials for Macrame.



**Netting:** A pattern of knots formed with open space between the rows. Used in hammocks, curtains, wall hangings and more.



**Novelty Buttons:** Fancy and uniquely shaped buttons that can be used in crafts as well as Macrame. Often used to decorate designs, instead of using beads.

See [Macrame Beads](#) for more information.



**Organize:** This term is used when working with cords that are grouped together.

This [Lanyard Knot](#) is made with multiple strands which need to be neatly arranged, or organized, so the completed knot looks attractive.



**(OH) = Overhand Knot:** This is the easiest of all the decorative knots described in this site. It can be used in all stages of Macrame patterns, including clasps.

---

## P - R



**Pandora Beads:** A unique type of glass or metal bead that has a silver or gold lining on the inside of the hole. These beads have become very popular in Europe.

For more information, see [Macrame Beads](#).



**Pendant**

**Pendant:** A medium or large size decoration that has a loop at the top, so it dangles below a cord.

There are many types of pendants available for Macrame projects, made of metal, glass, or even cord material.



**Picot:** Some important Macrame terms like this one were more often seen in the early days of this craft than they are now.

Picots are loops that stand out along edges of knotted designs. They were popular in the early 1900's. To learn how to use this vintage technique, see [Picot Designs](#).



**King  
Solomon  
Braid**

**Plait:** Crossing 3 or more cords in an alternating pattern will form a plait, also called a **braid**.

This image shows an [Interlaced Plait](#) called the King Solomon Braid, which is made with 3 cords.



**Project Board:** An item used in both Macrame and Jewelry Making that is made from cork or other material. Cords can be secured to projects boards with pins, to help control them.

See [Macrame Essentials](#) for more information.



## S



**Satin Cord:** This synthetic material has a very attractive shine, and is great for Macrame jewelry. It's usually made from Rayon or Nylon.

These [Butterfly Earrings](#) were made with Satin.



**Scallops:** Important Macrame terms like this one are rarely seen anymore. Scallops are loops of knots, created along the **top or sides** of crafted items.

This is a vintage design called the [Buttonhole Scallop](#).



**Segment:** This term is used when describing **specific** areas of a knot or cord.

The different segments of this [Celtic Triangle Knot](#) are marked in red.



**Sennit (or Sinnet):** This is one of the most important Macrame terms you need to become familiar with.

It means to make a chain of knots, tying one right after the next. They can be tied vertically, as in the image, as well as horizontally or diagonally.



**Shank Button:** A type of button with a hole running through a tab in the back. Buttons can be used as clasps, as well as decorations.

See [Macrame Beads](#) for more information.



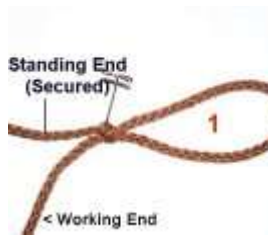
Spiral  
Stitch

Half Hit  
Spiral

**Spiral:** A chain of knots that will **twist** as they are tied.

The [Spiral Stitch](#) shown in the image is very commonly used in Macrame, and is a vintage design.

The [Half Hitch Spiral](#) is a similar technique, using a different type of knot.



**Standing End:** This is one of the most important Macrame terms you need to know.

It is used to describe the end of a cord that is secured, and not used to construct the knot.



**(SK) = Square Knot:** The most common decorative knot used in Macrame.

You need to know how to tie the Square knot with filler cords running through the center.



**Stitch:** An important Macrame term that describes specific types of patterns used in the early 1900's.

The image shows a type of [Basket Stitch](#), which is the Vintage name for one variation of the **Alternating Half Hitch**.



**Symbolic:** Many Chinese and Celtic Knots are derived from symbols used by artists to represent specific concepts and beliefs.

This [Celtic Circle Knot](#), for example, is designed with linked circles and is a symbol representing "eternal life".



**Symmetry:** The the process of tying the knots so the overall design is balanced.

The knots on all four sides are tied so the design looks the same. Weaving is often used to create symmetry.



**Synthetic:** This term refers to man-made substances, so is the opposite of "natural". Polypropylene and Nylon are two types of synthetic material.

This image shows Nylon Paracord, which is a popular type of man-made cord material.

See [Macrame Cord](#) for more information.



## T - Z



**Taut (or Tension):** Holding cords usually need to be pulled straight and secured so they are tighter than the working cords.

In the image, the 3 black holding cords are pulled taut.



**Texture:** A description of what the cord material **feels**like. In the image, this **Yarn** is very soft to the touch.

**Jute and Hemp**, on the other hand, have a firm texture.





**Triquetra**

**Triquetra:** A Celtic art symbol made up of triple loops. This design symbolizes Body, Mind, and Spirit, the Triple Goddess, the Trinity, and Earth, Sea and Sky.

This common symbol can be made with cord to form the [Celtic Triangle Knot](#).



**Unravel:** To separate the strands that make up a piece of cord material.

In the [Bell Tower](#), the cords for the fringe at the top and bottom are separated into the individual fibers, and then brushed. This Macrame technique was very popular in the 1970's.



**Vertical:** This is one of the **most important** Macrame terms you need to understand.

It is a cord, sennit, or knot that is arranged up and down rather than side to side.

This is a sennit of [Vertical Larks Head](#) knots.



**Vintage:** A pattern, knot, or technique popular in the early 1900's (or before).

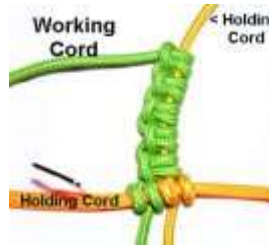
Certain knotting techniques, like this [Diamond Stitch \(Cross Knot\)](#) were heavily used in Macrame projects made in the 1800's, but are seldom seen today.



**Weave:** This is another very **important** Macrame term you need to understand.

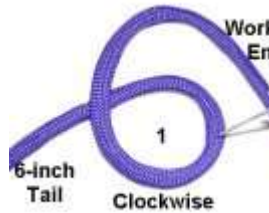
It's the process of directing cords so they pass over and under several segments, usually in an alternating pattern.





**Working Cord (or Knotting Cord):** You need to fully understand important Macrame terms like this one, in order to master this craft.

A working cord is used to tie the knots. In this image you can clearly see that the knots are tied with the green cord. The yellow cord holds the knots.



**Working End:** When creating knots, one end is often secured to the board, and is called the **tail, standing, or starting end**.

The other end is used to construct the knot, so is called the **working end**.

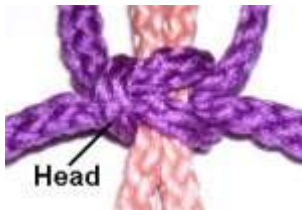
# Square Knot



**Description:** The Square Knot (SK) is the most important decorative knot you will learn to tie. Most Macrame patterns use it in one form or another, so it's essential that you learn to tie it easily in **both directions**.

This knot can be tied in **sennits**, which means to tie one right after the next in a chain. You can also tie them in rows, alternating their positions. There are many other variations as well, so be sure to practice all the ones listed in Learn Macrame.

- Below you will find instructions for both **left** and **right** facing knots
- The **Switch knot** is also described on this page.

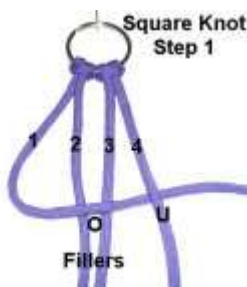


The head of the knot is the portion with a **vertical** segment. It can face left or right.

The direction is determined by which **working cord** you start with.

## Left Facing SK

**Step 1:** To practice a **left** facing knot, secure 2 folded cords to a project board, ring or other item. Mentally number them 1 - 4.



Move the **left** working cord (1) **over** the filler cords (2 and 3), heading right.

Pass it **under** the right working cord (4).



**Step 2:** Move the **right** working cord (4) **under** the two filler cords and **over** cord 1 on the left. Pull on both ends to tighten the Square Knot.

It helps if you hold the fillers firmly as you tighten.

You just completed the first half of the knot, which is sometimes called a "**Half Knot**".



**Step 3:** The working cords have now **switched places**, so the second half is tied in the opposite direction.

Move the cord on the right (1) **over** the fillers and **under** the left working cord (4).



**Step 4:** Direct cord 4 **under** the fillers and **over** cord 1 on the right.

Tighten the second half of the Square Knot.



## Right Facing SK

I sometimes use the term **Mirror** Square Knot to describe this technique, because the tying process is exact **opposite** of the left facing Square knot described above.

Other names I've seen used are **Right SK** and **Reverse SK**.

Knowing how to change the direction of these knots is important when you want both edges of a design to be symmetrical. Since many patterns require this technique, be sure to practice tying them in both directions.

Remember that the head of the knot will always face the direction as the cord you move **first**. In this case, that's the **right** working cord.



**Step 1:** Mentally number the 4 cords.

Move the **right** working cord (4) **over** both fillers, heading left. Pass it **under** the left working cord (1).



**Step 2:** Move the left working cord (1) **under** the fillers, and **over** the right working cord (4), as you pull it to the right.

Pull both ends to tighten the first half of the knot.



**Step 3:** Move the working cord now on the **left** (4) **over** the fillers and **under** the right working cord.



**Step 4:** Move the working cord on the right (1) **under** the fillers and **over** the left working cord (4).

Tighten the second half of the SK.



# Switch Knot



This interesting Square Knot pattern is made by switching the **fillers and working cords** each time you make a new knot.

It's important to leave enough space between the knots so you can see the crisscrossed cords clearly.

To view a Macrame pattern featuring this technique, see the [Switch Belt](#).



**Step 1:** You will need four cords to practice, and it helps if they are two different colors.

Tie a Square Knot using two working cords and two fillers.



**Step 2:** Bring the two working cords (purple) **over** the fillers (pink), so they rest **between** the two cords.

They will now become the new fillers.

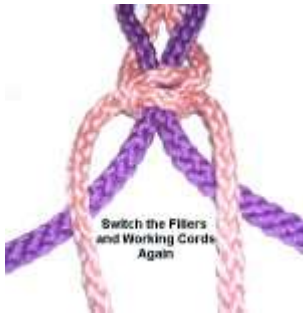
The previous fillers (pink) will be the new set of working cords for the next knot.



**Step 3:** Tie a Square Knot. You can tie it the same way, or make it a Mirror SK (right facing).

By leaving space between the two knots, you can see the switched cords more clearly.





**Step 4:** Switch the cords again, by bringing the previous set of working cords (pink) over and between the other two (purple).



**Step 5:** Tie the next SK, which will be the same color as the first one, if you used two colors.

To continue, keep switching the cords before tying each knot.

# Picot Designs



**Description:** Picot Designs are vintage Macrame techniques frequently seen in patterns written in the early 1900's.

Picots are simply loops along the edges of *sennits*, which are chains of knots. They are often used to add decoration and make the edges of craft items look like flower petals.

There are more variations described on other pages, such as the [Venetian Picot Mount](#). Another page you should review is [Unique Mounting Designs](#), which shows how picots can be used in the mounting process.

There are two beginner's projects in the Kid's section that feature picots. Both are a great way to practice this important technique:

- [Flower Bracelet](#)
- [Key Keepers](#)

To see 2 more advanced Macrame projects which feature picots, see:

- [Pumpkin Decoration](#)
- [Holiday Candle](#)



## Square Knot Design



Picot Designs are often created using [Square Knots](#). Make sure you know how to tie them before you get started.

The size of the picot loops is determined by how much space is between the SK.

**Important:** The working cords need to be longer than usual when adding picots in a Macrame design.

Determine the length of the picot designs, and multiply that by 15. So for a 3-inch design, you need at least 45 inches of material.



Fold 2 cords in half and secure them to your board.

Tie a Square Knot with 2 working cords (brown) around 2 fillers (blue).

**Move down 2 inches**, and tie another SK.



Slide the second knot up, so it rests just below the first one. The loops on either side are the picots.



Tie several more SK with space between each knot.



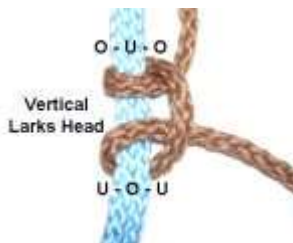
## Larks Head Design



Now it's time to learn how to make Picot Designs that are more unique than the first. This one features the [Vertical Larks Head](#) knot.

You still need two working cords and 2 fillers, which are also called **holding cords**.

Start by attaching the working cord to the fillers with a Square Knot. Place the first Larks Head knot **2 inches below** the SK, tying it as follows:



Pass the **right** working cord (brown) **over - under** the 2 holding cords. Make sure it passes **over** the working cord as you bring it down.

Bring the end **under - over** the holding cord, and **under** the working cord to make the second half.



Slide the knot up so it rests next to the Square knot. This forms the picot on the right side.

If you want the picots on the right side only, use the **same end** to make the rest of the knots in the sennit.





For an alternating pattern, switch to the left working cord and move down 2 inches.

Tie the next vertical Larks Head knot, and slide it up next to the first.



The loops are not directly across from each other, which makes this variation unique.



## Spiral Stitch Design



Picot Designs can be made with **Half Knots**, also called the [Spiral Stitch](#).

The best thing about this technique is that the picots do not lie flat. They head in different directions, because the knots themselves twist.



Fold one cord in half, and secure it. This will give you 2 fillers (blue).

Tie a Square Knot with another cord onto the fillers. The two ends are the working cords (brown).



Move down 2 inches, and tie the **first half** of a Square Knot (Half Knot).



Tie the **first half** of a SK again, just below the first one.

**Important:** Always tie at least **two** Half knots, or the design will be too loose.



Slide the two knots up to rest below the Square knot, forming the picots.



To continue, leave another space and tie 2 more Half Knots.

The loops and knots will spiral, but you may need to help them along by deliberately twisting them into shape.

---

## Vintage Design -- One Side



Picot Designs were very popular in the early 1900's. But they were usually made on one side only, and featured Square Knots.

The difference with this picot design is that you **do not add space** between the Square knots.



Fold one cord in half, and secure it. This will give you 2 fillers (blue). Tie a Square Knot with another cord, onto the fillers. The two ends are the working cords (brown).

Pull the **left working cord** to the side and secure it to your work surface.



Tie a Square knot just below the first, making sure the portion you pulled to the side remains in place.

This gives you a picot on the left side only.



Repeat the process several more times, to form the rest of the sennit.

To tie the picot designs on the right, use **right facing** Square Knots.



## Vintage Design -- Front



Picot Designs like this one are rarely used anymore. I found this technique in a book written in 1899, so it's definitely vintage.

The reason it's so unique is that the loops come out from the **front** of the sennit. Also, the loops are made by the **fillers**, not the working cords.

Fold one cord in half, and secure it. This will give you 2 fillers (blue). Tie a Square Knot onto the fillers using a second cord. The two ends are the working cords (brown).



Pull the **fillers** forward and bend them into loops.

Tie a Square Knot with the working cords, and tighten it so it rests **under** the two loops.

Make sure it rests next to the first SK (no space between them).



Repeat the process a few more times.



# Alternating Square Knots



**Description:** Alternating Square Knots (ASK) create a net-like pattern seen in many Macrame projects.

This is one of the **most important** knotting techniques you will need to know as you learn Macrame, so practice this several times.

The basic concept is that you tie Square knots in rows. In **every other row** you **alternate** the cords used to tie the knots.

Be sure you know how to tie a [Square Knot](#) before you get started.

To practice, you need four cords folded in half, so you have 8 to work with. Secure them to your work surface or board.

Mentally number the cords 1 thru 8, moving left to right. Each Square Knot (SK) is tied with four cords.



**Step 1:** Tie one Square Knot (SK) with 1 and 4 as the working cords, and 2 and 3 as the fillers.

**Step 2:** Tie another SK, using working cords 5 and 8. The fillers are cords 6 and 7.



**Step 3:** Select cords **3 and 4** from the SK on the **left**, along with **5 and 6** from the knot on the **right**.

Use them to tie the next Square Knot. The working cords are 3 and 6, the fillers 4 and 5.



**Step 4:** Repeat steps 1 and 2, using cords 1 - 4 for the knot on the left, and 5 - 8 for the knot on the right.

To continue, simply repeat steps 3 and 4 several times.



## Double Alternating Square Knots



**Step A:** Tie **two** Square Knots with cords 1 - 4.

**Step B:** Tie **two** SK with cords 5 - 8.



**Step C:** Tie **two** SK with cords 3 - 6.

**Step D:** Repeat steps A - C to complete the design.



## Creating a Net



There are times when you might want a certain amount of space between the rows to make a more net-like design.

The process for making the ASK is no different; you just move down 1-inch or more, adding space between the rows.

# Inverted V Pattern



This V pattern is very similar to the first, only it's inverted, which means upside down.

This design is sometimes called an **increasing** pattern, since you **add** cords which each new row.

**Step 1:** You'll need 8 folded or mounted cords for this design. Mentally number them 1 - 16.



Tie **one** ASK with cords **7 - 10**.



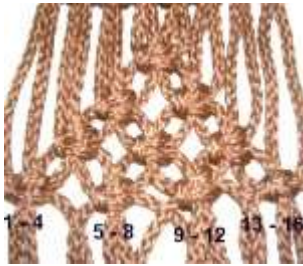
**Step 2:** Alternate the cords and tie the next row, which has **two** knots:

**5 - 8    and    9 - 12**



**Step 3:** The next row has **three** knots. Tie them with cords:

**3 - 6    7 - 10    11 - 14**

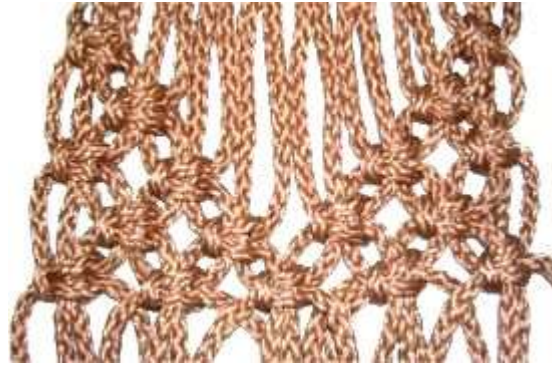


**Step 4:** Tie the ASK for the last row (4 knots):

**1 - 4    5 - 8    9 - 12    13 - 16**



## V Pattern - Inside



This Alternating V Pattern is unique because the right and left edges are straight, with the diagonal edge on the **inside**.

**Step 1:** You'll need 10 cords folded or mounted, so you have 20 cords to work with. Mentally number them 1 - 20.



Tie the first row of **two** ASK with cords:

**1 - 4    and    17 - 20**



**Step 2:** Tie the next row of **two** ASK with cords:

**3 - 6    and    15 - 18**



**Step 3:** The next row has **four** ASK using cords:

**1 - 4    5 - 8    13 - 16    17 - 20**



**Step 4:** Tie the next row of **four** ASK with:

**3 - 6    7 - 10    11 - 14    15 - 18**



**Step 5:** The final row has **five** knots, and should be tied with cords:

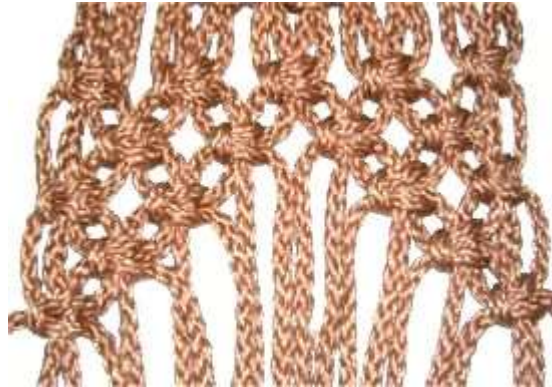
**1 - 4    5 - 8    9 - 12    13 - 16    17 - 20**

**Design Tip:** The black lines in the image above follow the inside diagonal edge of this Alternating V pattern.





## Inverted V Pattern - Inside



This Alternating V Pattern is an **inverted** variation of the previous design (point at the top).

The diagonal edge is on the **inside**, and the left and right edges are straight.

**Step 1:** You will need 20 cords to work with (10 folded cords). Mentally number them 1 - 20.



The first row has **five** ASK, using cords:

**1 - 4    5 - 8    9 - 12    13 - 16    17 - 20**



**Step 2:** Tie the next row with **four** ASK:

**3 - 6    7 - 10    11 - 14    15 - 18**



**Step 3:** Tie **three** ASK with:

**1 - 4    5 - 8    13 - 16    17 - 20**



**Step 4:** The next row has **two** knots:

**3 - 6 and 15 - 18**



**Step 5:** The final row also has **two** knots:

**1 - 4 and 17 - 20**

**Design Tip:** The black lines in the image above follow the diagonal edge of this Alternating V pattern.



## V Pattern -- Double Edge



In some Macrame projects, you may be asked to create Alternating V patterns where there are two diagonal edges (inside and outside).

This type of design is unique in that there are only **two knots** in each row, except for when you make the point at the bottom.

**Step 1:** You need 10 cords folded or mounted, so you have 20 cords to work with. Mentally number them 1 - 20.



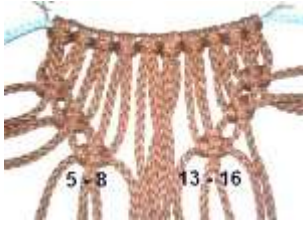
For the first row, tie the ASK with cords:

**1 - 4 and 17 - 20**



**Step 2:** The **two** ASK in the second row are tied with cords:

**3 - 6 and 15 - 18**



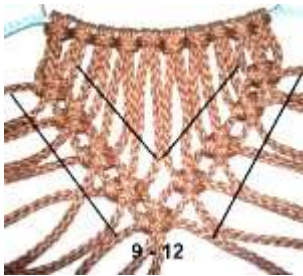
**Step 3:** For the third row, the **two** ASK are tied with cords:

**5 - 8 and 13 - 16**



**Step 4:** The **two** ASK in the fourth row are tied with cords:

**7 - 10 and 11 - 14**



**Step 5:** To make the point of the Alternating V Pattern, tie **one** ASK with cords 9 - 12.

The black lines indicate the double angles on the inside and outside edges.

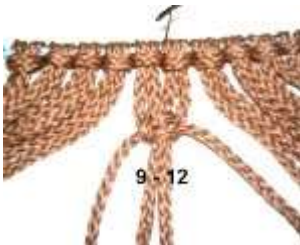


## Inverted V Pattern - Double Edge



This Alternating V Pattern is the inverted variation of the design above. There are only two knots in each row, except for the first, which forms the point of the V shape.

**Step 1:** You need 10 cords folded or mounted, so you have 20 cords to work with. Mentally number them 1 - 20.

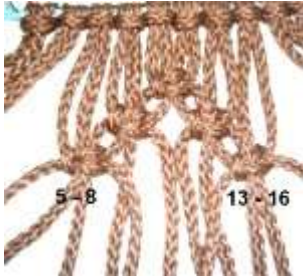


Tie **one** ASK with cords **9 - 12**.



**Step 2:** Tie the next row, which has **two** knots:

**7 - 10 and 11 - 14**



**Step 3:** For the third row, use cords:

**5 - 8 and 13 - 16**



**Step 4:** The 4th row of ASK is tied with:

**3 - 6 and 15 - 18**



**Step 5:** The final row is tied with cords:

**1 - 4 and 17 - 20**

The black lines indicate the two diagonal edges of the Alternating V pattern.



# Snowflake Design



**Description:** The Snowflake Design is made with [Square knots](#) (SK) that face opposite directions. They surround a slightly thicker knot in the center.

This pattern is a vintage technique, and is seen in older patterns written in the early to mid-1900's.

The best time to use it is when you need a decoration that is not surrounded by other knots. For this reason, it's used in plant hangers as well as items like guitar straps and belts.

I've included instructions for tying both left and right Square knots, since you will be tying them in both directions.

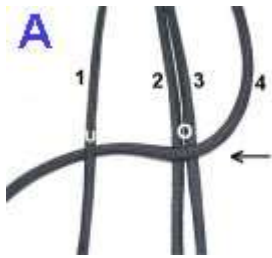
Note that in the instructions below, I left space between the knots so you could see the details better. The knots should be **close together**, as in the image above.

## Right Square Knot



Mentally number the cords 1 - 4. The working cords are 1 and 4. The fillers are cords 2 and 3.

To make a **right** Square Knot for the Snowflake Design, you start with the **right** working cord, as shown below.

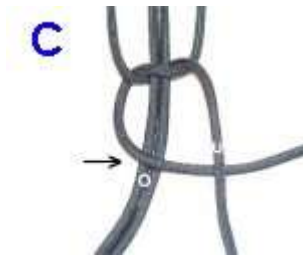


<< Move cord 4 to the **left**, **over** the fillers and **under** cord 1.

Move cord 1 to the **right**, **under** the fillers, and **over** cord 4. >>

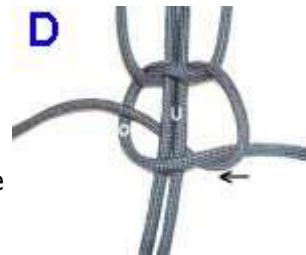


**Working cords 1 and 4 have switched places.** So Cord 4 is now on the left, and cord 1 is on the right.



<< Move cord 4 to the **right**, **over** the fillers and **under** cord 1.

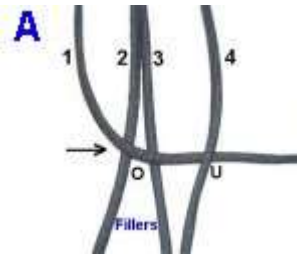
Move cord 1 to the **left**, **under** the fillers and **over** cord 4. >>



# Left Square Knot



Mentally number the four cords. To tie **left** Square Knot for the Snowflake, start with the **left** working cord.

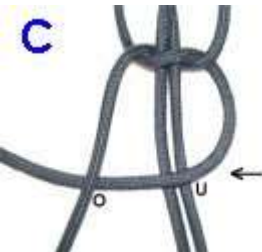


<< Move cord 1 to the **right**, **over** the fillers, and **under** cord 4.



Move cord 4 to the **left**, **under** the fillers and **over** cord 1. >>

**The working cords have switched places.** Cord 1 is now on the right and cord 4 is on the left.



<< Move cord 1 to the **left**, **over** the fillers, and **under** cord 4.



Move cord 4 to the **right**, **under** the fillers and **over** cord 1. >>

# Snowflake Design

Cut 12 cords and fold them in half. Secure them to your board vertically. They need to be at least 20 inches long.



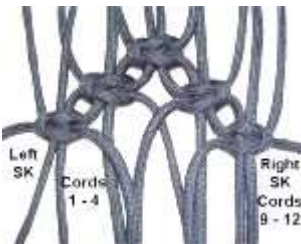
**Step 1:** Mentally number the cords 1 - 12.

Use cords 5 - 8 to tie a **left** SK.



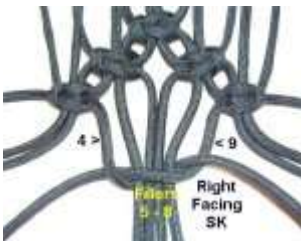
**Step 2:** Use cords 3 - 6 to tie a **left** SK. Use cords 7 - 10 to make a **right** SK.

Position them just below the first knot, without any added space.



**Step 3:** Tie a **left** SK with cords 1 - 4.

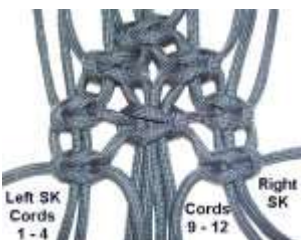
Tie a **right** SK with cords 9 - 12.



**Step 4:** The Snowflake design features a thick Square knot in the center.

The working cords are 4 and 9. There are 4 fillers, which are cords 5 - 8.

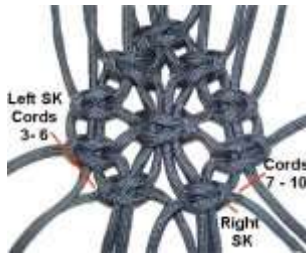
**Design Tip:** When you tighten the knot in the center, it should rest **slightly lower** than the third set of knots (step 3).



**Step 5:** Tie a **left** SK with cords 1 - 4.

Tie a **right** SK with cords 9 - 12.

(This is the same as **step 3**).



**Step 6:** Use cords 3 - 6 to tie a **left** SK.

Use 7 - 10 to tie a **right** SK.

(This is the same as **step 2**).



**Step 7:** Use cords 5 - 8 to make a **left** SK.

(This is the same as **step 1**).



Here is an image of the completed Snowflake design, with the knots close together.

# Spiral Stitch



**Description:** The Spiral Stitch is also called the **Half Knot Spiral**. This historical knot is frequently seen in vintage Macrame patterns.

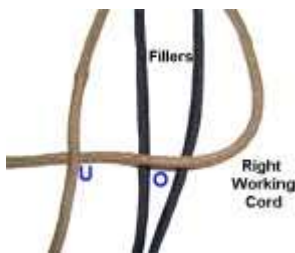
Because it's such a popular knotting technique, you will see it in nearly every Macrame book. From large hammocks to fine jewelry, this well known decorative knot is suitable for many types of Macrame projects.

This knot is made with **Half Knots**, which are the same as 1/2 of a **Square knot**.

Because you are tying only half of a knot that's usually flat, the sennit will twist as you progress. It does so on it's own, but it's a good idea to give it some help, and deliberately twist the knots, so the spiral design is tighter.

To practice, you need either two cords folded in half, or 4 separate cords (two working cords, two fillers). Secure them to your work surface.

The working cords should be to the right and left of the fillers, which need to be in the center. In the images, the fillers are **black**. The working cords are **brown**.



**Step 1:** Move the **right** working cord to the left, **over** the fillers and **under** the left working cord.



**Step 2:** Move the **left** working cord to the right, **under** the fillers, and **over** the right working cord.

Both steps = one Half Knot.





**Step 3:** Repeat steps 1 and 2 at least 10 more times, to create the rest of the sennit.

Make sure you tighten the knots so they are close to each other.



The Spiral Stitch looks a lot better if the twisted pattern is the same size in each area.

So tie 5 knots, and then deliberately rotate the sennit, so the ends switch places (1/2 turn).

Tie 5 more knots, and rotate again. Continue on in this fashion as you progress.

# Square Knot Button



**Description:** The Square Knot Button is a vintage knot rarely seen in modern Macrame patterns. These decorative knots were very popular in designs created in the 1970's.

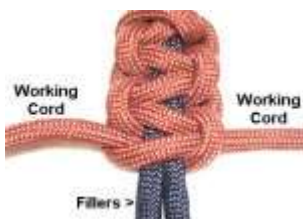
This particular type of button knot is easy to make, and is often used to create heads for dolls and animals. I've seen it used to decorate Macrame baskets and similar items.

To see a project where this knot is featured, go to the [Holiday Angel](#).

Make sure you know how to tie [Square Knots](#) before you try practicing this design.

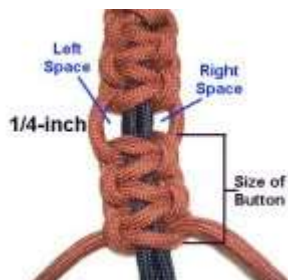
**Important:** These knots require **more material** than flat designs, since the cords are folded. So keep that in mind if you create your own designs, and cut the cords longer.

For every button knot you make, you need at least **8 inches** of material.



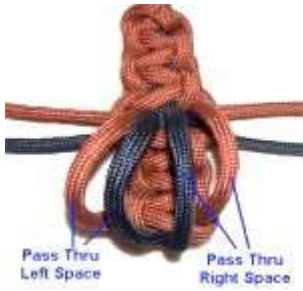
**Step 1:** Fold 2 cords in half, or use 4 individual cords, to practice this technique. Secure them to your board.

Tie a short sennit (chain) of Square Knots. There should be 2 working cords and 2 fillers for each knot.



**Step 2:** Move down 1/4-inch, and tie 3 to 5 Square Knots. The size of the button is determined by the 2nd set knots. The more SK you tie, the larger the button will be (height).

Take note of the area between the two sets of knots, which has two spaces, to the left and right of the fillers.



**Step 3:** Pass the **left** working cord, and the filler next to it, through the **left** space.

The other filler and the right working cord should pass through the **right** space.



**Step 4:** Pull down on the ends to roll the knots into the button shape.

Tie a Square Knot with the **same working cords and fillers**, tightening it firmly so it rests against the bottom of the button.



This is a side view of the completed Square Knot Button.

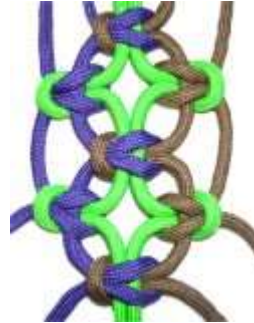
# Square Knot Sennits



**Zig Zag Pattern**



**Alternating Sennit**



**Star Pattern**

**Description:** Square Knot Sennits are chains of knots, tied one after the next. How you construct the sennits to form a Macrame design depends on what you are making. The 3 vintage designs shown above are described on this page.

You can form interesting designs for your Macrame projects by alternating colors, or by changing the direction of the knots. You can also cross cords, or switch back and forth between groups of cords.

You need to know the difference between **fillers** and **working cords**. See the [Macrame Dictionary](#) if these terms are not familiar to you.

I recommend you use a project board and pins while practicing these techniques. Also, make sure you know how to tie both right and left facing [Square Knots](#).



## Alternating Sennit

I found several Square Knot sennits in a book written in the late 1800's.

This one is called an **alternating** sennit, because you switch back and forth between two sets of working cords.

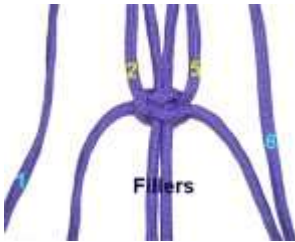
The Square Knots can face one direction, or you can alternate between left and right facing knots.



**Step 1:** You need **three** cords folded in half, arranged vertically.

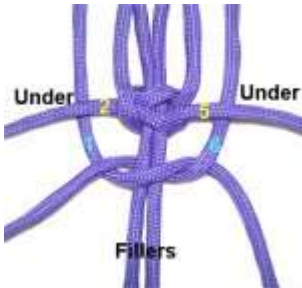
Mentally number the cords 1 - 6. The **fillers** are cords 3 and 4 throughout the entire design.

The first set of **working cords** are 2 and 5. The second set are 1 and 6.



**Step 2:** Tie the first Square Knot using working cords 2 and 5, around the fillers.

Position the working cords horizontally, to the right and left, after you are through. **See next photo.**



**Step 3:** Bring cords 1 and 6 **under** the previous set of working cords (2 and 5).

Then use them to tie the second Square knot.



**Step 4:** Bring cords 2 and 5 under the previous set of working cords (1 and 6).

Use them to tie the third Square knot.



**Step 5:** Repeat steps 3 and 4 several more times, until the sennit is completed.





## Zig-Zag Pattern

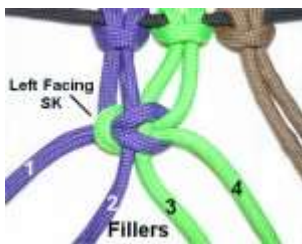
Square Knot sennits like this one are fairly common. This vintage design was frequently used in Macrame projects from the early 1900's.

The Square knots face both directions, and are arranged to create a zig-zag pattern.

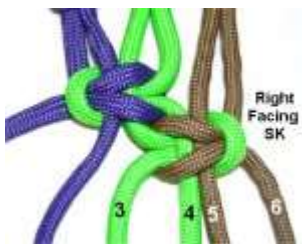


**Step 1:** Fold 3 cords in half and secure them to your project board, or mount them to a holding cord with **Larks Head knots**.

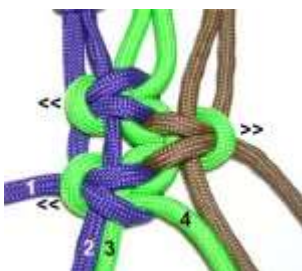
Mentally number the cords 1 thru 6.



**Step 2:** Tie a **left** Square Knot with cords 1 and 4. The fillers are cords **2 and 3**.



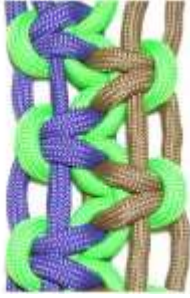
**Step 3:** Tie a **right** SK using cords 3 and 6. The fillers are cords **4 and 5**.



**Step 4:** The next knot is like the first, and should face **left**.

Use cord 1 - 4, with 2 and 3 as the fillers.





**Step 5:** Repeat steps 3 and 4 several more times, to complete the sennit.



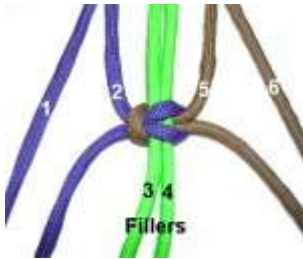


## Star Pattern

Some Square Knot sennits look better if they are tied loosely and have color shifts.

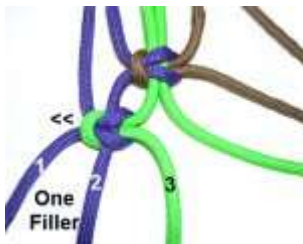
The center of this 4-knot design resembles a star.

You will not see the diamond shape if the knots are close together, so make sure there is space between the knots.



**Step 1:** Fold three cords in half and secure them to your board (or mount them to a holding cord).

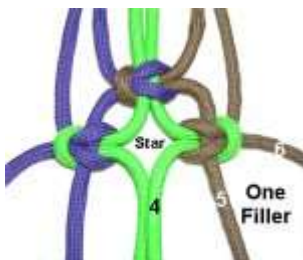
Tie a **left** SK using cords 2 and 5. The fillers are 3 and 4.



**Step 2:** Tie the next **left** SK using cords 1 and 3.

**There is only one filler (cord 2).**

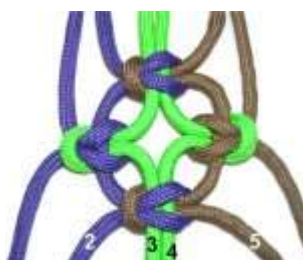
Tighten the knot so there is a **1/2-inch space** between it and the knot above it.



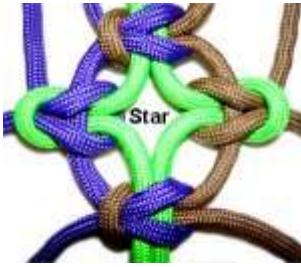
**Step 3:** Tie a **right** SK with cords 4 and 6.

**This knot also has one filler (cord 5).**

Try to tighten it so it rests **directly across** from the knot tied in step 2.



**Step 4:** To finish the four knot design, tie a **left** SK with cords 2 and 5. The fillers are cords 3 and 4.



**Step 5:** Repeat steps 2 - 4 to make another design.

The curved portions in the center form a star or diamond shape.

# Ara Batur Bar



**Description:** The Ara Batur Bar is a unique Square Knot pattern featuring three colors. The knots are tied in such a way that there are loops along the edges. The heads of the knots form a line down the middle of this decorative knot design.

You can use this type of Macrame band to create a bracelet, belt, or other flat item. In the instructions below I've included a loop at one end, which can be part of a clasp. You can start this design in the center of the cords, rather than at one end as I did in the example.

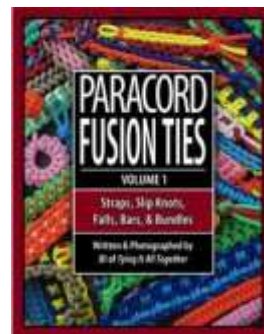
I recommend practicing with Paracord, which is the material you see in the example. Make sure you know how to tie a [Square knot](#), in **both directions**.

Ara Batur can be translated to mean **Row Boat**. (Try to visualize the red and yellow loops as the oars, and the center area as the surface of the boat.)

This design came from the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

**Designs by JD Lenzen**

Click on the image or link to view his knot gallery, and see video tutorials for this design along with many others.



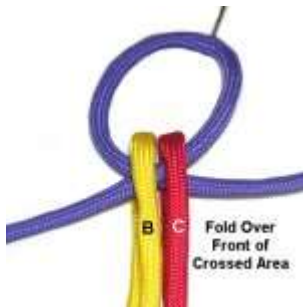
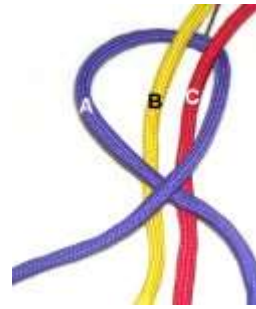
## Preparation

Cut one cord of each color, at least 72 inches long. Prepare the ends to prevent fray. For Paracord, heat the tips to seal the material. Choose 1 cord to be Color A. It will be the color you see along the **edges** of the Ara Batur Bar, as well as the line in the center.



<< Make a loop in the center, crossing right over left.

Place the other two cords so they rest **under** the crossed area. The **center** of them should be directly under the crossed portion. >>



<< Fold the two cords over the **front** of the crossed portion.

Adjust the size of the loop.

Tie the **first half** of a Square Knot using the ends of the color A cord. Tighten firmly. >>



**This loop is optional**, if you are only practicing. When using it as a clasp, adjust it to the size of the button or bead you will use at the other end.



## Square Knots

You will now tie the first two Square Knots, in opposite directions, to start the bar. The steps below apply to all the knots, not just the first two:

All the **left Square Knots** in the Ara Batur Bar will be tied following steps 1 - 4.

Follow steps 5 - 8 to tie all the **right Square Knots**.

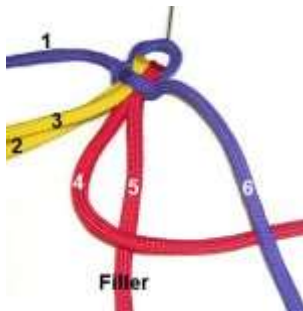
Note that the **heads** of the knots will be facing **inwards**, **towards each other**, which is what makes this design so unique.

**Mentally number the six ends, as follows:**

Color A (purple) should be on the outside, numbered 1 and 6.

Color B (yellow) is numbered 2 and 3. Color C (red) is numbered 4 and 5.

### Left Square Knot



**Step 1:** Move **cord 4** to the **right**, **over** cord 5 and **under** cord 6.

Cord 5 is the filler for this **left** Square Knot.



**Step 2:** Move **cord 6** to the **left**, passing **under** cord 5 and **over** cord 4.

This is the **first half** of the Square Knot. Pull on the ends to tighten it firmly.



**Step 3:** Move **cord 4**, which is now on the right, over to the **left**.

Pass it **over** cord 5 and **under** cord 6.

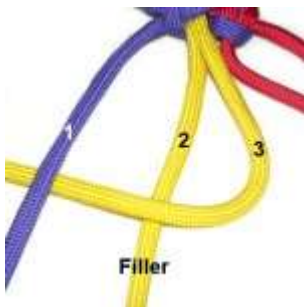


**Step 4:** Move **cord 6** **under** cord 5 and **over** cord 4, as you pull it to the **right**.

Tighten the second half by pulling the ends firmly.

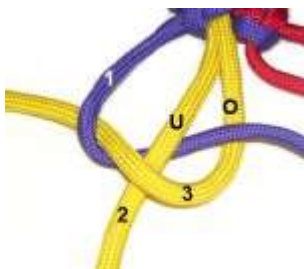


## Right Square Knot



**Step 5:** The following steps show you how to tie the **right** Square Knots in the Ara Batur Bar.

Move **cord 3** to the **left**, **over** cord 2 (filler), and then **under** cord 1.



**Step 6:** Move **cord 1** to the **right**, passing **under** the filler (cord 2) and **over** cord 3.

Tighten the first half of the SK firmly.





**Step 7:** Move **cord 3**, which is now on the left, **over** cord 2 and **under** cord 1 (left to right).



**Step 8:** Move **cord 1** to the left, under cord 2 and over cord 3.

Tighten the second half of the SK firmly.

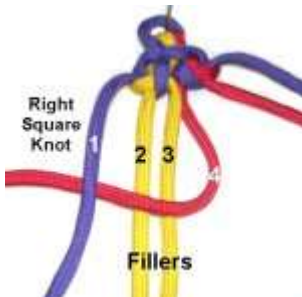


## Primary Design

The primary design for the Ara Batur Bar is a series of Square Knots. The SK on the left are all facing **right**. Those on the right are facing **left**.

Refer to the steps above if you need a refresher on how to tie them each direction.

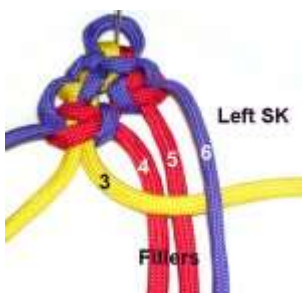
Pay close attention to the details as to which are the working cords versus the fillers.



**Step 9:** Use cords 1 - 4 to tie a **right** Square knot. Cords 2 and 3 are the fillers.

Remember that the head will face the direction of the first cord moved, in this case **cord 4**.

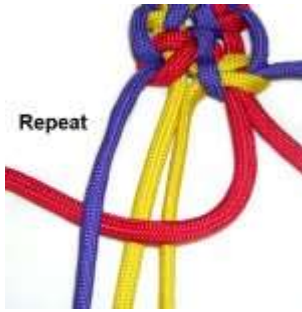
Make sure the fillers are pulled straight when you are finished tightening the knot.



**Step 10:** Tie a **left** Square knot using cords 3 - 6. The fillers are cords 4 and 5.

The head faces left because you move **cord 3** first.

Pull the fillers straight while tightening.



**Step 11:** Repeat steps 9 and 10 several times, until the Ara Batur Bar is the size you want.

As you progress, straighten the **heads** of the knots, to form the line in the center of the design. (see last image below)



**Step 12:** To complete the design, tie a Square Knot using **ords 1 and 6**. The other four are the fillers.

Cords 1, 2, 5, 6 would be finished off if you were planning to make a clasp. A button, bead, or button knot would be applied to cords 3 and 4.



This is the completed design, showing the details. Click on the image to see a larger view.

# Fleur de Lis



**Description:** The Fleur de Lis is a well known historical symbol seen in European Coat of Arms, military emblems, flags, coins, and more. These designs vary somewhat, depending on how they are used and which country they originate from. They often represent a specific monarchy or royal family.

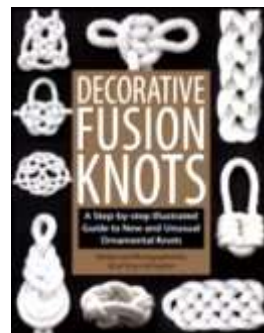
Since this ancient emblem depicts a Lilly flower, this decorative knot has several **petals** held together by a Square Knot.

In the images, I used Paracord, since it holds the shape of the knot fairly well. But to really show it off, use waxed material or leather, so you can create the proper shape.

The loop at the top center should have a point, and the remaining loops should be curved outward slightly.

I found the Fleur de Lis knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, but it's been modified slightly.

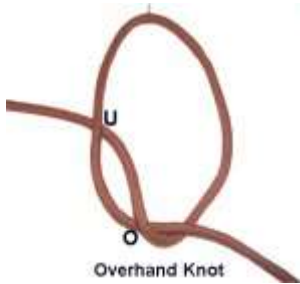
Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view tutorials for other interesting knotting techniques and designs.





**Step 1:** Fold a **24-inch cord** in half and secure it at the center.

Make a loop, so the left half crosses over the right.



**Step 2:** Use the end that's now on the **left**.

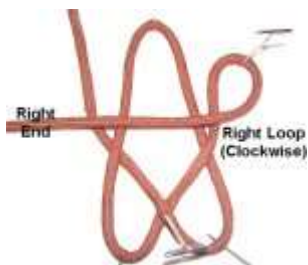
Bring it through the loop, **over - under**, to make an Overhand knot.

Move both ends to the **top** before moving on.



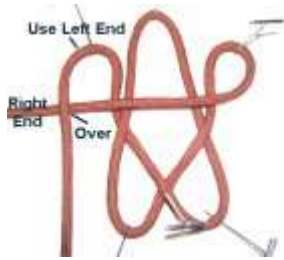
**Step 3:** Extend the knot downward, so you can clearly see the crossed area and the two loops at the bottom. Secure the three areas.

Form a bight with the end now on the **right**, and secure it.

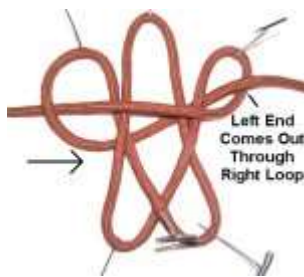


**Step 4:** Direct the **right** end to the left, rotating **clockwise**, forming the right loop.

As you do so, the end should pass **over** everything in it's path.

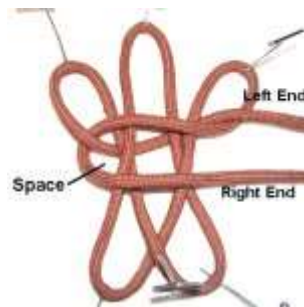


**Step 5:** Use the **left** end to make a bight. Bring it down, passing **over** the right end. Make sure you secure it.



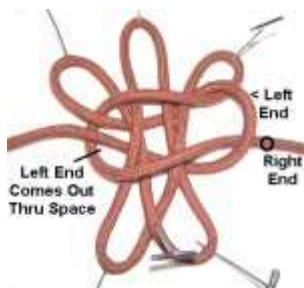
**Step 6:** Direct the **left** end **under** all the segments as you bring it to the right.

Pull it out through the right loop (upper right area of the Fleur de Lis design).



**Step 7:** Direct the **right** end, which is on the left now, back to the right. Pass it **over** all the segments in its path.

Note that there is a **space** just below the left loop, where the right end curves.



**Step 8:** Pass the other end (left) **over** the right end, as you prepare to bring it back to the left.

It should go **under** the remaining segments, and come out through the space indicated (below the left loop).



**Step 9:** To tighten the Fleur de Lis, pull on the ends to firm up the Square knot. Reduce the size of the lower loops by pulling on the upper ones.

The two loops at the top right and left should be large enough to curve outward. The center loop should be slightly pointed.



# Portuguese Sennit



**Description:** The Portuguese Sennit is a chain of Square knots, tied around a loop. It's sometimes called the **Solomon Bar**.

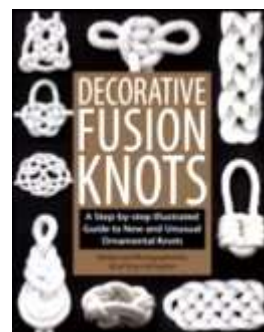
When the sennit is completed, the loop is pulled, so the ends are secured. This technique could be used when you need a strong stable loop, followed by knots, such as in a plant hanger. It also makes a great bracelet or key ring.

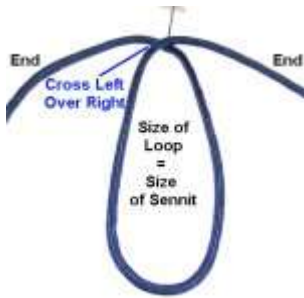
The **Genoese Sennit** is also described below, since it is a similar technique. The knot featured is the Alternating Half Hitch instead of Square Knots.

Be sure you know how to tie a [Square Knot](#) as well as the [Alternating Half Hitch](#) (with holding cord) before you get started.

The Portuguese and Genoese sennits can be found in this great book. Click on the image or link to visit the author's website, [Fusion Knots](#).

The Knot Gallery has a variety of **video tutorials** for many unique decorative knots.

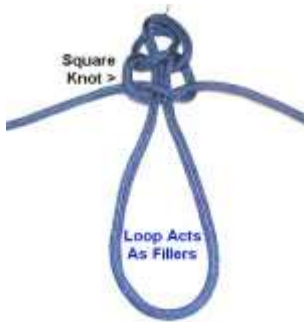




**Step 1:** Cut one cord, at least 60 inches long.

Fold it to make a large loop, the size you want the sennit to be when it's finished.

Add an extra inch if you need the design to be a specific size.



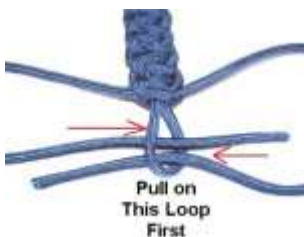
**Step 2:** Use the **two ends** to tie the first Square Knot. The loop acts as the filler cords.

Place the knot **1/2-inch below** the area where the ends were crossed (top).



**Step 3:** Tie several more knots, until you are close to the end of the loop, near the bottom.

To make the sennit a specific size, measure as you progress. Stop when the desired size is reached.



**Step 4:** Direct the ends through the loop at the bottom of the Portuguese Sennit.

One should enter the loop from below, and the other from above, heading in the opposite direction.



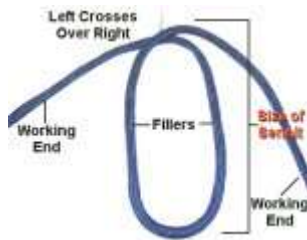
Pull on the **lower loop first**, to remove one of the loops at the top, unless you need both of them.

Pull the remaining loop at the **top**, which will secure the ends.

Finish off the ends by heating (if using Paracord), or by tucking them into the back of the sennit.



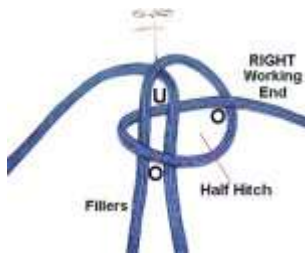
## Genoese Sennit



**Step 1:** To make the Genoese Sennit, fold one cord in half, forming a large loop. The crossing point should be at the top.

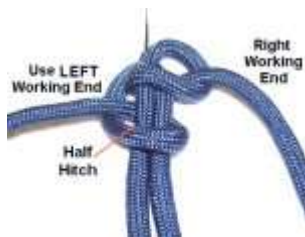
Make sure the left crosses over the right.

The size of this loop determines the overall size of the design, just like in the Portuguese sennit above.



**Step 2:** Use the **right** end to make a **clockwise** Half Hitch around the loop, which acts as the fillers.

A Half Hitch is tied by passing the cord **over** the fillers, **under** them, and **over** the cord you are using.



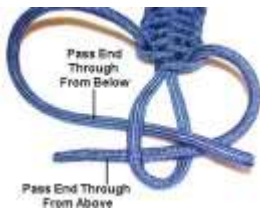
**Step 3:** Make a **counter-clockwise** Half Hitch with the **left** end of the cord.

Position it just below the first one.



**Step 4:** Alternate back and forth between the two ends, and make several more Alternating Half Hitches.

Stop when you are close to the bottom of the loop.



**Step 5:** Direct the ends through the loop. One should go into it from below, and the other from the top, in opposite directions.



**Step 6:** Pull the loop at the **top**, which will secure the ends.

Finish off the ends by heating (if using Paracord), or by tucking them into the back of the sennit.

# Caged Solomon Bar



**Description:** The Caged Solomon Bar features the Square Knot, but something unique is done with the filler cords. This decorative knot design looks best with two colors, so the loops are highlighted.

Both the front and back look nice, so this knot could be used to make a Macrame belt that's reversible. The image above shows the front of the knot. The images below show the back.

There is a loop at the top, forming the base for this design. You can use it as a clasp for a bracelet or belt. On the other end, tie a button knot or add a regular button or bead.

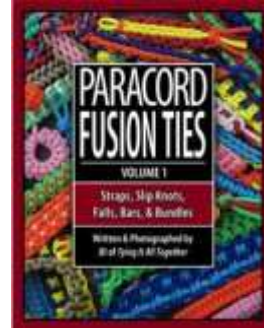
Children and beginners new to Macrame will need to learn how to tie the [Square Knot](#) before trying this variation.

Paracord is used in the example shown. It needs to be prepared and finished by melting the ends with a flame.

I found this pattern on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

## Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the image or link to visit his site. The knot gallery contains a wide variety of combination knots and techniques, all demonstrated through [video tutorials](#).



## Loop Base

**Step 1:** Cut two cords at least 60 inches long, to practice the Caged Solomon Bar.

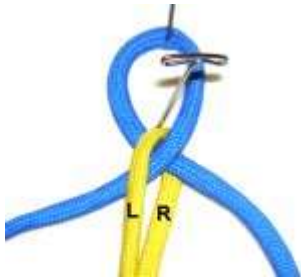
In the example below, the filler cord is yellow and the working cord is blue.



Make a loop in the **center** of the working cord, crossing **right over left**.

Pass the filler cord through the loop, **under - over** as shown. Match the ends to center it.

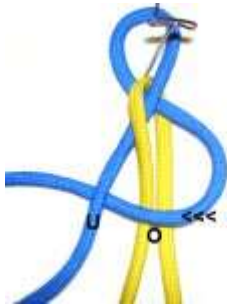




Move the **left** portion of the filler cord over the **front** of the crossed area (working cord).

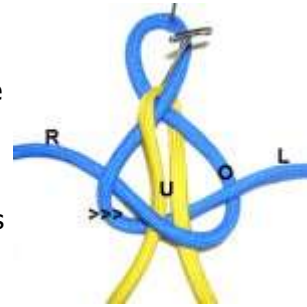
The **right** portion should be moved to the **back**.

The Square Knots in the Caged Solomon Bar are tied in two parts, which means that you are tying **Half knots**. The next two images show you how to tie the first one for the base:



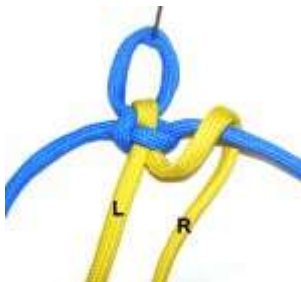
<<< Move the working cord on the **right over** the fillers and **under** the working cord on the left.

Move the working cord on the **left under** the two fillers. Pass it **over** the curved portion of the working cord on the right. >>>



**Adjust the size of the loop** and pull on the ends **firmly**, to tighten the knot.

## Caged Bar Technique



**Step 2:** Move the filler cord on the **right over** the working cord on the right.

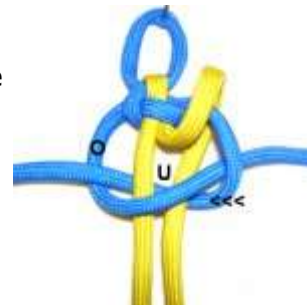
Fold it and bring it back to where it started, passing **under** the working cord.

The next step is to tie a Half knot (see below).



<<< Move the working cord on the **left over** the fillers and **under** the working cord on the right.

Move the working cord on the **right under** the two fillers. Pass it **over** the curved portion of the working cord on the left. >>>



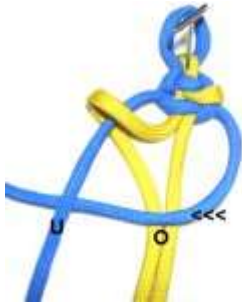
Tighten the knot **firmly** by pulling on the ends of the working cord first. Tighten the loop made by the filler by pulling on the end.



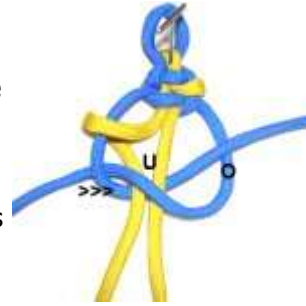
**Step 3:** Move the filler cord on the **left over** the working cord on the left.

Fold it and bring it back to where it started, passing **under** the working cord.

The next step is to tie the Half knot, but it's done in the **opposite direction**:



<<< Move the working cord on the **right over** the fillers and **under** the working cord on the left.



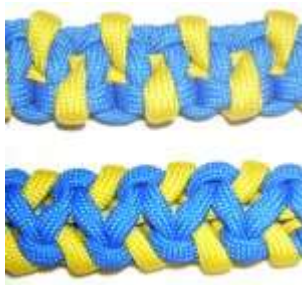
Move the working cord on the **left under** the two fillers. Pass it **over** the curved portion of the working cord on the right. >>>



**Step 4:** Continue on, repeating steps 2 and 3 several times.

**Alternate** between the left and right fillers to make the loops.

When tying the Half knots, **start** with the working cord that is **not** holding the loop.



Here are the front and back views of the Caged Solomon Bar.

The portion you've been looking at while constructing the bar is considered the **back**.

To turn the design into a bracelet or belt, add a button knot, bead or regular button to the fillers. Finish off the ends in whatever manner you prefer.

# Alternating Half Hitch



**Description:** The Alternating Half Hitch is tied to form a chain, also called a **sennit**. In the example shown here, one cord holds the knot and the other one is used to tie the Half Hitch.

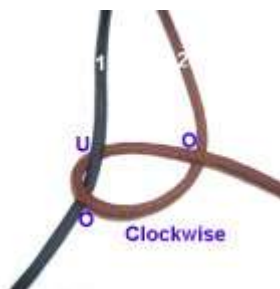
In some vintage patterns, the name of this knot is the **Chain Stitch**. In more modern texts, this design is sometimes called the **Zig-Zag braid**.

This decorative knot can be used to make a simple bracelet or necklace, as well as a handbag handle. Belts, wind chimes, and other long items can also be made with this knot.

There are other similar techniques listed under [Half Hitch Patterns](#). Each of the designs on that page feature the use of a **separate holding cord**.

The [Double Hitch Bracelet](#) features this knot, if you want to practice it by actually creating something.

**Step 1:** You need two cords, secured to a board or work surface. The cord on the left (1) is the holding cord for the first step.



Use cord 2 to tie a Half Hitch onto cord 1, moving **clockwise**.

A Half Hitch is tied by moving cord 2 **over** the holding cord, **under** it, and **over cord 2** on the right.

Keep the end on the right when you are done.



**Step 2:** For the second Half Hitch, cord 2 should hold the knot and cord 1 will be used to tie it.

It's the same over - under sequence as the first knot, but you rotate the cord **counter-clockwise** instead..



**Step 3:** Continue to alternate back and forth between the two cords as you tie additional knots to form the rest of the sennit.

# Half Hitch Spiral



**Description:** The Half Hitch Spiral is used often in Macrame patterns, and is a popular decorative knot for Micro-Macrame jewelry.

This type of spiral design is a bit easier to make than other similar patterns.

Spirals of any type are used often in plant hangers, belts, wall decorations, and more.

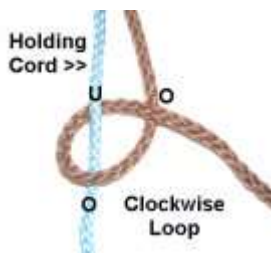
**Variations on this page:** The Shell Spiral and the Spiral with picots.

Both are vintage knots, popular in the late 1800's.

**Step 1:** You need two 20-inch cords to practice the first Half Hitch Spiral, shown above. Secure them to your working surface so they are **vertical**.

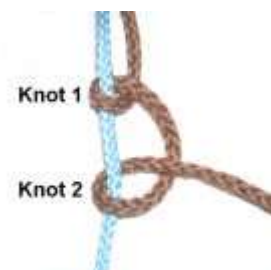
The cord on the right will hold the knots. In the images, that's the **blue cord**. The other one will be the working cord (brown).

**Design Tip:** A Macrame pattern will usually tell you which is the working cord. It will usually be longer than the cord holding the knots.



Tie a Half Hitch in a clockwise direction, onto the holding cord.

A Half Hitch is tied by passing the working cord **over**, and then **under**, the holding cord. Make sure it passes **over** the working cord as you bring it to the right.



**Step 2:** Repeat this same process over and over. Push up on the knots as you progress, so they are close together.



The sennit will spiral on it's own, but you can help it along by giving the design a twist.

The working cord should end up on the same side.





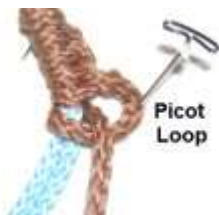
## Half Hitch Spiral + Picots

This interesting vintage technique adds a unique touch to the standard spiral design. You will need **three 20-inch cords** to practice this variation.



**Step 1:** Position one working cord on the **right**. The two holding cords should be placed to the left of it.

Use the working cord to tie 5 Half Hitches around the two holding cords.



**Step 2:** When you tie the next Half Hitch, pull it to the side, to make a picot loop.

Secure the loop. Tie four more Half Hitches.

**Design Tip:** Instead of a loop, try making an **Overhand knot**.

I've seen this done often in vintage designs, to give the Half Hitch Spiral some character.



**Step 3:** Repeat step 2 several more times.

You will need to twist the sennit periodically in order for it to spiral neatly.





## Shell Spiral

This unusual Half Hitch Spiral technique was found in a book written in the late 1800's. I've never seen it in more modern books. It forms a beautiful scalloped chain of knots that are suitable for purse handles, bracelets, and more.

The concept behind this design is that the spiral is **interrupted** due to the fact that you **switch cords**. It looks better if you use two colors.

**Step 1:** You'll need 3 cords, at least 36 inches long. Mentally number the cords 1 thru 3, moving left to right.



**Step 1:** Tie a total of **five** Half Hitches with cord 3 (on the **right** - brown), onto the other two cords.



**Step 2:** **Twist the sennit** so the working cord (3) is on the **left**.



**Step 3:** Use the cord that is now on the **right** (1), to tie five Half Hitches around cords 3 and 2.



**Step 4:** Twist the sennit, so the original working cord (3) is once again on the **right**. Tie the next five Half Hitches.

The key to creating this variation of the Half Hitch Spiral is to **always** use the working cord on the right. That will be either cord 1 or 3.



**Step 5:** This is a closer view of the **scallops**, which resemble shells.

# Basket et Stitch



**Standard Design**



**Progressive Design**

**Description:** The Basket Stitch is a vintage knot I found in a book written in the early 1900's. This Macrame technique is considered a variation of similar [Half Hitch Patterns](#) that require a holding cord.

What makes this knot unique is that you use several holding cords, which makes the alternating pattern much wider than other sennits.

You could use this decorative knot in any project that needs wide, flat chain of knots, such as a belt, purse strap, or a plant hanger.

I've also included an interesting variation called the Progressive Design. You can make V and X shapes with the technique.



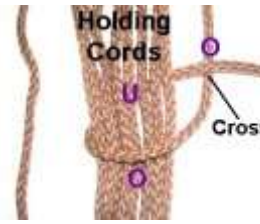
**Step 1:** You need at least 4 cords, folded in half and secured to a board vertically.

The two cords furthest to the right and left are the **working cords**. The remainder are the **holding** cords.

**Important:** All the Half Hitches for the Basket Stitch are tied by moving the working cord **over**, and then **under all the fillers**.

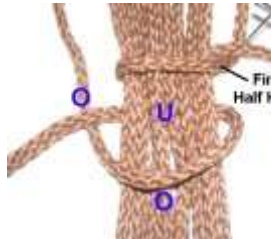
Make sure the end passes **over** the working cord, as you bring it to the side. You're making a loop, so the ends have to cross. You can see this in the first image below.

I recommend you secure the holding cords at the **top** and **bottom**, pulling them **so they have tension**. This really help to keep the knot as flat as possible.



**Step 2:** Use the working cord on the **right** to make the first Half Hitch in a **clockwise** direction.

Tighten it **gently** to leave the knot loose and flat, so the holding cords don't overlap too much.



**Step 3:** Use the working cord on the **left**, to tie the next Half Hitch below the first.

It should be tied in a **counter-clockwise** direction.



**Step 4:** Repeat steps 2 and 3 several times, to complete the Basket Stitch.

Try to keep the sennit as wide as possible, by pressing down on it as you progress.

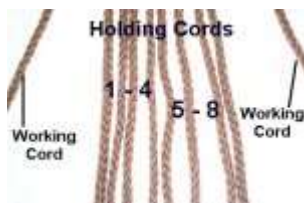


## PROGRESSIVE BASKET STITCH



This interesting technique is made by tying Half Hitches around increasing numbers of holding cords. The result is a very attractive design rarely seen in modern Macrame patterns.

You can make V shapes with this technique, as well as the X shape shown above.

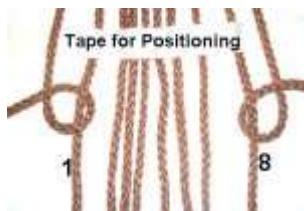


**Step 1:** The two cords furthest to the right and left are the **working** cords.

Mentally number the **holding** cords 1 - 8.

**Design Tip:** Apply a piece of tape horizontally, to make it easier to position the first knots.

Keep the holding cords straight and somewhat taut as you create this variation of the Basket Stitch.

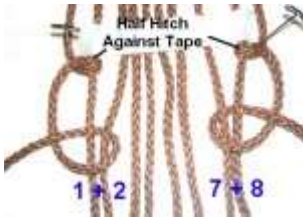


**Step 2:** Tie the first Half Hitch using the **left** working cord. Tie it onto holding cord 1.

Repeat the process with the **right** working cord, onto cord 8. Tighten both knots so they rest against the bottom of the tape.

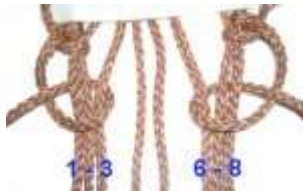
The process for tying the Half Hitches is the same as in the instructions for the standard design described above.





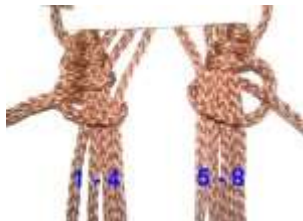
**Step 3:** The next set of Half Hitches are tied around **two** holding cords.

- Right: Holding Cords 7 and 8
- Left: Holding Cords 1 and 2



**Step 4:** The third set of Half Hitches is tied around **three** holding cords.

- Right: Holding Cords 6 - 8.
- Left: Holding cords 1 - 3.



**Step 5:** For the next row, the Half Hitches are tied as follows:

- Right: Holding cords 5 - 8
- Left: Holding cords 1 - 4.



**Step 6:** Use the **right** working cord to tie a Half Hitch around holding cords 4 - 8.

This includes one cord from the left group.



**Step 7:** The next Half Hitch is tied with the **left** working cord, onto holding cords 1 - 6.

This also includes one from the other group.



**Step 8:** Use the right working cord to tie a Half Hitch around **all 8 holding cords**.

Do the same with the left working cord.



Now you have a decision to make. You can stop here if you want a **V shaped design**.

Or you can repeat the steps in reverse order (8 - 2), to make the **X shaped design** shown here.

# Half Hitch Patterns



There are several different Half Hitch Patterns used in Macrame, which can be used to make various types of decorative sennits (chains). They can be used as part of plant hangers, or to make belts, bracelets, and other items that require a wide band of knots.

These particular designs all use **holding cords**, also called **knot bearers**. So the Half Hitches are tied onto them, rather than on each other. When practicing, it helps to use a different color for these holding cords.

On another page is the [Basket Stitch](#), which is a vintage technique. Multiple knot bearers are used to widen the design.

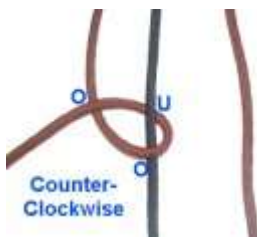


## Basic Design



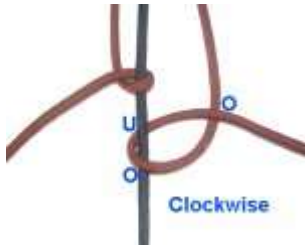
**Step 1:** Secure three cords vertically to your board or work surface. The holding cord is the one in the **center**, so make sure it's taut.

The other two are the working cords. They are used to tie the knots.



**Step 2:** Use the **left** working cord to tie the first Half Hitch, in a **counter-clockwise** direction.

A Half Hitch is tied by moving the end **over** and **under** the holding cord, and **over** the working cord, as you pull it to the side.



**Step 3:** Tie a Half Hitch in a **clockwise** direction, using the **right** working cord.

The Half Hitch is tied the same, no matter which direction you make the loop (over - under - over).



Repeat Steps 2 and 3 several times, alternating between the two working cords. Make sure all the Half Hitches are as close as possible.

Since I used Paracord, which is not as flexible as other types of materials, I could not tighten the Half Hitches all the way. Therefore, the loops along the edges were larger than usual.



## Basic Design Made Horizontally

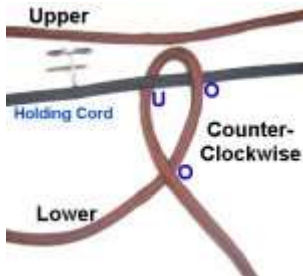


I've seen several Half Hitch patterns where the knots are arranged **horizontally**. It's not as easy to tie a sennit this way, but it looks as attractive as one made vertically.

Here are the instructions if you run across one of these patterns:

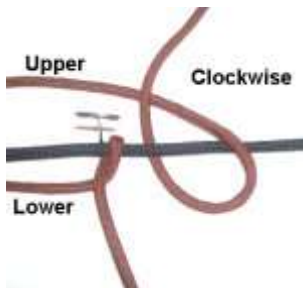


Place three cords horizontally on your board or work surface. The one in the middle is the holding cord, so make sure it's taut.



Use the **lower** working cord to make the first Half Hitch onto the holding cord. It should be tied in a **counter-clockwise** direction.

The knot is tied the same way as the others you have practiced (over - under - over).



The **upper** working cord is next. Tie the Half Hitch onto the holding cord, moving **clockwise**.



Alternate between the two working cords as you continue tying the rest of the sennit.



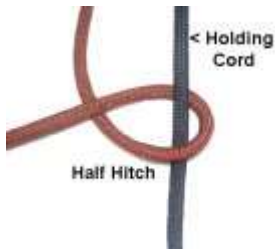
# Two-By-Two



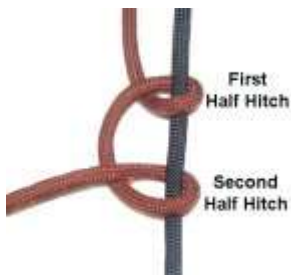
Half Hitch Patterns can be tied using two knots instead of one.

In vintage patterns, these are sometimes called **two by two chains**.

You need three cords, arranged vertically. Use the one in the middle as the holding cord.



**Step 1:** Tie a Half Hitch with the **left** working cord onto the holding cord, as in the basic design shown above.



**Step 2:** Using the **same** working cord, make a second Half Hitch, just below the first.

Two Half Hitches = 1 Double Half Hitch



**Step 3:** Use the working cord on the **right**, and make a Double Half Hitch (two knots).

**Step 4:** Repeat steps 2 and 3 several times.



Half Hitch patterns look best if the knots are close together. So slide them up against each other as you progress.

Make sure you keep the sennit as flat as possible.





# Progressive Design



Since you are busy learning Half Hitch patterns, I've added this unique vintage sennit for you to try.

It's called a progressive design, and requires four cords.

I've seen it in one book, written in 1899, but not in any of the more modern books.



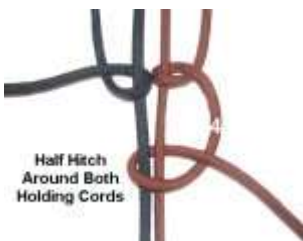
**Step 1:** Secure **four** cords to your board. You can use separate cords, or fold two in half.

Mentally number all four cords moving left to right. The holding cords are 2 and 3. The other two are the working cords.



**Step 2:** Use working cord 1 to tie a Half Hitch onto holding cord 2.

Use working cord 4 to tie a Half Hitch onto holding cord 3.



**Step 3:** Direct working cord 4 around **both** holding cords (2 and 3), as you make the next Half Hitch.



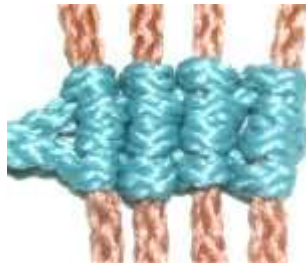
**Step 4:** Do the same with working cord 1; tie the Half Hitch around **both** holding cords.



**Step 5:** Repeat steps 2 - 4 until the sennit is the size you need.

Keep the knots close together as you progress, and tighten them firmly.

## Vertical Half Hitch



**Description:** The Vertical Half Hitch is different than other variations of the [Double Half Hitch](#). (DHH)

The two knots are arranged **vertically**. So the second knot rests below the first.

These knots are usually tied in horizontal rows, as shown above. But they can be tied diagonally, too.

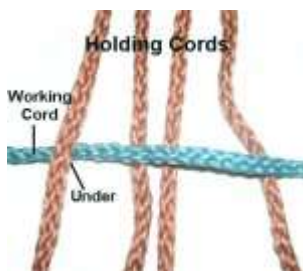
**One** working cord is used to attach the knots to **several holding cords**. With the regular Double Half Hitch, it's the opposite: There are several working cords and usually one holding cord.

In some Macrame books this technique is called the Vertical Double Half Hitch (VDHH), since there are two knots. It's used in combination with the regular DHH in **Cavendoli Macrame**.

This Macrame design can be used to make wide belts, friendship bracelets, ornaments, and even webbed feet for frogs and birds. Here are two projects that feature this decorative knot:

- [Far Away Frog](#) (Webbed Feet)
- [Friendship Bracelet](#)

## Basic Instructions



To practice this decorative knot, secure 4 or more **holding** cords to your board, arranged vertically.

Secure a 36-inch **working** cord to the **left** of the others, arranged horizontally. Make sure it passes **under** the first holding cord, on the far left.

**Design Tip:** When tying Half Hitches of any type, you usually start by passing the working cord under the holding cord. Then you tie the Half Hitch.



**Step 2:** To make the first Half Hitch, bring the end **over** the holding cord, **under** it, and **over** the working cord on the right (clockwise).

Tighten the knot firmly.



**Step 3:** Make the second Half Hitch the same way, so it rests below the first knot.

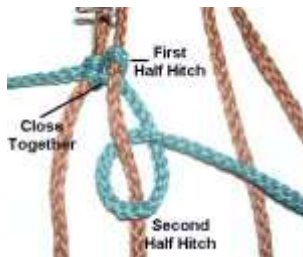
Tighten this knot firmly.

**Steps 2 + 3 = One Vertical Half Hitch**



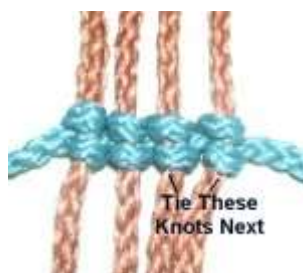
**Step 4:** To make the next knot, direct the end of the working cord **under** the next holding cord. It's the one to the **right** of the first.

Tie the Half Hitch the same way you did in Step 2. Pull it tightly, so there is little space between the knots on the two holding cords (see image below).

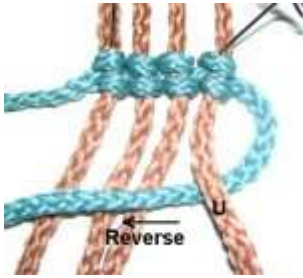


**Step 5:** Tie the second Half Hitch just below the first, like you did in Step 3.

**Design Tip:** Any time you make a Vertical Half Hitch, try to tighten the knots as much as possible.



**Step 6:** Tie the Half Hitches onto the next two holding cords, the same way you did in the previous steps.

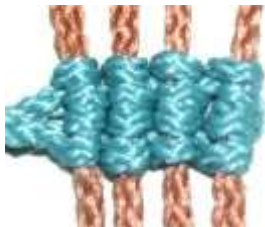


**Step 7:** To reverse the direction (right to left), bring the working cord **under** the holding cord furthest to the **right**.



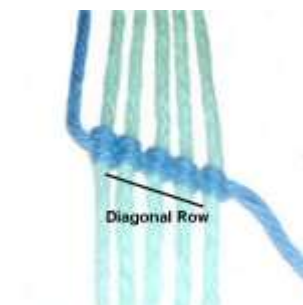
**Step 8:** Tie the Half Hitches the same as all the others, **over - under - over**.

Make sure the working end is heading towards the left, so you tie **counter-clockwise** Half Hitches.



Continue tying the remainder of the Vertical Half Hitch pattern, until you reach the left edge again.

Tighten the knots firmly to make sure both rows are close together.



**Design Tip:** The rows of these knots do not need to be horizontal. Here is an example of a row arranged in a diagonal slant.

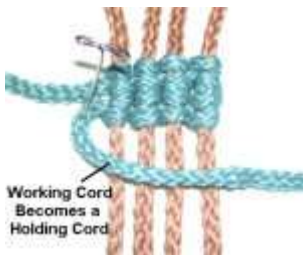


## Cavendoli Macrame

Cavendoli Macrame designs feature both the regular Double Half Hitch as well as the Vertical Half Hitch.

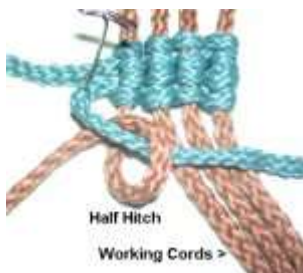
By using both variations, elaborate designs can be made, since a shift in colors is very easy to make.

Here is the basic concept and one very simple example:



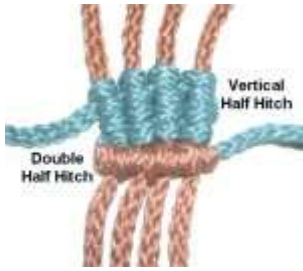
Tie two rows of Vertical HH with one working cord (blue), attaching them to **several** holding cords (brown).

The working cord is then positioned **below** the rows of knots already tied, and becomes a **holding cord**.



The previous holding cords (brown) change to working cords and are used to tie the Half Hitches.

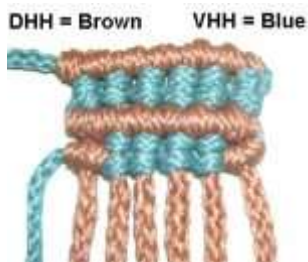
Here you can see the Half Hitch being tied onto the new holding cord.



So you end up with vertical rows of knots in one color, and a horizontal row in the other color.

**Design Tip:** Try to remember that the color of the **working cords** will be seen. The holding cord **will not** be seen, since the knots cover it.

I encourage you to practice this technique until you are familiar with switching back and forth between holding and working cords.



**Double Half Hitch (DHH)** = Several Brown working cords onto one blue holding cord.

**Vertical Half Hitch (VHH)** = Blue working cord onto several brown holding cords.



## Webbed Feet





Ever wonder how **Webbed Feet** for Frogs and Birds are made?

You use the Vertical Half Hitch, positioning the **holding cords** further apart as you complete each row.

You can also make fans and other triangular designs.



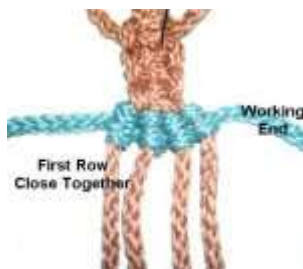
**Step 1:** To practice Webbed Feet, fold two cords in half, and secure them to your board. Tie several **Square Knots** to mimic the legs of a bird or frog.

Secure the working cord to the left of them, arranged horizontally.



**Step 2:** Tie the first Vertical Half Hitch with the working cord, onto the holding cord on the left.

You will progress left to right, so the knot is made **clockwise**.



**Step 3:** Complete the first row of Vertical HH as described in the basic instructions.

The knots should be close together. Pull down on the holding cords so the knots rest close to Square Knots.



**Step 4:** Spread the holding cords apart, so they are on an angle.

Secure them lower down, so they have tension, which makes tightening the knots easier.

**Design Tip:** As in all Double Half Hitch designs, the angle of the **holding cords** determines the overall shape.



**Step 5:** Tie several more rows of Vertical Half Hitches, reversing the direction back and forth.

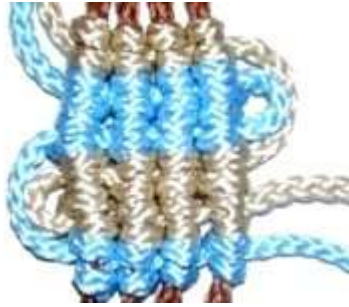
As you progress, the knots will be spaced further apart.



**Step 6:** To prevent the knots from sliding off the **holding cords**, tie **Overhand Knots**.

They should rest **against** the last row of Half Hitches. You will need to apply glue before cutting off the extra material.

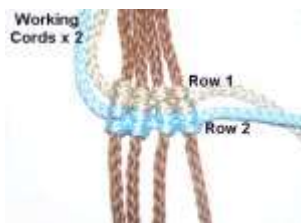




### Picot Design

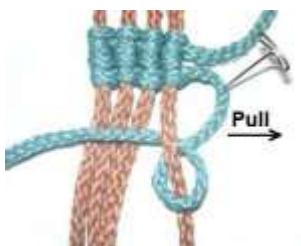
This is called a Picot design, which is a vintage technique. I found it in several of my oldest Macrame books, written in 1903. Rows of Half Hitches are tied, with loops at the edges.

You will need 4 holding cords to practice this Vertical Half Hitch pattern. Cut **two** working cords as well, preferably **two different colors**.

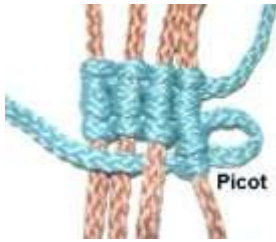


**Step 1:** Tie one row of Vertical HH with **each** of the working cords.

Make sure you progress from left to right, and that the knots are tied clockwise.



**Design Tip:** To make a Picot loop, you pull a portion of the **working cord** to the side, and secure it.

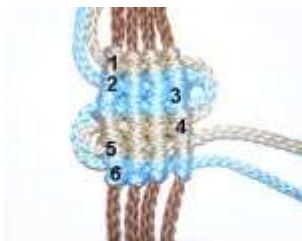


Then you tie the two Half Hitches, just as you normally would. Before tightening, adjust the size of the picot if necessary.



**Step 2:** The **same** working cord (blue) is used to tie the 3rd row of Vertical HH moving **right to left**.

The knots will be made **counter-clockwise**.



**Step 3:** Use the working cord you started with in the first row (tan), to make the 4th row moving **right to left**.

The picot loop should be larger and needs to fit around the **outside** of the first one.

**Step 4:** Both working cords should now be at the left again.

The 5th row is made with the working cord you just used (tan), moving **left to right**.

Don't forget to form the picot before you tighten the first knot.

**Step 5:** The 6th row is made with the other working cord (blue). The picot goes around the one made in step 4.

### Cockscomb Knot



**Cockscomb  
Knot**



**Loop  
Ringbolt**



**Zig-Zag  
Ringbolt**

**Description:** The Cockscomb knot, also known as Ringbolt Hitching, is an interesting decorative knot seldom used in Macrame.

Since it has to be tied to something, you could use it to decorate bottles, to cover a handle, or to wrap a thick bundle of cords together. I've seen this technique used to cover portions of chairs and other furniture.

The primary knots used are Half Hitches, but they are arranged in a unique way. The front of the knot will stand up above the surface of the dowel.

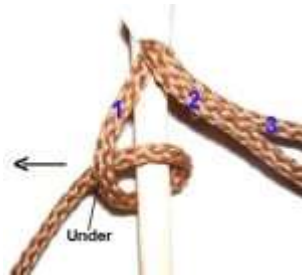
By alternating the direction of the Half Hitches, a type of braid is formed, which adds character.

**Variations:** The Cockscomb knot is often made with loops rather than braiding. So I have included the instructions for the Loop Ringbolt Hitch, and ZigZag Ringbolt.

**Step 1:** You need 3 cords, each at least 36 inches long. You will also need a dowel to practice this unique decorative knot.

Secure the cords at the **top** of the dowel, so they rest side-by-side. You can use another piece of cord or tape to hold them in place.

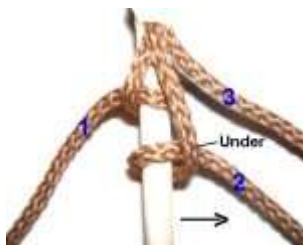
Place tape on the opposite end of each cord, and write the numbers 1 - 3 on the tape. This makes it easier to keep them organized. Make sure you move left to right as you number them.



**Step 2:** Wrap cord 1 around the dowel **counter-clockwise**, to make the first Half Hitch (under - over).

Make sure the end passes **under** the cord, on the left.

The end should remain on the **left** when you are through. Tighten the knot **firmly**.



**Step 3:** Use cord 2 next, and bring it down **below** cord 1. Make a Half Hitch in a **clockwise** direction, so the end is on the **right** when you are finished. (under - over - under)

Arrange the knot so it is next to the first one, and is completely tightened.



**Step 4:** Make the next Half Hitch with cord 3, so that the Half Hitch is made in a **counter-clockwise** direction, just like the first one. The end should rest on the **left**.

Slide it up next to the others, and tighten it firmly.



**Step 5:** Now you use cord 1 again. Pull it towards the **right**, crossing the **front** of the dowel on an angle.

Make the Half Hitch in a **clockwise** direction, so the end is on the **right** when you finish.



**Step 6:** Cord 2 is next, so pull it to the **left**. Tie the Half Hitch **counter-clockwise**, so the end is on the **left** when you are through.



**Step 7:** Bring cord 3 to the right, and make the Half Hitch in a **clockwise** direction.

To continue, repeat steps 5 - 7. Remember to **alternate** the directions of the Half Hitches each time you add another loop to the Cockscomb knot.

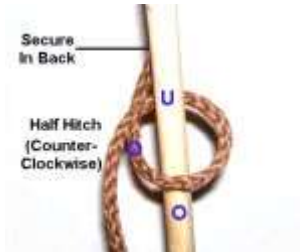


## Loop Ringbolt Hitch

This type of Cockscomb knot is made with **one cord**. The raised area is made with a series of loops, rather than crossed weaving.

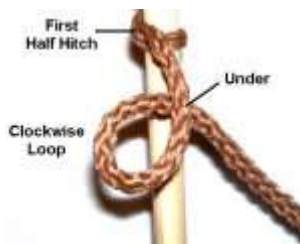


All the Half Hitches (and the loops) are made in the same direction, except for the first one.



**Step 1:** Secure one end of a 60-inch cord to the **back** of the dowel or item you are covering.

Make a **counter-clockwise** Half Hitch, by passing **over - under** the dowel, and **over** the cord. The end should be on the **left** when you are through.



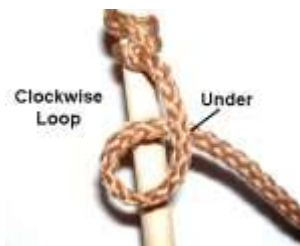
**Step 2:** Bring the working end down slightly and make a **clockwise** loop.

Cross the end **under** to make the crossing point, as you bring it to the right.



**Step 3:** Bring the working end **under** the dowel and to the left.

Pull it to the front and pass it through the loop from below (**under - over**). Tighten the knot firmly.



**Step 4:** Make the next **clockwise** loop, as you did in step 2. Make sure it rests just below the other loop. Repeat step 3.

To continue, just repeat steps 2 and 3 several times, until the design is the size you need.





## ZigZag Ringbolt

This type of Cockscomb knot is similar to the Loop Ringbolt above, but the loops are made in **alternate directions**. This creates a ZigZag appearance to the knots.

You'll need one 60-inch cord to practice.



**Step 1:** Make a **counter-clockwise** Half Hitch to secure the cord to the dowel. (over - under - over)

The end should be on the **left** when you are finished.



**Step 2:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop, passing the end **under** to make the crossing point on the left.

This loop should be in the front of the dowel.



**Step 3:** Bring the end around the back of the dowel, moving left to right.

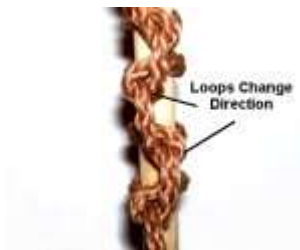
Pass it through the loop from **below (under - over)**, pulling it to the front of the dowel.



**Step 4:** The next loop is made in a **clockwise** direction. Make sure the end passes **under** to create the crossing point on the right.

Bring the end under the dowel, and through the loop from below.

To continue, repeat steps 3 and 4 over and over, **alternating the direction** of the loops each time.



This is what the ZigZag Ringbolt looks like with the knots separated. The loops change direction each time.

When creating this type of Cockscomb knot, make sure you place the loops next to each other as you tighten them. I only separate them to show the details.

## Double Half Hitch Patterns



Double Half Hitch Patterns are used in many Macrame projects. From angles to flowers, the possible variations are endless, once you understand this basic concept:

The direction and angle of the **holding cord** will determine the shape of the Macrame design

I have listed three examples of how this decorative knot can be used to make different shapes -- Angles, Zigzags, and Leaves.

Make sure you know how to tie a **Double Half Hitch** before you get started, and that you know the difference between a **holding** cord and a **working** cord.

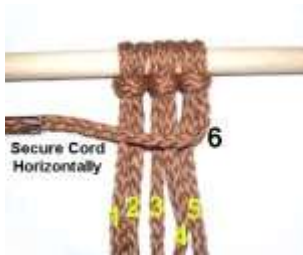


## Making Angles

Double Half Hitch Patterns are often used to make designs featuring **angles**.

The instructions below will show you how to create angles in **two directions**.

Start by mounting 3 cords to a dowel or holding cord with **Larks Head Knots**. You need the 6 ends to make this Macrame design.



**Step 1:** Mentally number the cords 1 - 6.

Direct **cord 6** to the **left**, so it rests on top of the other cords.

Secure it so it has **tension** and is horizontal. It will be the **holding cord** for the first row.



**Step 2:** Attach **cord 5** to the holding cord with a Double Half Hitch.

This image shows the **first** Half Hitch, made by passing the working cord **over - under** the holding cord.

As you pull it to the right, pass **over** the **working** cord. Repeat this process to tie the second knot.

**Step 3:** Attach all the remaining working cords to the holding cord (6) in the same manner, moving right to left.

Bring the first holding cord **down** so it rests to the **left** of the others. It will now be used as a **working cord**. (see image below)



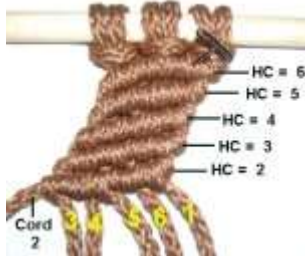
Use the cord furthest to the right (5) as the next holding cord.

Attach the remaining cords to it, moving right to left. **Be sure to include the first holding cord (6).**

**Step 4:** Continue this process until you have 5 or 6 horizontal rows.

Always use the cord **furthest to the right** as the new holding cord.

Then attach the remainder, including the ones previously used.



I labeled this image so you can see where the holding cords start and end.

For only one angle, stop here. To make your Double Half Hitch patterns with two angles, continue on to the next steps.



**Step 5:** Use the same holding cord you ended with (cord 2 in this case).

Direct it to the **right**, resting on top of the other cords. Attach the remaining cords to it with DHH.



**Step 6:** The remainder of the process is the same as in steps 1 thru 5, except for the direction.

**Design Tip:** Double Half Hitch patterns using angles look great in belt designs. You would start in the center of the cords, and work towards the ends.

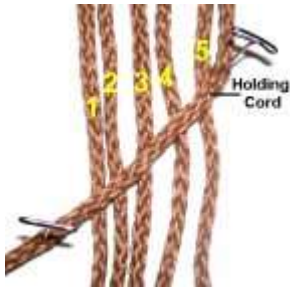


## Zigzag Design

Remember that Double Half Hitch patterns depend on the position of the holding cord. So in this Zigzag design, the holding cord alternates directions.

You can make a variety of shapes, such as letters and numbers, using this technique.

You will need at least 3 cords folded in half and secured to a board. If you prefer, you can mount them to a dowel or another cord.



**Step 1:** The cord furthest to the **right (6)** will be the holding cord for the **entire design**.

Direct it to the **left**, on a diagonal slant, which can be any angle you want.



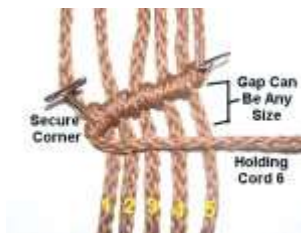
**Step 2:** Start with Cord 5, attaching it to the holding cord with a DHH.

Securing the holding cord at the **right corner** will help to create a straighter row of knots.



**Step 3:** Attach the rest of the cords (4 - 1), to the holding cord with DHH.

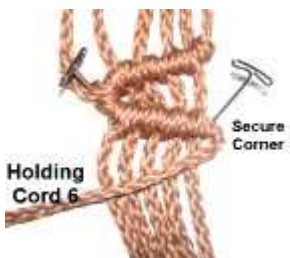
Pull each knot tightly to form a straight, firm bar.



**Step 4:** Direct the holding cord (6) to the **right**, after securing the last DHH on the **left corner**.

Attach the working cords to it with DHH, moving **left to right** this time.

**Design Tip:** The gap between the two rows can be any size you wish, simply by changing the angle of the holding cord.



**Step 5:** Direct the holding cord back to the **left**, and attach the other cords to moving **right to left**.

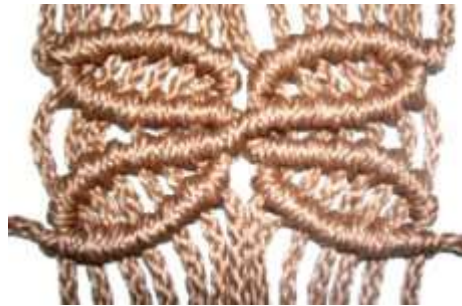
Securing the corner each time you change directions will help keep the holding cord taut.





With most Double Half Hitch patterns, the design looks best if you repeat the process more than once.

So just bring the holding cord right again and tie the next row of DHH.



## Leaf Shaped Design

Double Half Hitch patterns like this one look very complex, but are actually quite easy to make once you know the basics. This leaf design was found in a Macrame book written in 1899, and I've seen it in more modern books as well.

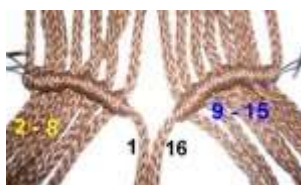
Make sure you understand the difference between a working cord and a holding cord.

Try to remember to attach the working cords in the same direction you moved the holding cord.

**Step 1:** Fold 8 cords in half and secure them to your board. This gives you 16 cords to work with. Mentally number them 1 - 16.



The first two holding cords will be 1 and 16. They should **curve** slightly as you direct them towards the **center** of the design.



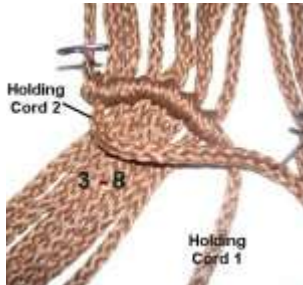
**Step 2:** Attach cords 2 - 8 to holding cord 1. Attach cords 15 - 9 to holding cord 16 (move right to left).

As you tie the DHH, tighten them so the bar still curves upward slightly.



**Design Tip:** Remember that all Double Half Hitch patterns are determined by the curve and angle of the **holding** cords.

To change the shape, just adjust the position of the holding cord as you attach the working cords to it.



**Step 3:** The holding cord for the **bottom** of the **left** leaf is cord 2.

Curve it towards the **center**, so it has a gentle downward curve as shown.

Attach cords 3 thru 8 to it with DHH. Try to maintain the curve as you progress.



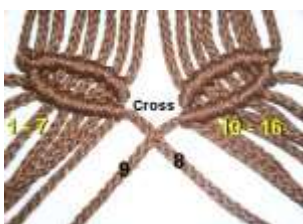
**Step 4:** Attach **holding cord 1**, which formed the upper portion of the leaf, to holding cord 2.

This closes the leaf shape, so pull the knot tightly.



**Step 5:** Use cord 15 as the lower holding cord on the right, and attach 14 thru 9 to it with DHH (right to left).

Close the leaf design by attaching the first holding cord (16) to the one you are currently using (15).



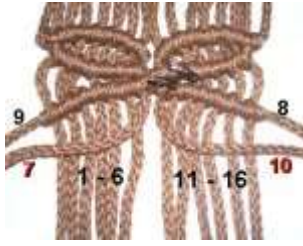
**Step 6: Mentally re-number the cords.**

The two closest to the center (8 and 9) are the next set of holding cords. Cross them, right over left.



**Step 7:** Direct holding cord 9 to the **left**, and cord 8 to the **right**. Secure them so they curve upward slightly.

Attach cords 7 - 1 to holding cord 9 (right to left).  
Attach cords 10 - 16 to holding cord 8 (left to right).



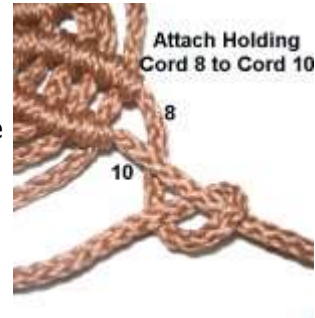
**Step 8:** Direct cord 7 to the **left**, to be used as the next holding cord at the bottom of the leaf. Do the same with cord 10, directing it **right**.

Attach cords 6 - 1 to holding cord 7 with DHH. Do the same with cords 11 - 16, attaching them to holding cord 10.



**Step 9:** Attach the upper holding cords (8 and 9) to the ones you just used for the lower portion (7 and 10).

This is the same as steps 4 - 5, which closes the leaf shape.



This is what the completed design looks like. You can create more than 2 rows of leaves by repeating steps 6 through 9.

## Shell Knot



**Description:** The Shell Knot is a type of diamond, formed in such a way that it ends up round. I've seen it referred to as a **Berry Knot** in vintage patterns. It's rare to find this Macrame design used anymore.

You could use this decoration on handbags, plant hangers, wall hangings, or in curtain patterns. Macrame for Kids has a cute project called the [Mini Turtle](#),

which features this knot.

To help you learn this unique combination knot, I used a second color for the main holding cords. In most Macrame patterns all the cords are usually one color.

The following knots are used in this design, so make sure you practice them:

- [Square Knot \(SK\)](#)
- [Double Half Hitch \(DHH\)](#)
- [Diamonds](#)

You need 10 separate cords to make this knot (8 working cords and 2 holding cords). Each should each be at least 24 inches long.

In an actual Macrame project, you may be instructed to create the Shell Knot with cords already in use.

When practicing, use a **different color** for the holding cords. In this example, the holding cords are tan, and the working cords are brown.



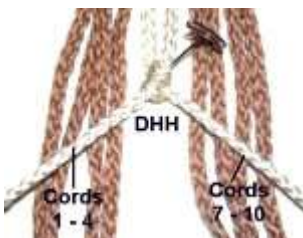
**Step 1:** Mentally number the cords 1 thru 10. The holding cords are the ones in the **center** (5 and 6).

Cross cord 5 over 6, and secure them at the crossing point.



Use cord 5 to tie a DHH onto cord 6. Rotate **clockwise**. (The image shows one knot -- tie two)

A Half Hitch is tied by passing the working cord **over - under** the holding cord. As you pull it to the side, pass **over** the **working cord**.



**Step 2:** Direct holding cord 5 to the **right**, and secure it so it has tension.

Do the same with cord 6, positioning it to the **left**.

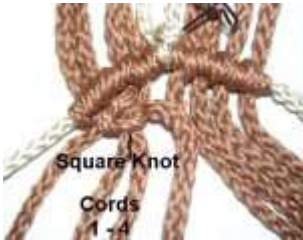
**Step 2:** Attach cords 4 thru 1 to holding cord 5 (right to left), with Double Half Hitches.

Attach cords 7 thru 10 to holding cord 6 with DHH (left to right).



The **top edge** of the Shell Knot is now finished.

Keep the holding cords secured to the board, and **don't use them** until steps 8 and 9.



**Step 3:** Tie a **left** Square Knot using cords 1 - 4 (two working cords, two fillers).

**Reminder:** The head of the SK will face the direction of the first cord moved, in this case the left.



Tie a **right** SK with cords 7 - 10.

Make sure both knots are as tight as possible, and they rest next to the bars formed by the DHH.

Now you will work on the center portion of the Shell Knot. Organize the cords into two groups. The **working** cords are 1 - 4. The **holding** cords are 7 - 10.



**Step 4:** Direct holding cord 7 to the **left**, on top of the working cords. It should rest just below the Square Knot on the left. Secure it so it's taut.

Attach cords 4 - 1 to holding cord 7 with DHH. Make sure you tighten both Half Hitches **firmly**.

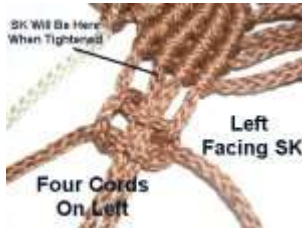


**Step 5:** Direct holding cord 8 to the **left**, to be used as the next holding cord.

Attach cords 4 thru 1 to it with DHH. Make sure you tighten them as much as possible, so the bars are close together.



**Step 6:** Repeat step 5 two more times, using holding cords are 9 and 10.



**Step 7:** Tie a **left SK** with the four cords on the left. These were holding cords 7 - 10 used in the previous steps.

When it's tightened, it should rest next to the DHH. **Make sure it's as tight as possible.**



Tie a **right SK** with the four cords on the right.

**Tighten it as much as possible**, so it rests next to the DHH.

The center portion of the Shell Knot should pop upward on it's own. If not, give it some help, pushing it up from underneath.

Now you will make the bottom edge of the Shell Knot. Remove the pins from the two original holding cords (5 and 6).



**Step 8:** Direct holding cord 6 towards the **center** of the shell (right).

Attach the four cords on the **left** to it with DHH, progressing left to right.

Push the knots close together, which will cause the shape to become round.

The first knot should be close to the ones in the upper shell, so there is a complete circle of DHH. (see image below)



**Step 9:** Direct holding cord 5 towards the center (left).

Attach the four cords on the **right** to it with DHH.

Progress right to left as you attach them.

**Step 10:** Attach one holding cord to the other with a DHH. This will close the round shape, and complete the bottom of the Shell Knot.



# Spiral Design



**Description:** The Spiral Design is a very unique way of using Double Half Hitches. I have seen it in only one Macrame pattern, out of the hundreds I have looked at.

Like all Double Half Hitch patterns, the **holding cord** determines the shape. So by moving it in a circular or oval path, the bars form the spiral shape.

You could use this design to form the center of a Macrame flower, or to make Micro-Macrame earrings. Animal patterns often require ears, so this would be a good option.

Make sure you practice tying [Double Half Hitches](#) (DHH) before you get started.

Use a project board and pins to help control the cords. You also need room to **rotate the entire board** as you construct the knot.

It's best to use 2mm to 4mm material to practice this decorative knot, because you can pull the cords more tightly than with thicker cords. To practice, each cord should be at least 36 inches long.

In the example below, I used two colors only because I wanted to see how that would look in practice. A very nice rainbow pattern can be made by using several colors.

**Step 1:** Place the **holding cord** on your board horizontally.

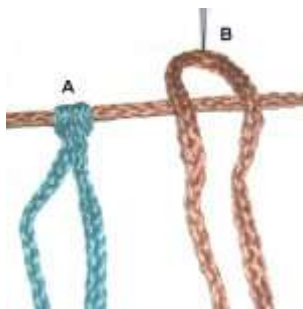
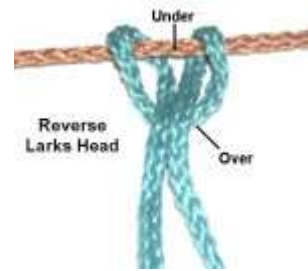
A short, **10-inch segment** should be secured on the **left**. The long end is on the **right**, and will be moved to form the Spiral Design.

Whenever new working cords are added, you use a **reverse** Larks Head knot, as described below:



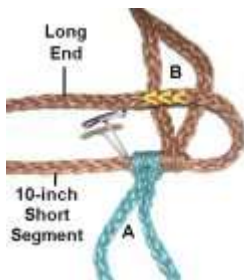
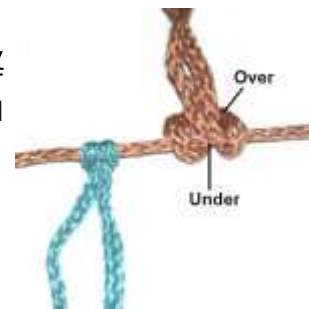
<< Fold a working cord in half, and place it **on top** of the holding cord, with the ends at the **top**.

Bring the ends **under** the holding cord, and **over** the folded area of the working cord. >>



<< To mount the second cord (B), fold it in half and place it on top of the holding cord. The ends should head **downward**.

Bring the ends **under** the holding cord, and **over** the folded area of the working cord. >>

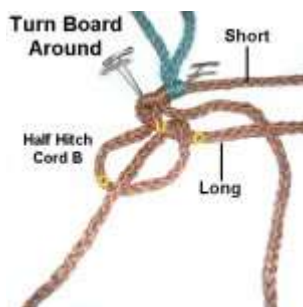


**Step 2:** Move the two knots close to each other. Curve the **long** end of the holding cord to the **left**, passing **over** the ends of **working cord B**.

**Step 3:** Turn the entire board around if you can, so working cord B is resting at the **bottom**. Both ends of the holding cord should be on the right.

Attach both halves of cord B to the holding cord, with DHH. Tighten the knots as much as possible.

Here are the instructions for one Half Hitch. Make sure you tie **two** to make **Double** Half Hitches:



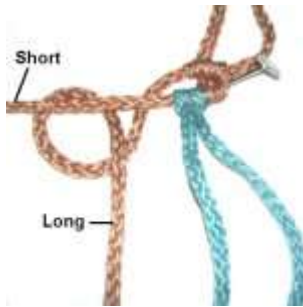
<< Pass the cord **over - under** the holding cord. As you bring it down, it should go **over** the working cord.

This is what the inner portion of the Spiral Design will look like, when both cords are attached. >>



**Step 4:** Turn the board around again, so the short segment of the holding cord is on the **left**.

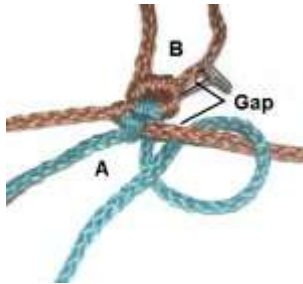
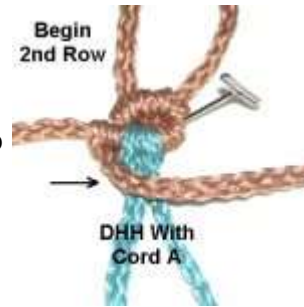




<< Move the **long** portion of the holding cord **under** the short segment.

Use the long end to tie a DHH onto the short segment.

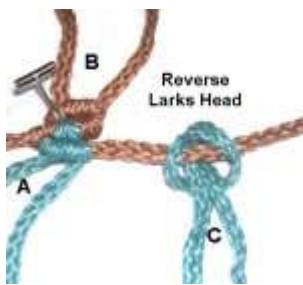
You are now ready to create the **2nd row** of the Spiral Design. >>



**Step 5:** To start the second row of the Spiral Design, move the **long end** of the holding cord to the **right**.

Attach both ends of working cord A to it with DHH.

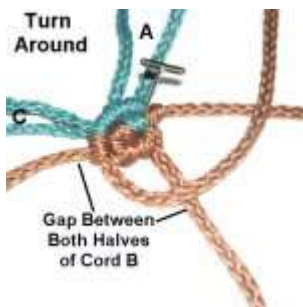
Note that there is a **gap between cords A and B**. You need to add a new cord to cover that area (see below).



**Step 6:** Add a **new** working cord to the **long** end of the holding cord with a reverse Larks Head knot. Mentally label it as **cord C**.

Move it close to the other knots on the left.

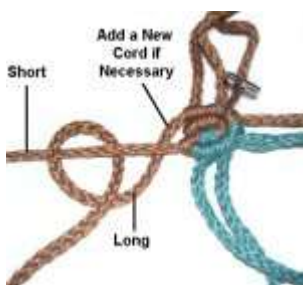
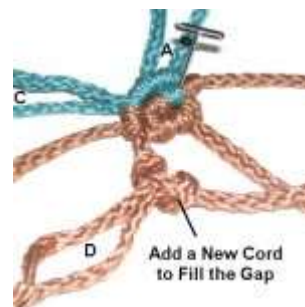
**Step 7: Turn the board around.** See the gap between the two halves of cord B? A new cord will be added here, to cover the gap (see below).



<< Attach the 1st half of working cord B to the holding cord.

Add another new cord, with a reverse Larks Head knot.

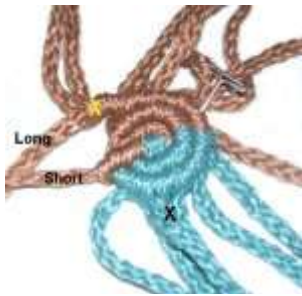
Attach the 2nd half of cord B to the holding cord. >>



**Step 8:** Turn the board again, and bring the long end of the holding cord under the short portion.

When you pull it, see if the knots in the upper part of the Spiral Design rest next to those in the lower area. If not, add a new cord.

Attach the long portion to the short portion of the holding cord, as you did in step 4.



**Step 9:** Continue on to make the third two, then the 4th, etc. Add cords where there are gaps.

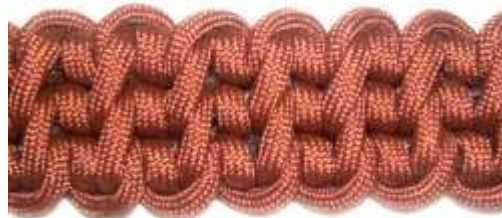
In this image I marked the places where I added cords with an X. Usually you will need to add 2 to 4 cords per row.



Make sure you **always** attach the **long** end of the holding cord to the **short end**, to complete each row.

The Spiral Design will not be stable if you forget this very important step.

## Guitar Bar



**Description:** The Guitar Bar is a very unique way to use Half Hitches. They are arranged in horizontal rows, and are attached to vertical holding cords.

By flipping the sennit over every other row, raised areas form, which resemble the frets of a guitar.

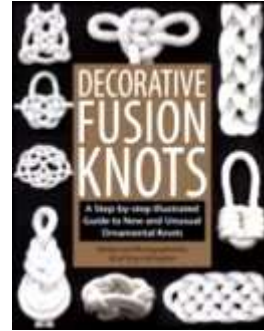
This interesting Macrame design can be used for bracelets, belts, key chains, and other similar projects where you need a thick sturdy band of decorative knots.

In these images, I used 4mm Paracord, which I recommend. **If you use a more flexible material, the band will have a tendency to twist.**

I found the Guitar Bar on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

Be sure to check out the knot gallery, to see [videotutorials](#) of interesting combination knots.

If you are looking for new and exciting knots to experiment with, I highly recommend this book!



To practice, you need three 20-inch **holding** cords, and one 72-inch **working** cord.

**When actually creating something, such as a bracelet, use this formula:**

- Holding Cords: Finished size of item x 2.5
- Working Cord: Finished size x 12

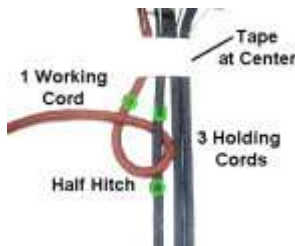
These measurements will work for other items, like key chains and belts. Make sure to add more length to all the cords if you need to make **a clasp**.

**Step 1:** For this decorative knot, you need to use a **project board**, since pins are needed to keep the cords taut.

Arrange all the cords vertically on your board. Secure the cords at the center.

The working cord needs to be on the **left**. Place a piece of masking tape across the cords horizontally, at the center. This way the first row of knots will line up in a neat row.

Secure the holding cords so they are **straight and have tension**. This helps to eliminate the twisting that sometimes occurs as you construct the Guitar Bar.



Tie a **counter-clockwise** Half Hitch with the working cord, onto the first holding cord.

The Half Hitches are tied by directing the working cord **over - under** the holding cord. Make sure it goes **over** the segment of the cord you are working with, as you pull it left. Tighten the knot firmly.

**Design Tip:** By starting in the center, you work towards the ends. This allows you to make a clasp when you are finished with the Guitar Bar. For a belt, you could just tie the ends together as the closure, or add a buckle.



**Step 2:** The first knot should now rest against the lower edge of the tape.

Use the working cord to tie the next Half Hitch onto the second holding cord.

**Design Tip:** Make sure you **always** keep the end of the working cord on your **left** when tying the Half Hitches, so they are made counter-clockwise.



**Step 3:** Tie the next Half Hitch onto the third holding cord.



**Step 4:** **Flip the Guitar Bar over**, so the working cord is once again on the **left**.

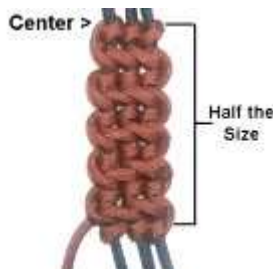
The numbering of the cords has changed, but you will still work left to right.



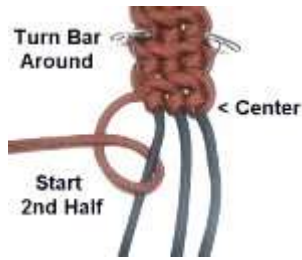
**Step 5:** Start the next row by tying the Half Hitch with the working cord, onto holding cord 3 (left).

Remember to keep the end to your left, and rotate **counter-clockwise**.

When the row is finished, flip the design over again and repeat.



**Step 6:** Continue on, repeating steps 4 - 5, until the Guitar Bar is **1/2 the size** you need.



**Step 7:** Turn the design around, and go back to the center.

Make the second half of the bar the same as the first half. Progress from the center towards the ends. Tie the knots from **left to right**, and rotate counter-clockwise.

**Step 8:** When the Guitar Bar is the size you want, tie an Overhand knot with the 4 cords. Do this at both ends.

The purpose for the Overhand knots is to hold the last rows of Half Hitches in place. So you can tie one knot using all the cords, or tie a knot in each cord separately.

You can use other types of finishing knots, too. [Oysterman knots](#) work well, as do [Stevedore Knots](#).

For something more decorative, try a [Triangle knot](#), or a [Celtic Button](#).

**Beads** are a good option for a bracelet or belt design. Just make sure they fit snugly around the cords, so they keep the knots from sliding.

## Empty Diamond



**Description:** The Empty Diamond is such a unique diamond design, that I decided it needed a page of it's own. I found this vintage decorative knot in a book written in the late 1800's. It's not used very often in modern Macrame projects.

The reason this diamond is considered **empty** is due to the fact that the ends do not pass through the center in any way. They are isolated to the top and bottom of the diamond, creating an open space in the center.

You also eliminate the cords on the **outside** edges of the diamond, which means you can use this design as a pendant.

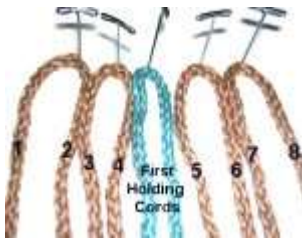
The key to successfully making this knot is to tighten all the Double Half Hitches as much as possible, so the four edges are as slender as you can make

them. Using 2mm or 4mm materials will help.

It's very important to keep the holding cords flat and **arranged neatly**.

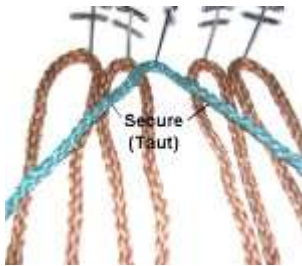
Make sure you know the difference between **holding** and **working** cords, and that you know how to tie a **Double Half Hitch**.

## Preparation



Fold five 36-inch cords and secure them to your board with pins. The first holding cord should be in the **center**. I used a **blue** color for instruction purposes only. In an actual project, it should be the same color as the others.

Mentally number the working cords 1 - 4 and 5 - 8 (brown).



Direct the ends of the first holding cord to the right and left. Make sure they are secured well, and have tension.



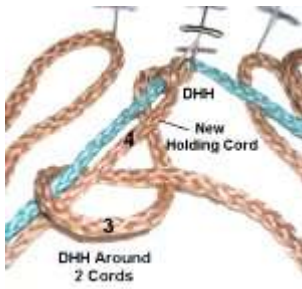
## Top of Empty Diamond



**Step 1:** Tie the first **clockwise** Half Hitch with cord 4, by passing it **over - under** the holding cord, and **over** the portion of **cord 4** to the right.

Tie a second Half Hitch the same way. Two Half Hitches is called a Double Half Hitch (DHH). Push the knots close to the top folded edge of the holding cord (blue).



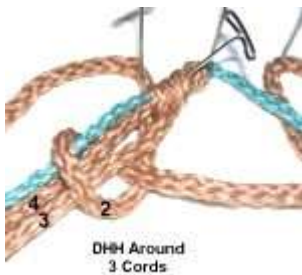


**Step 2:** Bring cord 4 down, so it rests **below** the first holding cord. **It now becomes the second holding cord.**

Tie a Double Half Hitch with **cord 3**, onto both holding cords. Make sure you tighten the knot as much as you can, and that it rests next to the first one.

**Important:** Notice in step 2 that I removed the pin when I tied the Half Hitches with cord 3. This is an essential part of the Empty Diamond design.

You need to **eliminate the folded segment** of each cord to create a smooth edge.



**Step 3:** Bring cord 3 down and secure it with the other two holding cords.

Use cord 2 to tie a DHH, onto **all three holding cords.**

Make sure you tighten the knot as much as possible.

**Design Tip:** Notice how the three holding cords are neatly arranged. Each time you bring a cord down, it should rest **below the others**. This way, when you get to the bottom section, you can reverse the process more easily.



**Step 4:** Bring cord 2 down with the others and secure it. Use cord 1 to tie a DHH around all 4 holding cords.

It's important to carefully tighten this knot, so the Empty Diamond will be more attractive when it's finished.



**Step 5:** Repeat steps 1 - 4 on the right, attaching working cords 5 - 8 in the same manner.

**The Half Hitches should be tied rotating clockwise.**

Push the first knot you tie close to the first one on the



left, at the **top point** of the angle.



## Bottom of Empty Diamond

For the top portion of the diamond, you took a working cord and turned it into a holding cord, which is considered **adding**.

Now you will reverse the process, and **subtract** one cord in each step.

**Step 6:** Direct the **left group** of holding cords right, towards the center. Secure them so they all have tension.



Cord 1 is used first, since it's the last one you used at the top half. Tie a DHH around the other 4 cords.

Make sure the two Half Hitches are firmly tightened, and that they are as close to the ones in the top half as possible (to cover the corner).

After you are finished, push cord 1 to the side, and **don't use it again**.



**Step 7:** Locate cord 2 and use it to tie the next DHH onto the other three cords. Then push it off to the side.

Cord 2 is the one at the **bottom** of the bundle, furthest from the first holding cord (blue).



**Step 8:** Use cord 3 next, which is now at the bottom. Tie the DHH around the other two cords. Push cord 3 off to the side.

**Step 9:** Use cord 4 to tie a DHH around the first holding cord (blue).



**Step 10:** Repeat steps 6 - 9 to make the lower right portion of the Empty Diamond.

**Step 11:** Tie the ends of the **first** holding cord together (blue). In this image, I attached the left one to the right, but you can do the opposite.



**Step 12 (optional):** Pull the ends so they rest in the **back** of the diamond.

Apply glue to the areas where the cords exit each knot (back). When it's dry, cut off the ends close to the back surface.

## Vintage Diamonds



**Description:** Vintage Diamonds are the most commonly used decorative knot patterns in Macrame. Most Macrame books will have instructions and projects that use them in one form or another.

You create diagonal rows of [Double Half Hitches \(DHH\)](#), to make both the **top** and **bottom** of the diamond.

It's the design in the center that can be changed. I've shown you 6 of the most common diamond designs on this page.

Make sure you know the difference between **holding** and **working** cords. See the [Dictionary](#) for more details.



## Basic Instructions for Top of

# Diamonds

When you make all the Vintage Diamonds on this page, you start by creating the **top half**. I used a different color for the two holding cords, to make learning easier.

When practicing, you can fold 5 cords in half, or use 10 individual cords.

In an actual Macrame project, the cords may be mounted to something or come from other knots.

Secure the cords to a **project board** with pins. There should be 4 working cords, 2 holding cords, and 4 more working cords.



**Step 1:** Mentally number the cords 1 - 4 on the left of the holding cords, and 5 - 8 on the right.

**Cross the 2 holding cords.**



**Step 2:** Attach one holding cord to the other with a Double Half Hitch.

Many Macrame patterns will have you start the Vintage Diamonds by crossing only, but I prefer the top to be knotted, even if I have to remove the knots later.

To make one Half Hitch, direct the working cord **over** and then **under** the holding cord. Make sure it passes **over** the cord you are working with, as you pull it to the side.

Tie a second knot the same way, to make a **Double** Half Hitch (DHH).



**Step 3:** Secure the left holding cord diagonally, make sure it has tension. The angle of the diamond determines the shape of the Vintage Diamond until you are satisfied with the shape.

Attach working cord 4 to the **left** holding cord with a DHH. Rotate **clockwise**, so the end is held to the **right** after the knots are tied.



**Step 4:** Attach cords 3 - 1 to the left holding cord with DHH.

When making rows of DHH, you attach the working cords the same direction as the holding cord. In this case, the holding cord was moved right to left. So the cords are attached 4 - 1.



**Step 5:** Direct the other holding cord to the **right**, and secure it. Attach cords 5 - 8 to it with DHH, rotating **counter-clockwise**.

**Keep the holding cords secured to your board** as you work on the inside of the diamond, which is made with the **working cords only**.

**Design Tip:** The reason the knots are tied in different directions is so the cords are heading **towards each other**, and are together in the center.

For the bottom half of Vintage Diamonds, the knots are tied in the **opposite direction** as the top, so the cords are heading **away from each other**.



## Variations for Inside of Diamond

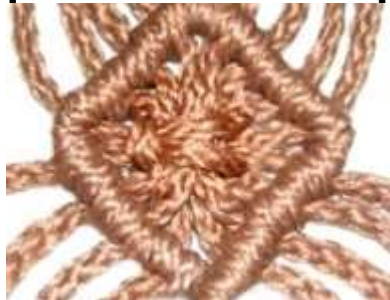
Below are six variations you can use to decorate the **inside** of Vintage Diamonds. They were frequently seen in Macrame of the early 1900's. In more modern patterns, the first design is the most common.

Notice that I secured the right and left edges of the diamond, near cords 1 and 8. That's to hold the shape and helps you make the side angles sharper. If you don't do this, your diamonds will have a tendency to have rounded edges.

Another option is to tie tight **Overhand knots** with the **holding cords**, so they rest at the right and left corners.



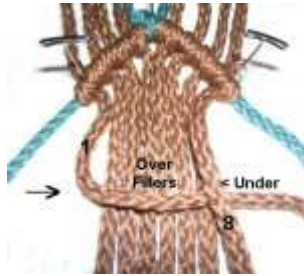
### Square Knot Technique



**Description:** The **Square Knot** Technique is the most common

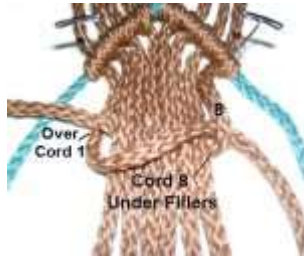
variation you will find in Macrame patterns.

Create the top of the diamond first, following the Basic Instructions above.



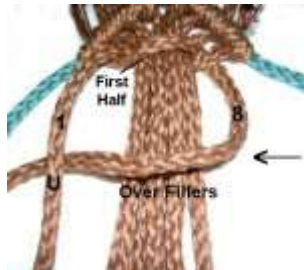
**Step 1:** Mentally number the working cords 1 - 8.

For the first half of the Square Knot, direct cord 1 to the **left**. It should pass **over** the fillers (2 -7), and **under** cord 8.



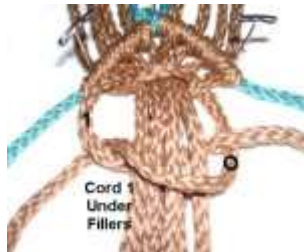
**Step 2:** Direct cord 8 **under** the fillers, and **over** cord 1, as you pull it to the left.

Tighten the SK so it lines up with the pins at the right and left edges.



**Step 3:** The 2nd half is tied in reverse direction, since the working cords have switched places.

Direct cord 8 **over** the fillers and **under** cord 1.



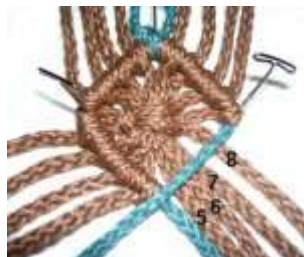
**Step 4:** Bring cord 1 **under** the fillers and **over** cord 8 on the right.



**Step 5:** Direct the **left** holding cord towards the center and secure it (move it left to right).

Attach cords 1 - 4 to it with DHH.

Rotate **counter-clockwise**, so the cords head left.



**Step 6:** Direct the **right** holding cord to the center.

Attach cords 8 - 5 to it with DHH (in that order), rotating **clockwise**, so the cords head right.





**Step 7:** Complete the Vintage Diamond by tying one holding cord onto the other with a DHH.

In some Macrame projects, you will be asked to skip this step and only cross the cords, before moving on to the next knot.



## Folded Technique



**Description:** For the Folded Technique, the working cords are attached to the holding cord (at the bottom) in **reverse order**.

So a space is formed in the center, surrounded by folded cords. The design actually looks a little like a window with a curtain.



**Step 1:** Create the top of the diamond as described in the Basic Instructions.

Direct the left holding cord towards the center (right). Secure it so it's taut.



**Step 2:** Direct **cord 4** across the other three cords. Attach it to the left holding cord. (**counter-clockwise**)

Next, attach cords 3, 2 and 1 in the same manner.

**Design Tip:** When tying diagonal rows of DHH, you usually start with the working cord closest to the holding cord. But in this design, you attach them in reverse.



**Step 3:** Direct the **right** holding cord to the center, and secure it.

Attach cords 5 - 8 to it with DHH, rotating **clockwise**.



**Step 4:** The final step for most Vintage D close the bottom.

You do this by attaching one holding cord with a DHH.



## Alternating Square Knot Technique



**Description:** This is another common technique for filling the center of Vintage Diamonds.

You tie four **Alternating Square knots** rather than one single SK.

**Step 1:** Create the top of the diamond as in the Basic Instructions. Make sure you keep the holding cords secured to you board.

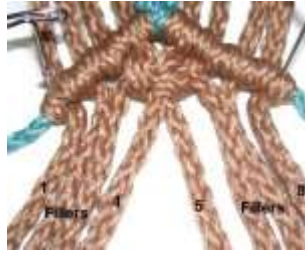
Mentally number the working cords 1 - 8.



Tie the first Square Knot with cords 3 and 6. The fillers are 4 and 5. Tighten it so it rests near the top of the diamond.

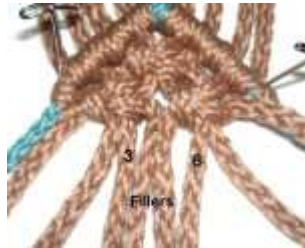
This image shows only the **first half** of the SK, which is why working cords 3 and 6 are out of order.





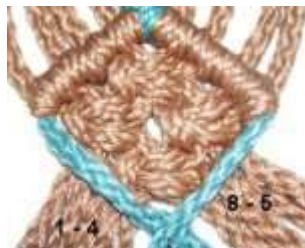
**Step 2:** For the next row, tie a SK with cords 1 - 4. The working cords are 1 and 4. The fillers are 2 and 3.

Tie another SK using cords 5 - 8. The working cords are 5 and 8. The fillers are 6 and 7.



**Step 3:** The next row is just like the first. Tie one SK with cords 3 and 6. The fillers are cords 4 and 5.

Start the **bottom** of the Vintage Diamond by directing the holding cords to the center. (see next image)



**Step 4:** On the left, attach cords 1 - 4, in a **counter-clockwise** direction.

On the right, attach cords 8 - 5 (**clockwise**)

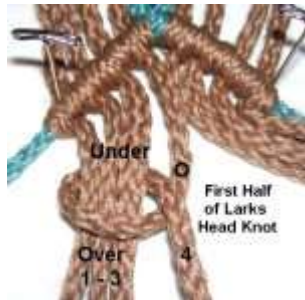
To close the bottom, attach one holding cord to the other.



## Larks Head Technique



**Description:** Here's another technique you can use for the inside of Vintage Diamonds. You tie two **Vertical Larks Head** knots, after you make the top half of the diamond following the Basic Instructions.



**Step 1:** Mentally number the working cords 1 - 8. For the Larks Head knot on the **left**, use working cord 4.

Bring it **over** the front of cords 1 - 3, and **under** the back (**clockwise**).

Bring it towards the right, and pass **over** cord 4, to complete the **first half** of the Larks Head knot.



**Step 2:** Direct cord 4 **under** cords 1 - 3, and then **over** them in the front. As you bring the end to the right, pass **under** cord 4.

**Steps 1 and 2 = One Larks Head knot.**

Repeat steps 1 and 2 on the right, using cord 5 to tie the knot around cords 6 - 8. **Rotate counter-clockwise.**

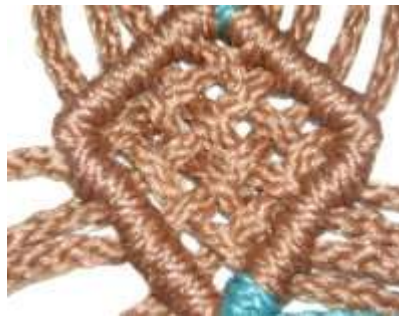


**Step 3:** Direct the holding cords to the center and secure them so they are taut. Attach cords 1 - 4 to the left holding cord (**counter-clockwise**).

Attach cords 8 - 5 to the right holding cord (**clockwise**)



## Weaving Technique



**Description:** The center of Vintage Diamonds can be decorated with a simple weaving pattern. I found this design in a Macrame book written in 1905.

**Step 1:** Make the top of the diamond first, following the Basic Instructions.



Mentally number the working cords 1 - 8.

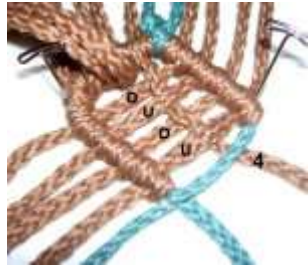
Direct the **left** holding cord towards the center, and secure it so it's taut.



**Step 2:** Move cords 1 - 4 out of the way for now.

Attach cords 5 - 8 to the **left** holding cord with DHH, rotating **counter-clockwise**.

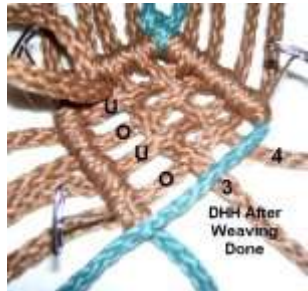
They will cross the center of the diamond, right to left.



**Step 3:** Direct the **right** working cord to t secure it.

Weave cord 4 through the working cords l it **over - under - over - under** cords 5 - 6

Pass it **under** the right holding cord.



**Step 4:** Weave cord 3 in the same manne the under - over sequence (U - O - U - O)

Make sure you place it **under** the right ho doing the weaving.

**Step 5:** Repeat steps 3 and 4, weaving the last two cords (2 and 1). Make sure the over - under sequence alternates.

Attach cords 4 - 1 to the **right** holding cord with DHH (**clockwise**).

Attach one holding cord to the other to complete the diamond.



## Twist Technique

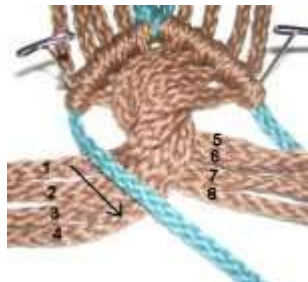


**Description:** Recently I found this unusual method for decorating the inside of Vintage Diamonds. It was in a Macrame book written in 1899. The cords are simply wrapped around each other, rather than tying knots.



**Step 1:** Start by making the top of the diamond. Divide the working cords into two groups (1 - 4 and 5 - 8).

Wrap cords 5 - 8 around the other four, keeping all the cords **neatly arranged** side-by-side.



**Step 2:** Attach cords 1 - 4 to the left holding cord, rotating **counter-clockwise**.

Attach cords 5 - 8 to the right holding cord (**clockwise**)

To finish, attach one holding cord to the other with a DHH.

## Larks Head Knot



**Description:** The Larks Head Knot is one of the most frequently used decorative knots in Macrame. Another name for this decorative knot is the **Cow Hitch**.

It is most often used as a mounting knot; to attach one cord to another, or onto a ring, dowel or purse handle.

The **Reverse** Larks Head is also described, below the basic instructions. It's often used when you need to turn it around so it resembles a Double Half Hitch. It's a very important variation, so please practice it, too.

I've also included instructions for a unique application of this important knot. It's called the **Nestled Mount**. I found it in a book written in 1899, so it's a vintage knot, and is not very well known.

## Basic Instructions



**Step 1:** You need one or more holding cords, secured to your board **horizontally**.

Fold another cord and place it **under** the holding cords. The folded area should be at the bottom and the ends at the top.



**Step 2:** Bring both ends **over** the holding cords, heading downward.

Pass them **under** the folded area, pulling them firmly.

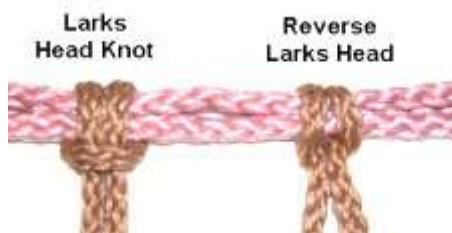


When tightened, the Larks Head knot has a horizontal segment made by the fold, resting just below the holding cords.

That portion is called the **head**, and many Macrame patterns refer to that area, when describing the direction it will face.



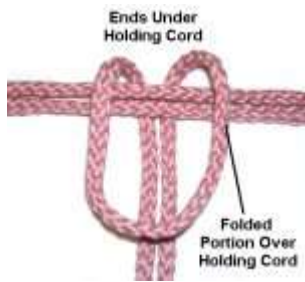
## Reverse Larks Head



The **Reverse** Larks Head is often used when there are **Double Half Hitches** present, so the knots blend in.

It takes advantage of the **back** of the Larks Head knot, rather than the front. So the head is facing backwards.





**Step 1:** You need one or more holding cords, secured to your board horizontally. Fold another cord and place it **on top** of the holding cords (over).

Bring the ends down, **behind** the holding cords.



**Step B:** Bring the ends towards you, passing **over** the folded area.

### Reverse Larks Head



**Step C:** When the knot is tightened, it resembles a Double Half Hitch.



## Nestled Mount



Here's a variation of the Larks Head that is not very well known. It is used when different colors are required to form the alternating design.

One knot rests inside the other, which causes a color shift.

If you were to tie a Square Knot with the ends, the two cords furthest to the right and left are the working cords, and they will be the **same color**.



**Step 1:** Tie the first Larks Head knot following the basic instructions.

Here I attached it to a dowel, but you can use a holding cord.



**Step B:** Fold a second cord in half. Use a different color if possible. Place the cord **under** the dowel as you normally would, but make it wider.

The two ends should rest to the right and left of the first knot.



**Step B:** Bring the ends of the second cord **over** the front of the dowel, and **under** the folded area.

Make sure the ends stay to the right and left, **beside** the first knot.



**Step C:** Tighten the second Larks Head knot carefully.

The head of the first knot should **nestle inside** the second knot.

## Vertical Larks Head





**Description:** The Vertical Larks Head knot is most often used to form a sennit (chain). In some vintage Macrame patterns, it is called the **Buttonhole Stitch**.

This decorative knot is used to make clasps in jewelry projects, and as a mounting design. See the following pages for more details:

- [Buttonhole Clasp](#)
- [Buttonhole Scallops](#)

The primary difference between a regular Larks Head knot and this variation is that you tie the knot in **two steps**.

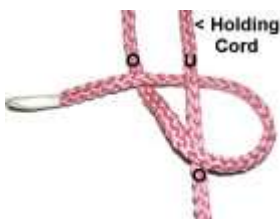
Any time you use a Larks Head Knot within the **body** of a pattern, you are likely to tie them in two parts. A regular Larks Head is used to mount the cords, then you may be asked to use the ends to tie the vertical variation.

These knots are not always arranged vertically. You can tie them in horizontal and diagonal rows, and in opposite directions.

Many Macrame patterns require you to tie these knots to cover items such as rings and dowels. Plant Hanger projects frequently require you to do this, so I've added instructions for covering rings.

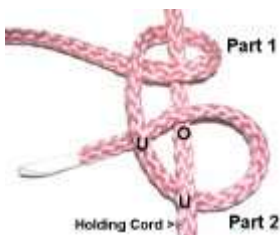
Secure one **holding** cord to your board. Secure the **working cord** to the left.

In the images, I placed the working cord on the left, but the steps are the same if it's on the right, too.



**Part 1:** Pass the working cord **over** the holding cord, and then **under** it. (**counter-clockwise**)

As you pull it to the left, pass **over** the **working** cord.



**Part 2:** Pass the working cord **under** the holding cord, and then **over** it.

As you bring it to the left, pass **under** the **working** cord.



This is the completed Vertical Larks Head knot, after it's tightened.



Covering Rings with the Vertical Larks Head may seem a bit challenging, so here is your chance to practice.

You need one piece of cord material, at least 60 inches long. You will also need one ring.



**Step 1:** Fold the cord in half, and place it **under** the lower portion of the ring. The ends should be at the top.



**Step 2:** Bring both ends **over** the ring, and down **under** the folded area of the cord.

This is a standard Larks Head knot, used for mounting.



**Step 3:** Bring the **left** end **over** the ring, **under** it, and **over** the cord.

This is the **first half** of the Larks Head knot.



**Step 4:** Bring the left end **under** the ring, **over** it and **under** the cord.

**Both steps = 1 Vertical Larks Head knot.**

To continue, use the **left** end to repeat steps 3 and 4, until the **left half of the ring** is covered.

Use the **right** end and do the same, to cover the **right half of the ring**.



## Direction Changes

Sometimes Macrame patterns will specify whether the knots should face right or left. The next steps show you how to make the knots in both directions.

Start by securing 2 cords to your board, as shown below. Using two colors will help when practicing.

## Right Facing Knots



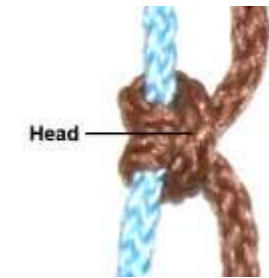
The **working** cord is on the right (2). Tie the first half of the knot by moving it **over** and **under** the holding cord (1), rotating **clockwise**.

As you bring it back to the right, pass **over** the working cord.



The second half is tied by moving the working cord **under** and **over** the holding cord.

As you bring it right, pass **under** the working cord.



The head of the knot is the vertical area indicated.

When a Macrame pattern asks for a **right facing** Larks Head knot, it means the head is facing right.

**Design Tip:** The head of the knot will face the direction where the working cord is located.

In the next example, the working cord is on the left, so the head will face left.

## Left Facing Knots

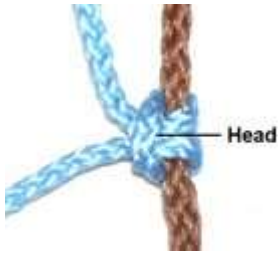


The first half of the Vertical Larks Head is tied by passing the working cord (1) **over** and **under** the holding cord (2).

When you bring the end to the left, pass **over** the working cord. (Rotate **counter-clockwise**)



The second half is tied by moving the working cord **under** and **over** the holding cord, and **under** the working cord.



When the knot is tightened the head will face left, because the working cord was on the left.

## Larks Head Designs



**Description:** Larks Head Designs can be very interesting to make. On this page are several small Macrame projects that will help you gain experience with this decorative knot.

Each design is made with the [Vertical Larks Head knot](#). Practice each one **after** you learn how to tie the knot (click on the link).

Described below is a flower, a frame, a bracelet, and an interesting progressive design you could use as part of a wall hanging.

Make sure you use some type of project board, since you will need pins to secure the cords.

## LARKS HEAD FLOWER



The Larks Head Flower features **picot loops**.

**Important:** Larks Head designs are difficult to understand if you don't know the difference between holding and working cords. Here's a reminder:

- Holding = Knots are attached to this cord
- Working = Cord used to tie the knot

**Step 1:** Cut one **holding** cord, at least 18 inches long.

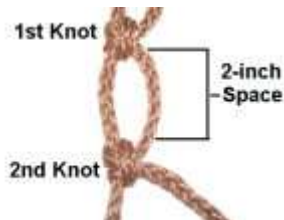
Cut one **working** cord, at least 45 inches long.

Secure the **center** of both cords to your project board. Place the holding cord on the left, and the working cord on the right.



Tie the first Vertical Larks Head knot onto the holding cord. Rotate **clockwise** to make the loops.

I left the knot loose so you could see the details.



**Step 2:** After tightening the first knot, move down 2 inches, leaving a space.

Tie another Vertical Larks Head knot. Slide the second knot up, so it rests next to the first.



The size of the picot loop will be about 1-inch.

If you want it larger, increase the space between the knots.



**Step 3:** Repeat step 2 twice, to make three picots.

Make sure the space is consistent (2 inches).



**Step 4:** Turn the flower around, so you use the other half of the cords. Tie 3 knots, making sure there is a 2-inch space between them.

The knots are tied the opposite direction, which is **counter-clockwise**.



**Step 5:** Make a circle by bringing the ends together. You'll now use the ends to create the stem.

The working cords will be on the outside, and the holding cords on the inside.



**Step 6:** Use the **right** working cord to tie a Vertical Larks Head onto both holding cords. Do the same with the **left** working cord.

Alternate between the two cords, until the stem is the size you want. Finish the ends in whatever manner you prefer (a fringe works well).

**Design Tip:** Larks Head designs can be combined with other knots.

So you could use a **Spiral Stitch** or **Square Knot** sennit for the stem.



Larks Head designs like this can be made with fine material (1mm), and used in a similar way as a **Buttonhole Clasp**.

You can also make the design larger with heavier material (6mm) to make an interesting frame or wall decoration (no stem needed).





## Larks Head Frame



**Description:** Larks Head designs can be quite useful. This frame can be used as a holiday decoration, by placing an ornament inside. You can attach a photo to the back of the frame, with glue. You can even use delicate material to make a pair of unique earrings.

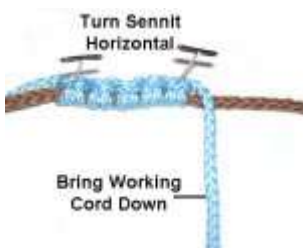
The Vertical Larks Head is easier to tie when it's arranged vertically. It's better to move the entire frame, than to try tying the knots horizontally.

I used two colors to show the details of these Larks Head designs more clearly. I recommend you do the same when practicing.



**Step 1:** You need two cords, at least 45 inches long. Arrange them vertically.

Tie 5 Vertical Larks Head knots with the cord on the **right**, so the heads of the knots face right.



**Step 2:** Turn the sennit so it's horizontal, and secure it. The heads should be at the top.

Bring the working cord (blue) down, so it's vertical.

It will now become the **holding cord** for the second side of the frame.



**Step 3:** Tie 5 Vertical Larks Head knots. Use the holding cord from the previous sennit, since it's the new working cord.

In other words, **the function of the two cords has been switched.**



**Step 4:** Turn the frame again, and bring the holding cord down. Tie the five knots as you did in step 3.

The working cord for this side is the same one you used in step 1, since the two cords have switched places again.



**Step 5:** Turn the frame once more, to make the fourth side, just like in step 3.



**Step 6:** The ends should now be together at one corner. Turn the frame, so the ends are heading downward (vertical).



**Step 7:** Use one cord to tie a Larks Head knot onto the others (3 cords).

Choose a different cord, and tie another knot, also around the other three. You can change the direction of the knot if you wish, by choosing one on the left side.

You can repeat step 7 if necessary. This gives you an area where the frame can be attached to a wall. You can also make a loop, if using this design as a pendant.



Larks Head designs look very neat, which is why they are so often used to make Macrame projects.



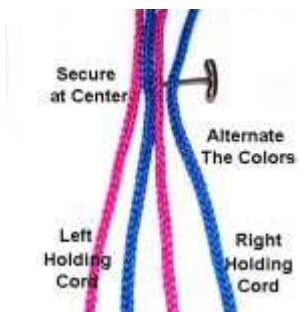
## Larks Head Bracelet



**Description:** Larks Head designs can be used to make jewelry items, like this bracelet. This Macrame project will help you learn to make items with alternating colors, created by crossing the cords.

See the [Pendant Setting](#), if you want to try a Micro-Macrame project using this process.

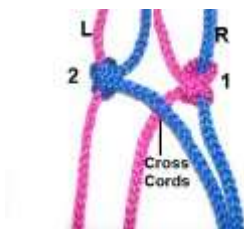
You need four cords; two of each color. The working cords rest between the two holding cords, and should be at least 60 inches long. The holding cords are shorter, and need to be around 18 inches long.



**Step 1:** Secure the cords after matching them up at the center. Make sure you alternate the colors as shown.

Pull the **holding cords** so they have tension, and secure them lower down.

In the image below, I labeled the **holding cords** right and left (R and L).



**Step 2:** Use the **right working cord** (pink) to tie a Vertical Larks Head onto the holding cord next to it (R = blue).

Use the **left working cord** (blue) to tie the knot onto the other holding cord (L = pink).

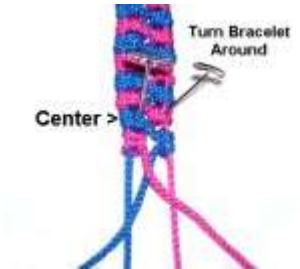
**Cross the two working cords before moving on.**

**Design Tip:** The Larks Head knots on the left are tied rotating **clockwise**. On the right it's **counter-clockwise**.



**Step 3:** Tie the next two knots using the working cords, which have now switched places. The holding cords remain the same.

**Don't forget to cross the cords before moving on to the next step.**



**Step 4:** Continue tying the knots until the bracelet is **1/2 the size** you need.

Turn the bracelet around and use the other half of the cords to continue.

Stop when the bracelet is the desired length. Since this design is for a bangle style bracelet, make it larger than normal, so you can get your hand through the loop.



**Step 5:** Fold the bracelet in half, so the ends are all heading downward. Use one cord to make **avery tight** Vertical Larks Head around **all** the others. Apply glue and cut off the extra material.

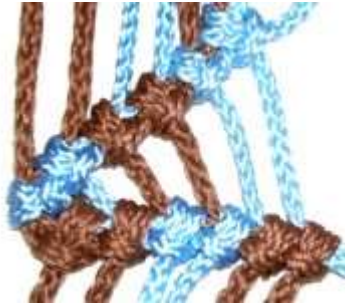
If you prefer, you can make a different type of clasp, or finish the ends using another technique.



Crossed Larks Head designs like this make great belts, dog leashes, guitar straps, and similar projects.



## Progressive Design



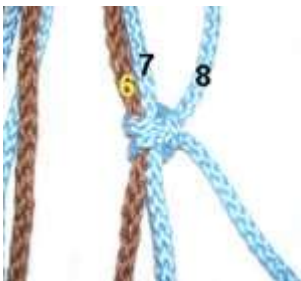
One of the most unique Larks Head designs I have found is this **progressive** design. A photo of it was in a Macrame book written in the early 1900's, so it's considered a vintage technique. It took me a while to learn how to tie it, so it's a bit more challenging than the designs shown previously.

A progressive pattern is created by using cords **in order**, making separate knots with each one.



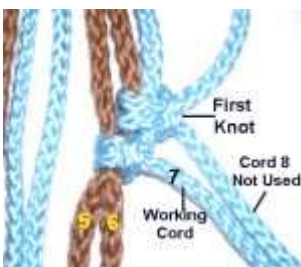
**Step 1:** You need 4 cords folded in half, so you have 8 to work with. Secure them to a project board, vertically.

Mentally number the cords 1 thru 8.



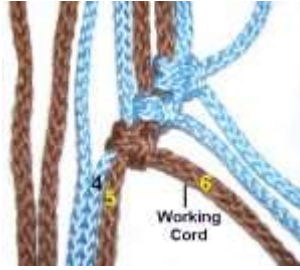
**Step 2:** Use cord 8 to tie a Vertical Larks Head onto cords 6 and 7. (Clockwise)

Tighten the knot firmly. Move cord 8 off to the side, since it won't be used again for the first row of knots.

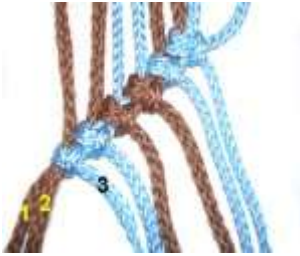


**Step 3:** Use cord 7 as the next working cord. Tie a Larks Head knot onto cords 5 and 6.

This second knot should rest below and slightly to the left of the first knot.



**Step 4:** Cord 6 is the next working cord. Tie the knot onto cords 4 and 5.



**Step 5:** Continue on in the same manner, using cords 5 - 3. The knots are tied onto the two cords next to the one you are using.

**The last working cord is 3**, since it's important that two cords are holding the knot.



**Step 6:** Now you tie the knots in the opposite direction. Use cord 1 as the first working cord, tying the knot onto 2 and 3. (Counter-clockwise)

You still use one cord at a time, progressing from cord 1 to cord 6. Each knot is tied onto the next two in line.



**Step 7:** As you progress, **pull down** on each cord, before tying the knot.

Larks head designs like this one look better if the cords are straight and taut between the rows.

## Larks Head Sennits





Larks Head Sennits (chains) can be made in several different ways, but the most common are called **alternating designs**.

They can be used as purse handles, belts, or jewelry.

Make sure you practice tying **Vertical Larks Heads** before creating the four designs on this page.



## Alternating Sennit #1

One of the most interesting Larks Head sennits is made by alternating between more than 2 cords.

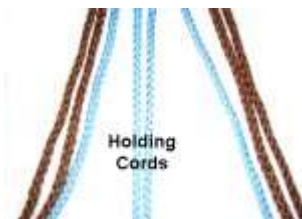
This pattern also features knots heading in opposite directions.

This vintage design was found in a Macrame book written in 1903.

You will need 4 cords folded in half, so you have 8 to work with.

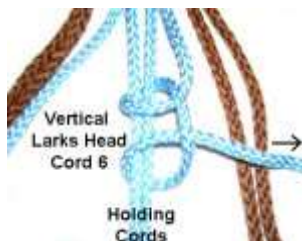
Make sure you use a project board. To practice, I recommend you use **two colors**, which can be arranged any way you wish.

Larks Head sennits are usually made with one or more **holding cords**, also called the **core**. This will stabilize the design, so it doesn't twist.



**Step 1:** Mentally number the cords 1 thru 8.

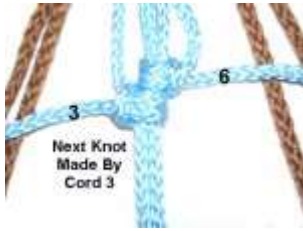
Cords 4 and 5 will be the **holding cords** for the entire sennit. Secure them so they have tension.



**Step 2:** Use **cord 6** and tie a Vertical Larks Head onto both holding cords. Rotate **clockwise** to make the two loops.

The **head** of the knot will face **right**. The end should be heading horizontally, to the right, when you are finished (arrow).

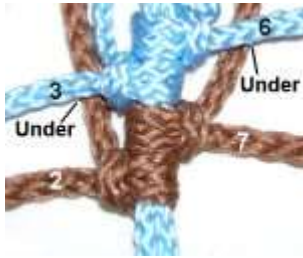




**Step 3:** Use **cord 3** to tie the next Larks Head Knot, just below the first one.

Rotate **counter-clockwise** to make the loops.

The head of the knot will face **left**. The end should be horizontal, to the left when you are done.

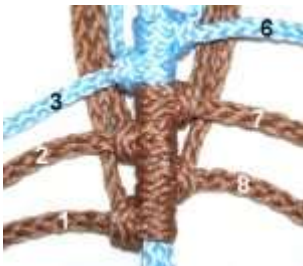


**Step 4:** Use **cord 7** to tie the next Larks Head knot. Start by passing the end **under** cord 6, as you bring it down to tie the knot.

Use **cord 2** to tie the next knot, passing under cord 3.

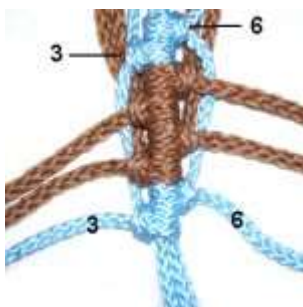
**Design Tip:** Larks Head sennits like this one can get confusing. By moving the end of the cord you just used off to the side, you'll know which ones have been used to tie the knots.

Doing this also helps to make sure the next cords pass under the two that were just used.



**Step 5:** The next knot is tied with cord 8. Pass it under cords 6 and 7.

The following knot is tied with cord 1, which is moved under cords 2 and 3 first.



**Step 6:** Repeat steps 2 - 5, using the cords in the same order.

So the next knot is tied with cord 6, followed by a knot with cord 3.

**Make sure you bring each cord under all the ones previously used.**



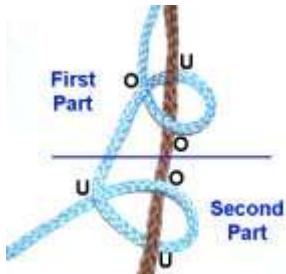


## Alternating Sennit #2

Some Larks Head sennits do not require a separate holding cord.

This design is very similar to a basic [Alternating Half Hitch](#) pattern.

This is a great way to make purse handles, bracelets, and any project where you need a slender chain of knots.



**Step 1:** Secure two cords to your work surface. Use the **left** cord to tie a Vertical Larks Head knot onto the right cord. Rotate **counter-clockwise**.

Remember the knot is tied in two parts. So this image is just a reminder of the steps.



**Step 2:** Use the cord on the **right** next, to tie the Vertical Larks Head onto the left cord.

The process is the same, only the direction is changed, and you tie the knot **clockwise**.



**Step 3:** Repeat steps 1 and 2 several times, until the sennit is the size you need.

Note: This sennit is not straight. It will curve slightly in both directions.



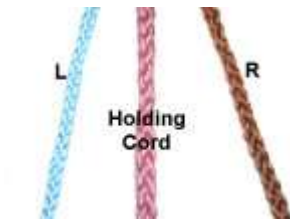


## Alternating Sennit #3

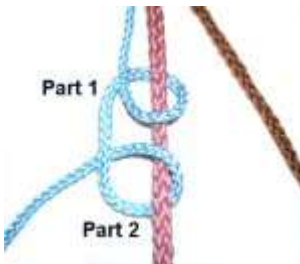
In this design, the Vertical Larks Heads are made with 2 working cords.

They are attached to **one** holding cord.

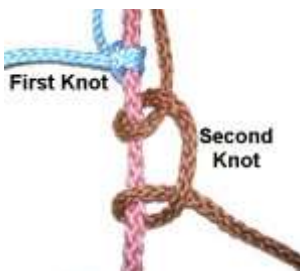
This was a very popular design in the early 1900's, and is seen in more modern books as well.



**Step 1:** You will need 3 cords to practice. The one in the center will hold the knots made by the other two, which are the working cords.



**Step 2:** Tie the first knot using the **left** working cord. Rotate **counter-clockwise** as you tie each loop.



**Step 3:** Tie the next knot with the working cord on the **right**. Rotate **clockwise** to make the loops.



**Step 4:** Repeat steps 2 and 3 several times, to complete the sennit.



## Alternating Sennit #4

Larks Head sennits like this one are not very well known. The knots are not linked by loops along the edges, as in the other designs.

This is a vintage pattern, and it makes a very nice casual bracelet. You could use this technique to make a belt or purse strap.



**Step 1:** Secure three cords to your work surface. The one in the center is the holding cord (pink).

Make a Vertical Larks Head using the **right** working cord (blue), tying it onto **both** the holding cord, and the left working cord (brown).

Rotate **clockwise** to make the two loops.



**Step 2:** The second Larks Head knot is made with the **left** working cord. The other 2 cords will hold the knot.

When you tighten it, make sure this knot rests close to the first one.



**Step 3:** Continue alternating between steps 1 and 2 to complete this sennit.

# Double Buttonhole Stitch



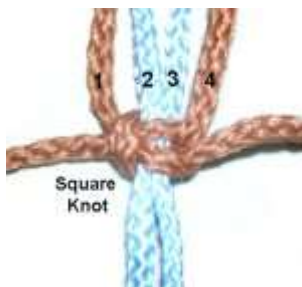
**Description:** The Double Buttonhole Stitch is a vintage pattern made with the [Vertical Larks Head](#) Knot. The [Square Knot](#) is also part of the design. Be sure to practice both knots before you get started.

In the early days of Macrame, the Larks Head was called the **Buttonhole Knot**. It was named that because it was frequently used in patterns that require buttons, such as vests.

This decorative knot can be used as a clasp for necklaces, bracelets, and handbags, as well as for clothing.

[Buttonhole Scallops](#) and the [Buttonhole Clasp](#) are related techniques, and are often used together in the same Macrame pattern.

You need four cords to practice this design. Secure them to your project board or work surface, so they are **vertical**. Mentally number them 1 - 4, moving left to right. Using two colors really helps as you are learning.



**Step 1:** The working cords are 1 and 4. The fillers are cords 2 and 3.

Tie a Square Knot using the working cords, onto the fillers.



**Step 2:** Use working cord 4 to tie the **first half** of the Larks Head knot, onto filler cord 3 (clockwise).

Pass the end **over** and **under cord 3**. Bring it **over working cord 4**, as you pull it right.



**Step 3:** To make the second half of the Larks Head knot, pass the working end **under cord 3**, **over** it, and **under cord 4**.

**Steps 1 + 2 = one Larks Head knot.**



**Step 4:** Tighten the first knot so it rests just below the Square Knot.

Create the **second** Larks Head by repeating steps 2 and 3.



**Step 5:** Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have tied 4 to 6 Vertical Larks Head knots for the **right half** of the Double Buttonhole Stitch.

Most Macrame patterns will tell you exactly how many knots to tie, or the size of the sennit.



**Step 6:** Repeat Steps 2 - 5 to create another Vertical Larks Head sennit on the **left**.

The working cord is 1, and you will tie the knots onto filler cord 2. Rotate **counter-clockwise** to make the loops.



**Step 7:** To close the Double Buttonhole Stitch, you need to tie another Square Knot.

Use working cords 1 and 4, and tie it around filler cords 2 and 3, as you did in step 1.

## Buttonhole Scallops



**Description:** Buttonhole Scallops were a mounting process commonly used in the early 1900's. So this technique is considered a vintage design.

Scallops form a very attractive finished edge, along the top of items like curtains and wall hangings. Table decorations such as place mats can also feature these knots.

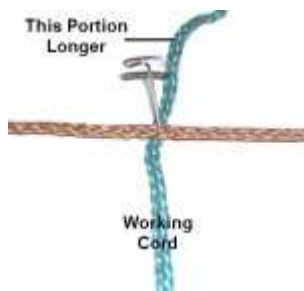
They are often used in combination with other knots, such as the [Double Half Hitch](#) used in the directions on this page.

The primary decorative knot used to make scallops is the [Vertical Larks Head](#).

Make sure you know how to tie these knots and Double Half Hitches, before you get started. Click on the links to go to those pages.

You need 3 cords to practice making Buttonhole Scallops. One should be at least 12 inches longer than the others, since the working cord always needs to be longer.

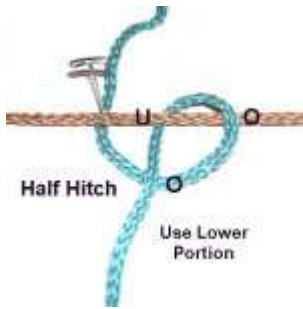
**Step 1:** Secure one of the **short** cords to your work surface **horizontally**. This will be a holding cord, which the scallop will be attached to (brown cord in images).



**Step 2:** Place the **longest** cord underneath the holding cord. It's the working cord, and will be used to make the Larks Head knots. The portion **above** the holding cord should be **longer**.

In Macramé patterns, the length will usually be written in the instructions.

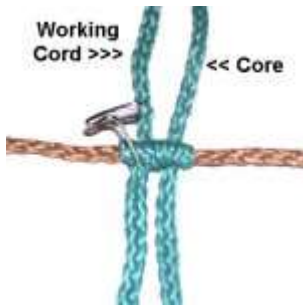




<< Bring the lower portion of the working cord **over - under** the holding cord. As you pull the end down, pass **over** the **working cord**.

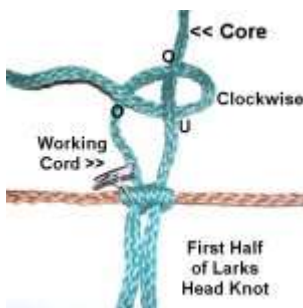


Tie a second knot next to the first one, to complete the Double Half Hitch. >>



**Step 3:** Attach the last cord to the horizontal holding cord, to be used as the core for the Larks Head knots.

Attach it the same way, with a Double Half Hitch.

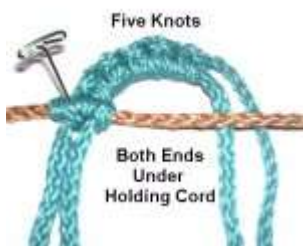


< Bring the working cord **over and under** the holding cord, rotating clockwise. As you pull it left, make sure the end passes **over** to make the crossing point.



For the second half, the over - under sequence is the opposite: **under - over - under** >>

**Both steps equal one Vertical Larks Head Knot.**



**Step 5:** Tie a total of 5 Larks Head knots, as in step 4 above.

When you are done, bring the ends of both cords under the horizontal holding cords, heading vertically.



**Step 6:** Attach the cord used as the **core** to the horizontal holding cord, with DHH.

Slide the Half Hitches to the **left**, so they are next to the first ones tied in step 2.

This is what causes Buttonhole Scallops to be distinctive, they stand up and are very visible.



**Step 7:** Attach the working cord to the holding cord with a Double Half Hitch.

Buttonhole Scallops are usually tied in groups, so if you have more material, tie at least one more.

## Buttonhole Clasp



**Description:** This Buttonhole Clasp features the [Vertical Larks Head knot](#). A [Square Knot](#) is also part of the design shown, but others can be used.

This technique is also described on the page called [Jewelry Clasps](#). Visit that page to view other types of clasps made with decorative knots.

You can use this design to make bracelet and necklace clasps, using cord materials under 2mm thick.

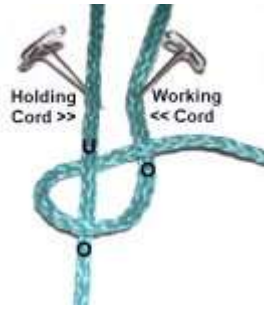
To make a very nice belt buckle using a large fancy button, all you need is thicker material, to make the clasp design larger. In the example shown, I used 4mm material, which was suitable for a belt closure.

**Step 1:** Cut 2 cords, each at least 45 inches long. In an actual project, the **working cord** should be cut longer than the holding cord.

Secure both cords to your project board, vertically. The pins should be in the **center** of the cords. You will be working from the center towards the ends.

Secure the holding cord lower down, so it has tension. The working cord should be on the **right**.

Below are the two steps showing you how to tie a Vertical Larks Head knot:



<< Make the first loop of the Larks Head knot by passing **under** and **over** the holding cord. As you bring it to the right, cross **over** the working cord. **(clockwise)**



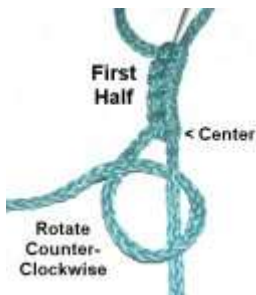
The second half is made the opposite: **under - over - under**.

Position the Larks Head knot so it rests against the pins at the center. Tighten both halves of the knot **firmly**.



**Step 2:** Tie 3 or more knots, depending on the size you need **(1.5 times button size)**.

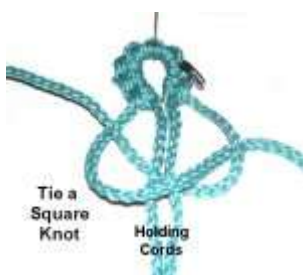
**For example:** You have a 1/2-inch button, so tie enough knots to measure 1.5 times that size, which is 3/4-inch.



**Step 3:** Turn the first half of the design around, and go back to the center.

Tie the **same number of knots** for the second half.

You need to rotate **counter-clockwise** to make the two loops.



**Step 4:** Form the Buttonhole Clasp by making a circle with the knots, when you bring the ends together.

Tie a Square knot with the two working cords, around the holding cords. **Tighten it firmly**.

On the other end of the item you are making, attach a button, bead, or tie a decorative knot to form the other end of the clasp.

## Wrapped Knot



**Description:** The Wrapped Knot is sometimes called the **Gathering Wrap**, in vintage Macrame patterns.

The purpose of this knot is to make a bundle, when you have several cords that need to be grouped together. So it's also referred to as a **Collecting Knot**.

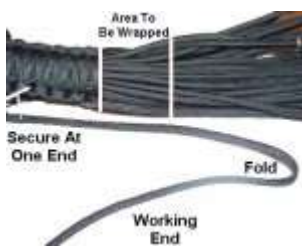
This type of decorative knot is found in many Macrame projects, so be sure to practice it several times. I've seen it in plant hangers as well as in jewelry designs.

It's often used to make a clasp for a necklace or bracelet. See [Sliding Clasps](#) for more information.

You need a group of at least 3 cords to practice this decorative knot. In the images below, I tied the knot around 32 strands of Nylon Paracord.

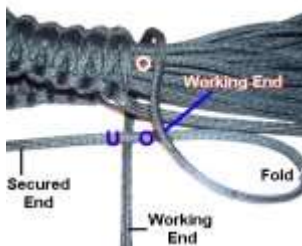
The working cord is a separate piece of material, and should be at least 20 inches long. Most Macrame patterns will specify how long the cord should be.

The Wrapped knot is usually 1 - 2 inches long, from edge to edge.



**Step 1:** Place the cords being wrapped on your work surface, horizontally. The working cord should be placed **below** the group, and secured at the **left end**.

Fold the working cord **2 inches** beyond the area you want to wrap, and secure it at the fold (right). The long portion at the bottom is the working end.



**Step 2:** Bring the working end up and **over** the cords being wrapped, **including the secured end**.

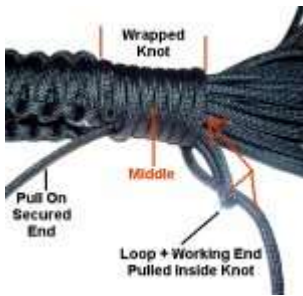
Bring it behind the group and down, passing **under** the secured end.



**Step 3:** Wrap the working end around the group several more times, moving **towards** the fold (left to right).

Make sure the wraps surround the bundle **firmly**.

When the knot is the desired size, pass the working end through the loop (folded portion).



**Step 4:** Pull on the **secured end** (left). The loop and working end will be pulled inside the knot, which secures it.

The loop should come to rest in the middle portion of the knot, so it cannot be seen from the outside. The end may stick out beyond the knot.

**Step 5:** It's a good idea to apply glue to the wrapped area, and then cut off both ends of the working cord, flush with the edges of the knot.

When using this knot to make a Sliding Clasp, you usually don't need to apply glue.

## Wrapped Ring



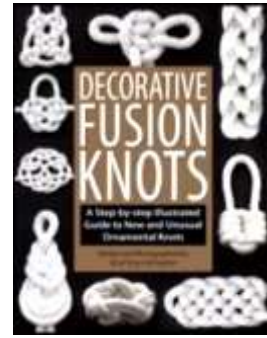
**Description:** The Wrapped Ring, also called an O-Ring, is a unique variation of the [Barrel Knot](#).

This strong decorative knot is easy to tie and can be used at the top of items like wind chimes, and light weight plant hangers. It's best to make it first, then you can use the ends for the other knots.

It makes a great clasp for Macrame bracelets and necklaces, if made with fine materials. In the images shown, I used 4mm Paracord, since I was using it for a Macrame belt.

I found this design in a book called "[Decorative Fusion Knots](#)" by J. D. Lenzen.

Click on the link or image to visit his website, which contains **video tutorials** for many interesting combination and historical knots.



**Step 1:** Tie an [Overhand Knot](#) in the center of a 60-inch cord. Make sure the loop is made by crossing the ends **right over left**.

The crossing point should be at the bottom.

Make the loop the size you want the ring to be when it is finished.



**Step 2:** Use the **left** end, which is now on the right, to wrap around the **right half** of the loop.

Make sure the coils are snug and **close together**. Stop when you reach the the **top** of the loop.



**Step 3:** Use the **right** end to wrap the **left half** of the loop.



**Step 4:** Push the coils close together while you tighten and adjust the loop. If necessary, add a few more wraps with each end. Tie an Overhand knot to secure the ends. You can use another type of knot if you wish.

I flipped the Wrapped Ring so the final knot is at the **bottom**, since I used it as a clasp.

## Overhand Knot



**Description:** The Overhand knot (OH) is the easiest of all the Macrame knots, and is used in many patterns. In Vintage Macrame books it is sometimes referred to as a "**hard knot**".

Several knots used in this craft are related to this one, and often start with this basic knot.

This decorative knot is used in both the preparation and finishing stages of projects. When tied at the end of a cord, it will prevent unraveling, but it can loosen over time, so you need to apply glue.

You can use it to prepare cords prior to knotting, so the fibers don't separate. You'll see this knot used to secure beads, and to connect two strands of material.

See [Cord Preparation](#) and [Finishing Techniques](#) for more details.



To tie the knot if you have **two ends** to work with, hold the cord in both hands. Make a loop, crossing the left end over the right.

Pass the right end through the loop, from the top. Pull the ends to tighten the knot.





To tie the Overhand knot when only **one end** is free to move, start by making a **clockwise** loop with the working end.



Direct the working end through the loop from below, which is **under - over**.

## Variations

Several variations are shown below, all of which incorporate this knot as part of their design. I recommend you use a piece of scrap cord and try to come up with your own unique variations.

Nets can be made by tying OH knots instead of Square knots, in an alternating pattern. See [Alternating Square Knots](#), if you want to give it a try.

Practice tying a series of knots to form a chain. See the [Satin Dragonfly](#) to view an example of this technique.

When making sennits using other knots, you can add Overhand knots on each side, to provide decoration.

The [Butterfly Bookmark](#) is an easy project located in Macrame For Kids.

It's a variation of the OH knot.



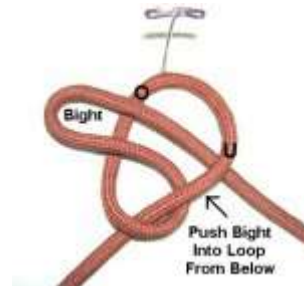
**Linked Overhand Knots** are other variations you can use where two cords need to be connected.

This is the **Shamrock Knot**.



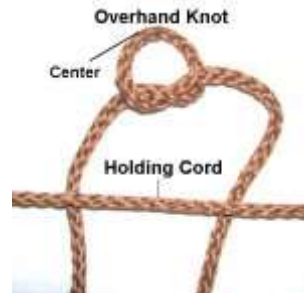
This **Slipknot** is related to the OH knot.

Instead of passing the **end** through the loop, you pass a **bight** through it instead.

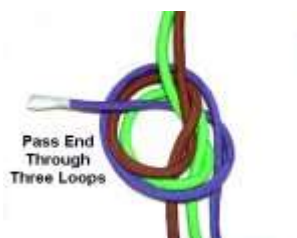
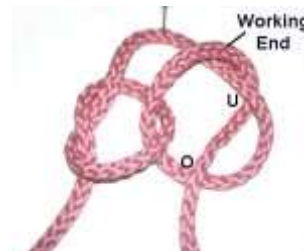


This is the **Venetian Picot Mount**. The OH knot is tied in the center of a cord.

The two ends are then used to attach the design to a holding cord.



This is a **Hanger Knot**, which is made with one cord, connecting two OH knots.



A **Matthew Walker knot** is tied by linking three cords with OH knots.



# Barrel Knot



**Description:** The Barrel Knot is similar to the Overhand Knot, and is used frequently in Macrame projects, as well as other crafts.

In Vintage patterns, this decorative knot is sometimes called the **Coil Knot**.

It's used as a finishing knot at the ends of cords, to prevent them from unraveling. But you can also use it to secure items such as Macrame beads, or any time you need a firm knot that doesn't come untied easily.

There are several other similar designs listed below, including the **Strangle Knot**, the **Barrel Bead**, and the **Knuckle knot**.



## Standard Barrel Knot



**Step 1:** To practice, cut a single cord, at least 12 inches long. Make a loop in the center, crossing **left over right**.



**Step 2:** Bring the right end (now on the left) into the loop from the top (**over - under**).

This creates an Overhand knot.



**Step 3:** Bring the right end through the loop one more time (over - under).



Tighten the Barrel knot slowly, so that it doesn't twist, and is firm.



## Strangle Knot

**Description:** This variation of the Barrel Knot is called the **Strangle Knot**.

It provides a strong grip that can hold weight. It's round enough to pass as a button knot, too.

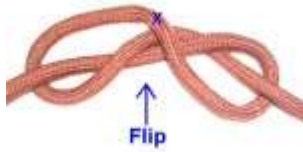
This design is similar to a [Figure Eight Knot](#), but is constructed differently.



**Step 1:** You need an 18-inch cord to practice. Create a Barrel knot as described in the first set of instructions above.

Make sure the right end comes out of the circle passing **over** the bottom, and the left comes out from **under** it.

**Design Tip:** I put a **blue X** below the area you will be moving in the next step.



**Step 2:** Flip the bottom part of the knot over the top portion, forming a figure 8.



Tighten the knot by pulling on the ends.

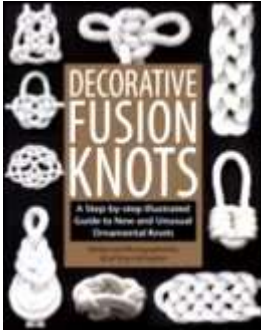
Make sure you **hold the cord** to keep the figure 8 shape as you tighten.



## Barrel Bead

**Description:** The Barrel Bead variation is a little longer than the regular Barrel Knot. The shape resembles a Tube Bead, so it can be used to decorate a cord.

I've seen it in fringe designs, both at the tip of the cords, as well as along the length.



I found this design in a book called "[Decorative Fusion Knots](#)" by **J.D. Lenzen**, and I have seen it in other books as well.

Click on the link or image to see his website, which has a knot gallery with [video tutorials](#).



**Step 1:** Wrap a 36-inch cord around your index and second finger 4 to 6 times.

The left end should be in **front**, and the right end **behind** your fingers, when you finish wrapping.



**Step 2:** Direct the right end through the center of the wrapped portions, moving **right to left**.



**Step 3:** Direct the left end through the center, moving **left to right**.



**Step 4:** Pull on both ends slowly and gradually to tighten the Barrel knot.

If the material is not smooth, you may need to help the loops tighten by pushing them towards each other.



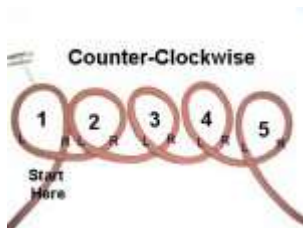


## Knuckle Knot

I found this variation in "[Decorative Fusion Knots](#)" by **J. D. Lenzen**.

He named it a **Bloody Knuckle knot**, and describes it as a fusion of Half Hitches with the Blood Knot. That's another name for the Barrel Knot, by the way.

It's a very attractive knot, and can be used as a small pendant. The loops along the lower edge can be used to hang charms or beads.

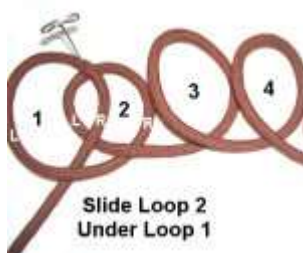


**Step 1:** Make 5 **counter-clockwise** loops using a 60-inch cord. Start on the left, about 8 inches from the end of the cord.

Mentally label each side of the loops as right or left.

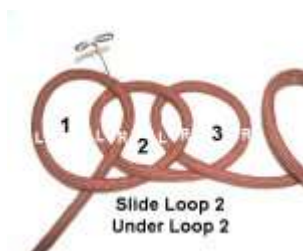
**Design Tip:** In "Decorative Fusion Knots" the directions ask you to make the loops while holding them.

If you decide to do so, the **right** portion of each loop needs to face **forward**.



**Step 2:** Slide the second loop partially **under** the first loop as shown.

Secure both loops at the crossing point at the top.



**Step 3:** Slide the third loop **under** the second one, and secure it.

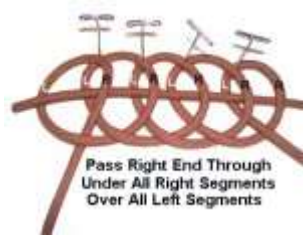




**Step 4:** Position the last three loops in the same manner.

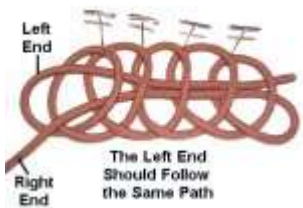
The fourth one should be under loop 3, and the fifth one should be under loop 4.

**Important:** Pay attention to the **right half** of each loop, since the ends will pass **under** those segments in the next step.



**Step 5:** Direct the **right** end through the loops, moving **right to left**.

Make sure you pass the end **under** the **right** half of each loop, and **over** the left half.



**Step 6:** Pass the **left** end through the loops, moving **left to right**.

**Follow the same path** as the right end.



**Step 7:** Begin tightening the Knuckle knot by working the slack out of each loop, so they tighten around the two ends.

Start on the left and move right as you progress.



Slide the loops together as you progress. When all of them are tightened, pull on the ends to complete the knot.

# Double Half Hitch Mount



**Description:** A Double Half Hitch Mount is used to attach cords to a dowel, ring or holding cord.

A **mounting knot** like this one is usually one of the first knots tied in a Macrame project. You will often start out with one cord, adding more one at a time.

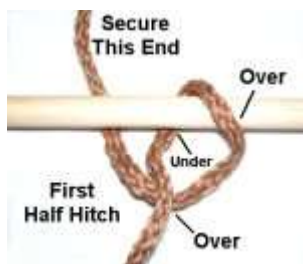
This vintage decorative knot is also used to add cords into an area when you need more to form a special design, or to make the area wider.

## Basic Instructions

**Step 1:** Secure one **holding cord** to your work surface, with pins or tape. It should be **horizontal**. You could also use a **ring or dowel** to practice this important technique.

The length of the dowel, ring or cord used to hold those being mounted, is usually specified in the pattern.

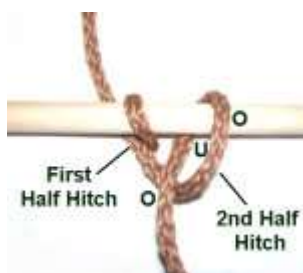
Cut 5 or more working cords, at least 12 inches long. Place the first working cord on your work surface, so it's vertical. It should rest **under** the dowel or holding cord.



Secure the **top half** of the cord.

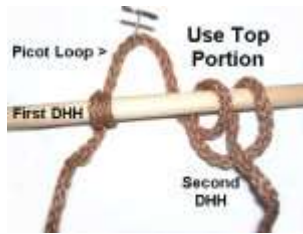
To make the first Half Hitch, move the **bottom half over** the front of the holding cord or dowel, and **under** the back of it.

As you pull it down, pass it **over** a portion of the working cord at the bottom.



**Step 2:** Tie a second Half Hitch right beside the first one, following the same process.

Before you tighten the second knot, give the first one a tug, to make sure it's tight. Then tighten the 2nd Half Hitch.



**Step 3:** Now you can use the **top half** of the cord to form a picot loop or another type of knot. Make sure you secure it when you are finished.

Pass the top half of the cord **under** the dowel, and then attach it with a DHH.



## Knots for the Top Half of the Cords

Most of the time, the Double Half Hitch Mount will be **combined with other knots**, because that is the purpose of this technique.

It's a way to use unusual knots or create loops during the mounting process. Below are a few decorative knots you can use in this manner. Just use the upper portion of the cord to tie the knots:



This is a **Josephine knot**. Construct the DHH Mount as shown above. Use the **top half** to tie this knot, and then attach the end to the holding cord or dowel.

This is a **Triangle Knot**, a unique vintage knot. Since it needs to be made with two cords, you would **create the knot first**. Make it as small as possible.

Attach it to a holding cord, ring, or dowel, using Double Half Hitches (steps 1 and 2 above).



When selecting appropriate knots, make sure they can be tied with one cord. You will be able to follow the basic steps that way.

This is the **Venetian Picot Mount**, which combines one or more **Overhand knots** with the DHH Mount.

See [Unique Mounting Designs](#) for other variations that incorporate the Double Half Hitch Mount technique.

Triple Loop Mount



## Chain Picot Mount



**Description:** A Chain Picot Mount is a unique way to **start** a Macrame pattern, which is why it's considered a mounting technique. The designs described below are considered vintage techniques, because they were frequently used in Macrame patterns of the early 1900's.

A chain of knots, also called a **sennit**, is made at the center of the cord. It's curved into small loop called a **picot (or scallop)**.

Since a **mount** means to be attached to a holding cord, dowel, or ring, the [Double Half Hitch](#) is usually part of the design.

The most common type of Chain Picot Mount is made with the [Alternating Half Hitch](#).

You will need one holding cord and two working cords to practice this variation.



**Step 1:** Arrange the two working cords on your work surface **vertically**, and secure them at the center.

Tie a **Half Hitch** with the left cord onto the right, rotating **counter-clockwise**.

To do this, pass the left cord **over - under** the right cord. Pass the end **over** a portion of the **left cord**, as you pull it to the left.



**Step 2:** Tie the next Half Hitch with the right cord onto the left, rotating **clockwise**.

Alternate back and forth between the two cords to make a series of 4 - 6 knots.

To keep everything balanced, move from the center towards one end. Then turn the sennit around and repeat the process on the opposite side of the center point.



**Step 3:** Once the chain is the size you want, position the ends at the left **under** the holding cord.

Attach them to the holding cord with Double Half Hitches.

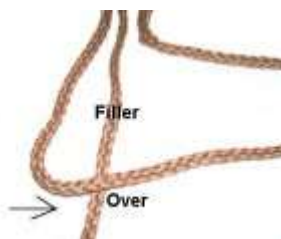


**Step 5:** Curve the sennit into a picot, and attach the other two ends to the holding cord with DHH.

Make sure you slide them under the holding cord before tying the knots.

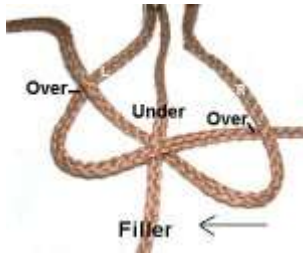


The second type of Chain Picot Mount features the **Spiral Stitch**, also called the **Half Knot Spiral**.



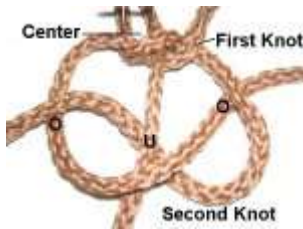
**Step 1:** Secure 3 cords to your board vertically. Two will be working cords, and there will be one filler.

Direct the **left** working cord towards the right, curving it **over** the filler.



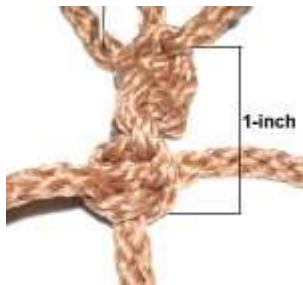
**Step 2:** Use the right working cord and direct it **over** the left cord, **under** the filler, and **over** the left one again. You will be moving right to left.

**Steps 1 + 2 = one Half knot.**



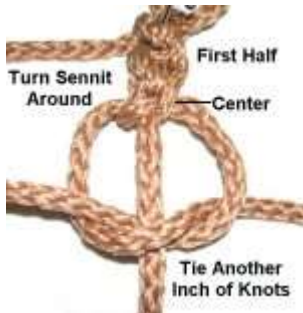
**Step 3:** Tighten the first knot so it rests in the **center** of the holding cord.

Tie another Half Knot, repeating steps 1 and 2.



**Step 4:** Tie several more Half knots, until the first half of the design measures **1 inch**.

You'll be moving from the center towards the ends, so you need to tie the other half.



**Step 5: Turn the sennit around** to make the second half of the Chain Picot Mount.

Tie more Half Knots for another inch, so that the total size is **2 inches**.



**Step 6:** Curve the design into a picot loop, and secure it to your work surface.

Place the ends **under** the ring, dowel, or holding cord.





**Step 7:** Attach each end with DHH.

A Chain Picot Mount will always stand above the item it's attached to, no matter which knot you use to create the picot.

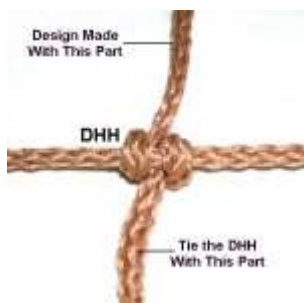
## Unique Mounting Designs



These Unique Mounting Designs are usually found in the beginning stages of Macrame projects. They are created by making some type of picot loop at the center of a cord. You can use a decorative knot, or just fold the cord to form the loop. Then the ends are attached to a holding cord, dowel or ring.

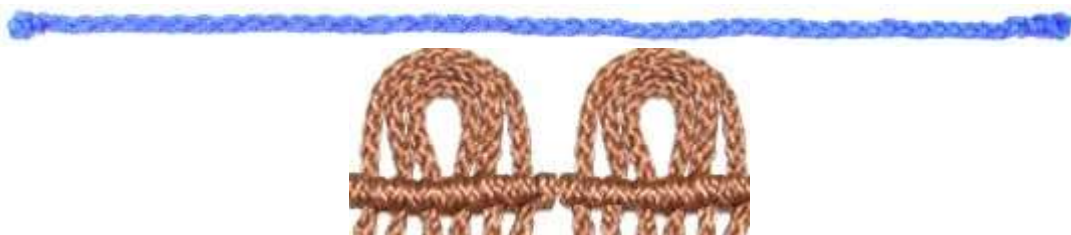
The techniques shown below are only a few of the many possible designs you can make. Once you understand the basic concept, you can create your own custom mounts for your Macrame projects.

For further details on how to make other mounting designs with the Double Half Hitch (DHH), see the [Double Half Hitch Mount](#).



First, the picot design is made in the center, which is the portion of the working cord that rests **above** the holding cord.

The **lower portion** of the working cords are used to tie the DHH onto the holding cord, dowel, or ring.

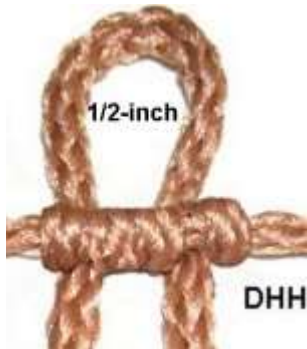




## Loop Picot Mount

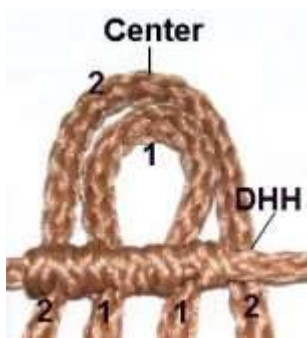
The first of the unique mounting designs shown here is frequently seen in vintage Macrame books, and is called the **Loop Picot Mount**.

**Step 1:** You will need four cords to practice this mounting technique. Arrange one cord **horizontally** on your work surface (**holding cord**).



**Step 2:** Fold a working cord in half to form a loop. Attach each end to the holding cord with DHH.

Be sure to make the first loop so it stands 1/2-inch **above** the holding cord.



**Step 3:** Fold another working cord in half, and arrange it **around** the first picot.

Attach both ends to the holding cord with DHH. They should rest on either side of the first two.



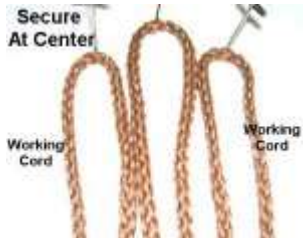
**Step 4:** Repeat the process with a third working cord, placing it around the first and second picots.



## Triple Loop Mount

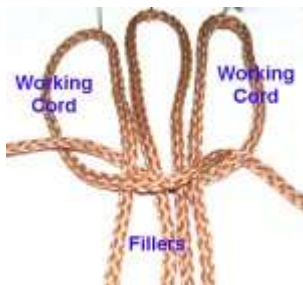
This design is one of the most common of the unique mounting designs shown here. I've seen it in Macrame books written in the early 1900's as well as in the 1970's.

You will need four cords to practice this technique. One is a holding cord, which the design will be attached to.



**Step 1:** Fold three cords and place them on your working surface side by side. Secure them with pins or tape.

The two segments furthest to the left and right are the **working cords**.



**Step 2:** Use the two working cords to tie a **Square Knot** around the other four cords, which are the fillers.



**Step 3:** Tighten the Square Knot, adjusting the size of the loops, so the one in the center is taller.

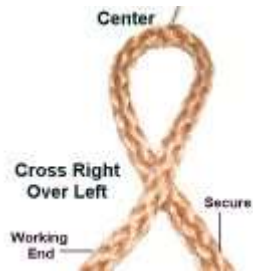
Attach all the ends to a holding cord, ring or dowel, with DHH. The Square Knot should rest **above** the row of DHH.



## Slipknot Mount

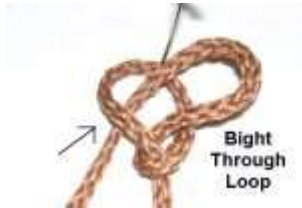
Since unique mounting designs can be made with a variety of knots, I chose the **Slipknot** to make this one.

You will need one holding cord, and one working cord to make each Slipknot.



**Step 1:** Fold the working cord in half. Make a loop, crossing right over left.

The working end is now on the **left**. Secure the other end, as well as the **center** of the loop, to your board or work surface



**Step 2:** Form a bight with the working end, and push it **through** the loop from **below**.

This forms a Slipknot. Tighten it by pulling on the ends.

**Bight = Narrow Fold**



**Step 3:** Arrange the holding cord horizontally. Place the Slipknot **above** it, and adjust the size of the loop. Attach both ends to the holding cord with DHH.



### Figure Eight Mount

Here is a Figure Eight design I came up with, just to show you how you can be creative and come up with your own unique mounting designs.



**Step 1:** Make a loop in the **center** of a working cord.

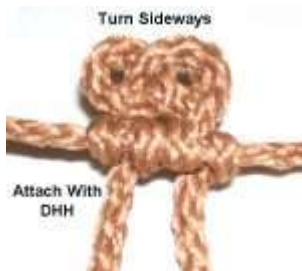
Make sure the left end crosses over the working end (right half).



**Step 2:** Bring the working end (now on the left) over the other end, as you move it in a **counter-clockwise** direction.

Bring it through the loop, from **below**.

Tighten the Figure Eight knot so it's small, but make sure you can still see the general shape.



**Step 3:** Arrange a holding cord on your work surface horizontally. Place the Figure Eight knot just above it, **turned sideways**.

Attach both ends to the holding cord with DHH.

## Venetian Picot Mount



**Description:** The Venetian Picot Mount is a vintage design that was very popular in the early 1900's.

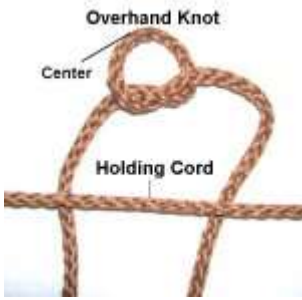
A **picot** is a loop or knot that stands up **above** a holding cord, dowel or ring. In this case, it's a small knot called the **Overhand Knot**.

A **hitch** is a knot used to attach the design to a holding cord, dowel, or ring. Most of the time the **Double Half Hitch** is used, since that was the knot of choice in the past.

More pages of related techniques you should review are:

- [Unique Mounting Designs](#)
- [Chain Picot Mount](#)

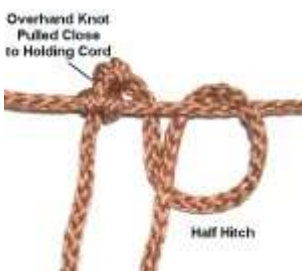
**Step 1:** Cut one holding cord and secure it horizontally to your work surface. You could also use a ring or dowel if you wish. Cut a second cord to make the picot.



Tie an Overhand Knot in the center of one cord. Place the ends **under** the holding cord, so the knot is above it.



**Step 2:** Attach the left portion of the working cord to the holding cord with a Double Half Hitch (DHH). Pull it tightly so there is **no space** between the Overhand knot and the holding cord.



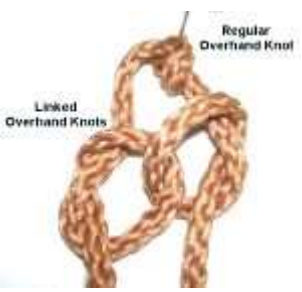
**Step 3:** Attach the right portion to the holding cord, with a DHH. Make sure you pull it firmly before tightening the DHH.

In a Macrame pattern using Venetian Picot Mount, you would repeat steps 1 - 3 to add more working cords to the holding cord.



You can make this picot design larger by tying three or more knots, arranged side-by-side.

In this case, I tied five Overhand knots, then curved it to form the picot.



**Linked Overhand Knots**

You can also tie

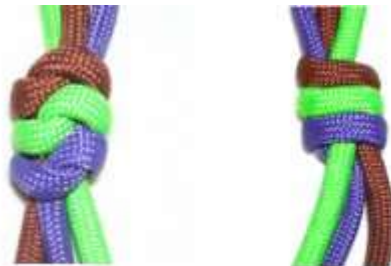
[Linked Overhand Knots](#)

(or combine both types)



**Completed Design**

# Matthew Walker Knot



Back

Front

**Description:** The Matthew Walker knot features three [Overhand Knots](#) linked together in an unusual manner. Because it forms a rounded area at the tip of the cord, it's considered a **stopper knot**.

This decorative knot can be used to prevent a twisted style cord from unraveling. You can also tie this Macrame knot using three or more cords, as I did in the example shown.

This knot can be tied anywhere along the length of a cord, but it's usually placed at the tips. After it's tied, you can cut off the remaining material, and the knot will still hold together. That's why it's considered a **finishing knot**.



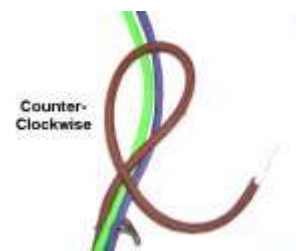
I used three cords to show you the steps below.

When using this design as a finishing knot, you would **unravel one cord** to get three or more separate fibers.



**Step 1:** Cut three cords, at least 12 inches long. Secure the ends to your work surface so they are vertical.

The knot should be started 8 to 10 inches **below** the ends.



**Step 2:** Use the cord furthest to the **left** to make a **counter-clockwise** loop.

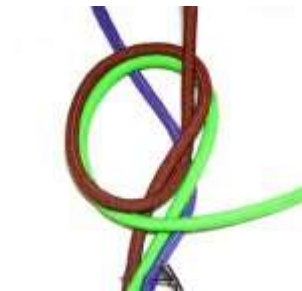
It should rest **on top** of the other two cords.





**Step 3:** Complete the **Overhand Knot** by passing the end through the loop from below.

The end of the cord should be heading upward when you are finished.

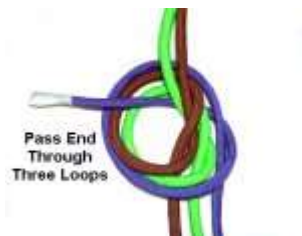


**Step 4:** Select the cord resting next to the one you just used.

Make the **counter-clockwise** loop, so it rests **beneath** the first one.



**Step 5:** As you complete the Overhand knot with the second cord, pass the end through **both** loops, from below.



**Step 6:** Use the final cord to create a third Overhand knot, passing the end through **all three loops**.



**Step 7:** Pull on all three ends to tighten the Matthew Walker knot (**both directions**).





Make sure you tighten the knot as much as possible, so it's tight.

Cut off the remaining material if you wish, and apply glue as needed.

## Linen Stitch



**Description:** The Linen Stitch is a very simple way to collect a group of cords together in one bundle.

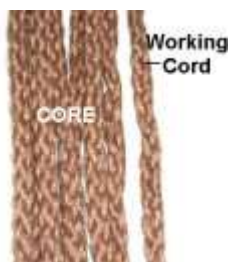
In Vintage patterns, this decorative knot is sometimes called a **Collecting** or **Gathering** knot.

Let's say, for example, you are making a plant hanger that uses several cords. You need some way to keep the cords all bundled together at the bottom. A Macrame knot like this one can be used.

A similar decorative knot you should practice is the [Wrapped Knot](#).

The main difference is that you use a **separate cord** to make the knot, where in this design the working cord is one already present.

Below the first set of instructions I have added an unusual variation. It's called the **Progressive Linen Stitch**, and can be used in ways other than as a finishing knot.



**Step 1:** To practice, secure several cords to your work surface or project board.

The cord on the far **right** is the working cord. The rest form the **core**, which is another name for fillers or holding cords.



**Step 2:** Wrap the working cord around the others, by passing it **under - over**, moving **clockwise**.

As you bring it to the right, pass **under** the portion of the working cord resting to the right of the core.



**Step 3:** Wrap the working cord **firmly** around the core several times, until the Linen Stitch is the size you need.



**Step 4:** Pull a small segment to the right, to leave a space. You can secure it if you wish.



**Step 5:** Wrap one more time, passing the end through the space.



**Step 6:** Choose **a different cord** from the bundle, and repeat steps 4 and 5.

Make sure it goes around the first working cord.



## Progressive Linen Stitch



**Description:** This variation is made by wrapping the working cord around different cords making up the core.

It produces a very interesting design, which can be used as a strap for a purse, or even a simple bracelet.



**Step 1:** You will need 4 cords to practice this knot.

Mentally number the cords 1 thru 4.

**The working cord is 4, which is on the right.**



**Step 2:** Wrap the working cord around 2 and 3. **Do not include cord 1.**

Pass **under** them first, and then **over**, as you bring the working cord to the **right**.



**Step 3:** Pass the working cord **under** all 3 cords.

Move the end **over** cords 1 and 2, and **under** cord 3, as you bring it back to the right.

**Do you understand how this works yet?** You wrap around 2 and 3, and then switch to 1 and 2.

So to start the next wrap, bring the working cord under cord 2. It should be brought to the front **between cords 1 and 2**. Bring it over cords 2 and 3 again (step 2).



**Step 4:** For the final wrap, bring the working cord around **cords 1 - 3**.

Pass the working cord under a portion of itself on the right, to form a Half Hitch.

If you wish, you can switch cords, and tie a second knot, just like you do with the standard type of Linen Stitch.

# Oysterman Knot



**Description:** The Oysterman Knot, also called the **Ashley Stopper Knot**, forms an attractive button anywhere on a cord. Developed in the early 1900s by Clifford W. Ashley, it is a relatively easy decorative knot to make.

Most button knots are easy to tie, but complicated to tighten. Not so with this one, which makes it very appealing for many types of Macrame projects.

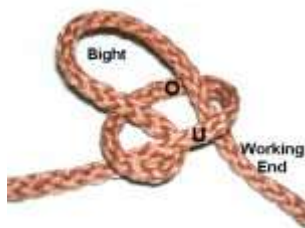
To view 2 Micro-Macrame patterns where this knot is featured, see:

- [Satin Rosary](#)
- [Pandora Bracelet](#)



**Step 1:** You need one cord, at least 12 inches in length, to practice this decorative knot. Secure one end to your board.

Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the working end.



**Step 2:** Make a **bight** with the working end. Pass it into the loop from below (**under - over**).

Tighten the loop by pulling on the **bight**.

You can reduce the size of the bight by pulling on the working end, which should remain **to your right** at all times.



**Step 3:** Direct the working end **under** the secured end and through the bight, rotating **clockwise**.

Pass it into the bight from the top (**over - under**).



**Step 4:** Tighten the bight **first**, by pulling on the segment just below the area that's already been tightened (first loop).

Next, pull on the working end to tighten the remainder of the knot.



This is what the completed knot looks like when it's finished (loosely tightened).

When you pull it tight, it's a rounded square and looks like a button knot.

## Stevedore Knot



**Description:** The Stevedore Knot is similar to a Figure Eight Knot in the way it's designed. But an extra loop is added, which gives it a strong hold.

It's considered a **stopper knot** because it prevents the cord from unraveling, or from slipping through another knot.

This decorative knot is used in Macrame to finish the ends of cords in the final steps. So it is usually tied near the tip of a cord. But you could use it wherever a tight, sturdy knot is needed, since it doesn't untie easily.



**Step 1:** You need one piece of material, at least 10 inches long. Make a loop in the center by crossing the left half over the right.

The working end is now on your **right**. The other is called the **standing end**, and is used to hold the knot.



**Step 2:** Wrap the working end around the standing end in a **clockwise** direction.



**Step 3:** Rotate the working end to the left, as if you were going to wrap around again.

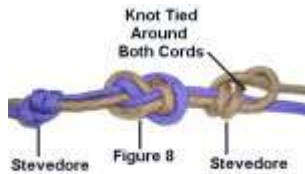


**Step 4:** Bring the working end up and through the loop at the top of the knot.



**Step 5:** This is what the Stevedore knot looks like as you begin tightening it, which is easier to do if the ends are horizontal.

Pull both ends **gradually**, making sure the wraps are next to each other without overlapping.



Here I made a Figure Eight knot, which can come apart easily. So I used 2 Stevedores to hold the ends in place. By tying each knot around **both cords**, the ends could not slide out of the Figure Eight Knot. Making one knot with each cord really helps, too.

## Clove Hitch



**Description:** The Clove Hitch has several variations which can be used in Macrame projects. They are particularly useful as mounting knots; to attach cords to rings or dowels.

In books devoted to decorative knots, they are usually listed together, and are called **constriction knots**. That's because they hold on very tight, and have snake-like twists and coils.

### Variations Described Below:

- Basic Design
- Constrictor Knot
- Clove Loop
- Boa Knot
- The Python

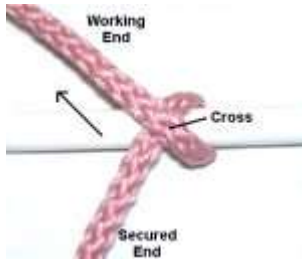
## Basic Design

To practice the basic Clove Hitch, you need one cord, at least 12 inches long. You will also need a ring, handle, or any other object to attach the knot to (base).



**Step 1:** Secure one end of the cord to your work surface or project board. Direct the working end **over** the base, then bring it **under**, heading slightly towards the right.





**Step 2:** **Cross** the working end of the cord **over** in the front of the base, as you bring it to the **upper left**.



**Step 3:** Direct the working end around the base, on the left, to create another loop.

Next, pass the end **under** the segment of cord that rests to the **left** of the crossed area from the last step.

Pull **both** ends of the cord to tighten the Clove Hitch. If tied correctly, the ends will head in **opposite directions**.



## Constrictor Knot

The Constrictor Knot is another type of Clove Hitch, but is constructed differently.

This one is designed specifically for dowels and tubes, where the ends are free (no other knots present).

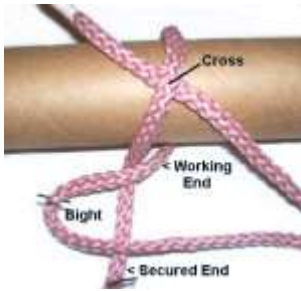


You need one cord to practice, at least 18 inches long.



**Step 1:** Secure one end of the cord to your board.

Bring the cord up and **over** the front of the dowel or tube, and down behind it. The working end should rest to the right of the secured end.



**Step 2:** Make a bight (fold) with the working end, and pull it towards the left, over the standing end.

Next, bring the working end up to the segment in front of the dowel. Pass under it to make the crossing point, heading towards the upper left.



**Step 3:** Make the bight larger and slip it over the left end of the dowel or tube. Make sure the top of it remains up, and you **don't twist the loop**.

In other words, the back of the cord will touch the dowel. Tighten the knot by pulling on the ends.

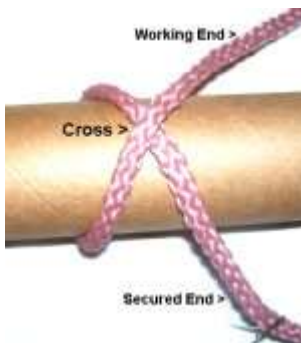


## Clove Loop

This interesting variation of the Clove Hitch provides you with a sturdy loop attached to a dowel, ring, or other item.

The loop can be pulled out, so this knot is best used in combination with other decorative knots.

You need one cord, at least 18 inches long.



**Step 1:** Secure one end to your work surface, to your **right**. Bring the other end all the way around the base, front to back. The loop should be to the **left** of the secured end.

Bring the working end to the **upper right**, crossing **over** the segment in front of the base.



**Step 2:** Bring the working end around the base, to the **right** of the crossed area. As you bring it to the front, pass it **over** the secured end.

Pass the working end under both segments resting **to the left of the crossed area**, heading **upward**. The end will come to rest at the top of the Clove Hitch.



**Step 3:** Direct the working end down to the bottom of the base. Pass under the crossed area, as well as the other segments below it. Leave a loop at the top.

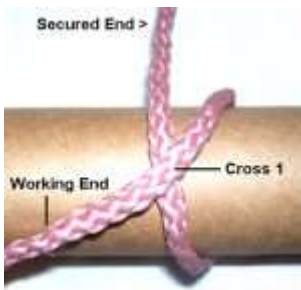
Tighten the knot by pulling on the ends as well as the loop.



## Boa Knot

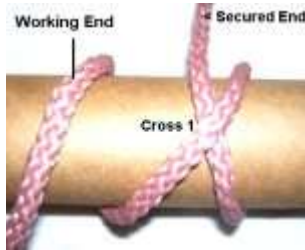
This interesting variation of the Clove Hitch provides a very sturdy knot around thick dowels and items like curtain rods.

It will support **heavy** items like plant hangers, particularly those that use dowels in the design.

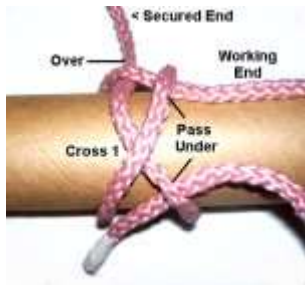


**Step 1:** Secure one end of a cord to the board, **above** the base. Bring the working end down over the front of the dowel. Rotate it around to the back, slightly to the right.

The **first cross** is made by bringing the working end over the segment in front of the dowel, heading towards the **left**.



**Step 2:** Rotate the working end around the dowel, to the **left** of the first crossed area (back to front).



**Step 3:** Bring the working end **over the secured end**, as you bring it towards the right.

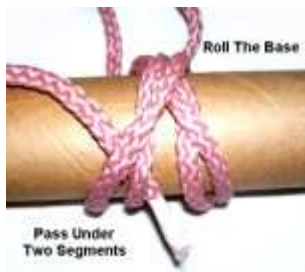
Pass it **under** the segment above and to the **right** of the first cross.

Bring the end down below the cross, and pass it under the **right** segment there, too. This way the end comes out directly below Cross 1.



**Step 4:** Now it's time to double this Clove Hitch design. Wrap the working end around the base on the **right**, going under - over.

Move the end to the **left**, and wrap it around again the same way.



**Step 5:** **Roll the base** away from you slightly, so you can see the area below the crossed portions. Note that there are four segments.

Direct the working end **under** the two segments on the **left**.

**Step 6:** Tighten the knot **gradually**, removing the slack from the loops. The two ends should be lined up, at the top and bottom of the design.

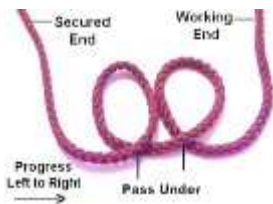


# The Python

This variation of the Clove Hitch is very thick and provides a sturdy hold. Use it in **heavy** projects, such as hammocks or plant hanger designs.

This decorative knot is made differently than the others, since it's constructed **on a surface**.

The dowel is added once the knot is made.



**Step 1:** Secure one end of a 60-inch cord to your board, on the **left**. Make 2 **counter-clockwise** loops, moving left to right.

Make sure you pass the end **under** to make the crossing points at the bottom.



**Step 2:** Slide the **left** loop on top of the right one. Then turn both of them sideways, so the crossed areas are on the left. The working end should be at the **bottom**.

**Be very careful not to distort the loops as you move them.**



**Step 3:** Remove the tape or pins from the secured end. **Flip** the **lower half** of both loops over the top half. This will form a figure 8. Adjust the ends so they come out of each circle **from the inside**.



**Step 4:** Pass the dowel **under** both loops on the **right**.

Slide it **over** the center of the Clove Hitch, and **under** the loops on the left. One end will rest in the front of the dowel, and the other behind it.

**Step 5:** Move the coils together and tighten the knot gradually, by pulling on the ends.

# Spanish Hitching

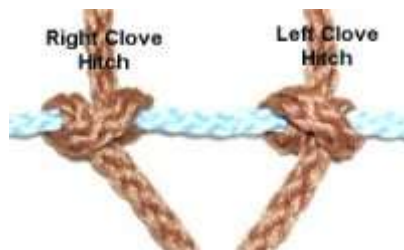


**Description:** Spanish Hitching is a unique way to cover dowels and other tube shaped objects, such as wine bottles and drinking glasses. This Macrame design features the [Clove Hitch](#).

Since the knots used in this design are **hitches**, they need to be attached to a holding cord, which wraps around the item you are covering.

I've included instructions for tying the Clove Hitch in two different directions, since you need to know both.

## Clove Hitch Instructions



To properly create Spanish Hitching, you need to know how to tie the Clove Hitch in both directions. The diagonal area in the front needs to head in different directions.

**Design Tip:** A good way to remember the steps is that for a **right** Clove Hitch, the first loop you make is on the right.

For a **left** Clove Hitch, the first loop is on the left.



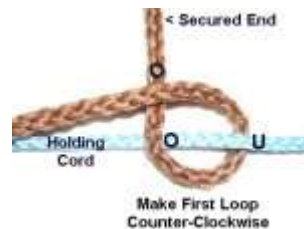
# Right Clove Hitch

**Step 1:** Secure a holding cord horizontally to your board, so it has tension.

In the images, that's the blue cord. Secure a working cord to your board, so it is vertical.

Create the first loop by directing the working cord **over** the holding cord, and then **under** it.

Bring it **over** the secured portion, as you move it to the left (**counter-clockwise**).



**Step 2:** To make the second loop, which is on the **left**, pass the working cord **under** the holding cord, and then over it (**clockwise**).

Direct the end **under** the working cord in the diagonal area between the two loops.



**Step 3:** Remove the slack from the right loop, followed by the left.

Note that the segment in front crosses right to left, which is shown by the arrow.





# Left Clove Hitch

**Step 1:** Arrange the two cords as you did in the previous instructions. Pass the working end **over** the holding cord, and then **under** it.

As you rotate the end to the **right**, pass it **over** the secured portion, to form a **clockwise** loop.



**Step 2:** Direct the working end **under** the holding cord, to the right of the first loop.

Bring it **over** the holding cord, and **under** the diagonal portion of the working cord, in the area between the two loops (**counter-clockwise**).



**Step 3:** Remove the slack from the left loop first, followed by the right.

Note that the segment in front crosses left to right, which is shown by the arrow.



# Spanish Hitching Design

Now it's time to work on the actual Spanish Hitching design. Note that these instructions are for **practicing** only. To use this design in a Macrame project,

the cords need to be longer.

**Step 1:** Start by cutting 10 working cords, each at least 25 inches long. Cut one holding cord, 36 inches long.

Secure the holding cord to the **back** of a paper towel tube, or a dowel. Secure the working cords to the top of it, so they are vertical. You can use masking tape to secure the cords.



Bring the **holding** cord around to the front of the dowel, **heading left to right**. Tie a row of **left** Clove Hitches onto the holding cord, using each of the working cords.

Move left to right as you tie the knots. The first row should be as close to the top as possible.

When you get to the back, where the end of the holding cord is taped, tie the Clove Hitches around the **secured end** as well.

So you are tying them around **two** portions of the holding cord.



This shows what the first row of Clove Hitches will look like when you are through. Make sure the row is straight, so the Spanish Hitching looks neat.



**Step 3:** Wrap the holding cord around the item you are covering, so it rests below the first row of knots.



**Step 4:** Tie a row of **right** Clove Hitches. Tighten them so they rest just below the first row of knots.

You can tie these knots moving in either direction, but it's a little easier if you tie them left to right.



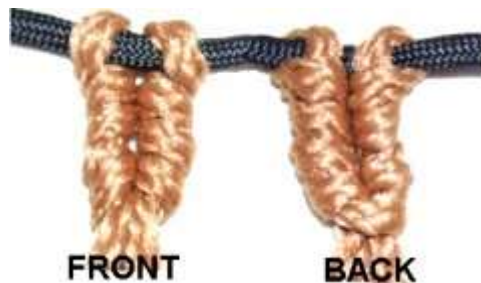
Here's an image of the two rows when they are completed.



To continue, wrap the holding cord around, and tie the next row with **left** Clove Hitches. The following row should be **right**.

Here you can see there is an obvious difference between the two directions.

## Cats Paw Hitch



**Description:** The Cats Paw Hitch has the same purpose as the Larks Head Knot, which is to attach cords to an object or holding cord.

This decorative knot can be used to attach cords to rings, dowels, and other

CORDS. It's particularly useful in the initial mounting process.

It can be used anywhere in a Macrame pattern, wherever a standard [Larks Head Knot](#) is called for.

You can also lengthen the design described below, by making more than 3 wraps.

**Other variations on this page:** Mini Cats Paw Hitch

**Step 1:** You'll need one piece of cord material, at least 12 inches long, to practice this mounting technique. You also need a ring, holding cord, or dowel, to hold the Cat's Paw Hitch.

In the images below, I used a holding cord (black), which was secured horizontally, with tension.



**Step 2:** Fold the cord in half, and lay it down **under** the item holding the knot.

The folded area (crook) needs to rest at least **1 to 2 inches below** the holding cord, ring or dowel.



**Step 3:** Bring the **right** end down, and begin the wrapping process by going **under** the **right half** of the cord.



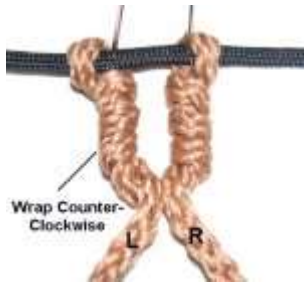
**Step 4:** Wrap the end in a **clockwise** direction.

Wrap at least three times, so that you end near the crook of the fold.



**Step 5:** Tighten the coils so that the wrapped area is snug.

This will help when it's time to tighten the Cats Paw Hitch.



**Step 6:** Repeat steps 3- 5 using the **left** end. Wrap it around the left portion of the cord, heading **counter-clockwise**.

Be sure you direct the cord **under** as you begin the wraps (see Step 3).



**Step 7:** Tighten the Cats Paw Hitch **slowly**, by pulling on the ends, gradually removing the slack.

There should be **no gap** between the crook of the cord and the bottom of the wrapped areas.

Depending on the type of material you use, you may need to slide the wraps upwards with your fingers.



### Mini Cats Paw

This decorative knot is closely related to the Cats Paw Hitch. The main difference is that no wrapping occurs. Since I have yet to find out the name of this design, I refer to it as the Mini Cats Paw.



**Step 1:** You need 2 pieces of material, one to be used as a holding cord, and one working cord. Secure the holding cord so it is horizontal, and has tension.

Fold the working cord in half and place it **on top** of the holding cord, with the crook at the bottom.



**Step 2:** Bring both ends down, passing **under** the holding cord.



**Step 3:** Direct both ends into the center of the knot, passing **over** the right and left portions of the cord (from the top).

The ends should rest **under** the crook when you are finished. Pull on the ends to tighten the knot.

## Slipknot



**Slipknot**



**Alpine Butterfly**

**Description:** The Slipknot is sometimes called the **Overhand Noose**. It starts with an **Overhand knot**, and then a loop is made.

It's been around for many centuries, but is not often viewed as a decorative knot. In Macrame, it's used to connect cords, and to form other knot designs.

Below are instructions for two ways to tie the basic knot, which has an **adjustable loop**.

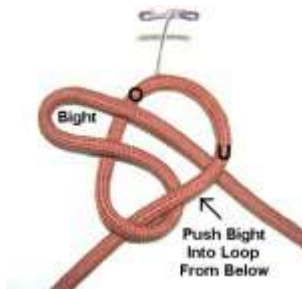
I've included a similar technique, called the **Alpine Butterfly**. This knot produces a **stable** loop, which is difficult to remove or adjust.

On another page are instructions for a very unique application of this decorative knot. It's called the [Ashoka Chakra](#), and it forms a ring that can be used for jewelry designs.



**Step 1:** Make a loop in the center of an 18-inch cord. Cross the left end over the right.

**Design Tip:** Most Macrame patterns will tell you precisely where to place the loop along the cord, and which is the working end.



**Step 2:** Make a **bight** with the end now on the right. Push it through the center of the first loop, from **below** (under-over).

Tighten the loop by pulling on the **bight**. To adjust the size of the bight, pull on the working end.



**Alternate Method:** Sometimes a Macrame design requires you to use the other end to make a Slipknot.

In that case, pass the bight through the loop from the **top** (over - under), heading **left to right**.



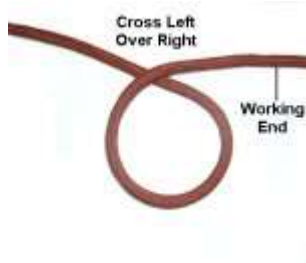
## Alpine Butterfly Knot





The Alpine Butterfly is related to the Slipknot, but is constructed differently. The knot below the loop is triangular in shape, and the loop does not move readily.

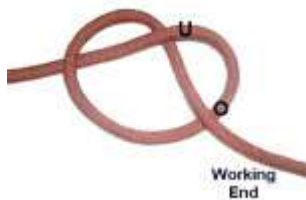
This variation can be used for plant hangers, bell pulls, or even curtains. It can also be used to mount cords to a ring, dowel, or similar items.



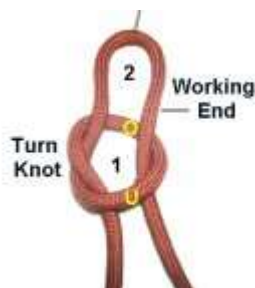
**Step 1:** You need one cord, at least 36 inches long.

Make a loop in the center of the cord. Cross left over right as shown.

The working end is now on the right.

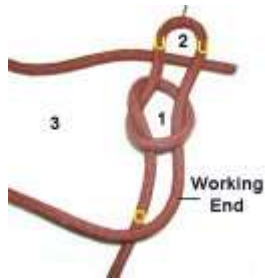


To complete the Overhand knot, bring the working end through the loop, from **below** (under - over).



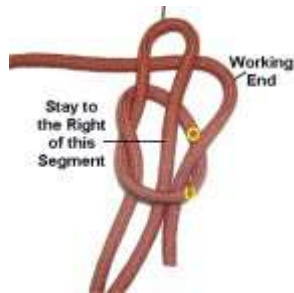
**Step 2:** Turn the Overhand knot so the crossed area is on the **left**. Make a **bight**, which is labeled 2 in this image.

Bring the working end of the cord through the Overhand knot **over - under**, as you bring it down.



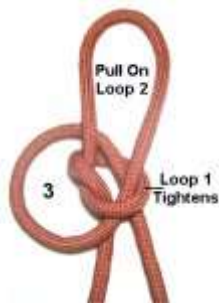
**Step 3:** To make Loop 3, direct the working end in a **clockwise** direction. Pass **over** the other end of the cord, at the bottom of the Slipknot.

Next, bring the end up to the top, passing **under** the second loop.



**Step 4:** Bring the working end down, through Loop 1.

Make sure it rests to the **right** of the other segment inside the knot (loop 2).



**Step 5:** The Alpine Butterfly has three loops, which have to be tightened **in order**.

So you first need to pull on Loop 2 to tighten Loop 1.



**Step 6:** Reduce the size of Loop 2, by pulling on the third loop.

Loop 2 is supposed to be left a little loose. The other two loops are tightened completely.



**Step 7:** Tighten Loop 3 by pulling on the working end, which is on the right.

Now you can see the triangular shape of the knot below the loop.

# Lambda Knot



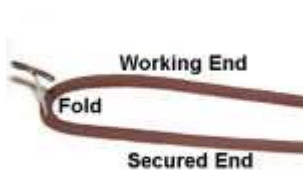
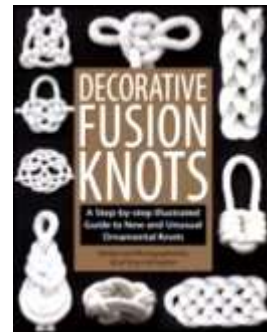
**Description:** The Lambda Knot features three loops surrounding a triangular design in the center. It has elements similar to those of a [Cloverleaf Knot](#).

This decorative knot can be used in Micro-Macrame jewelry projects, placing one on either side of beads, or standing alone. Try combining it with a [Triangle Knot](#), placing beads between each knot.

The material I used in the example shown is 3mm size Paracord. I recommend you try it with Satin, cotton, or other soft materials, too.

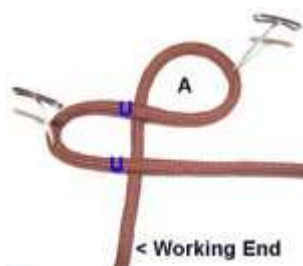
A **video tutorial** of this interesting knot can be found in the knot gallery of [Fusion Knots](#).

Click on this image or link to visit JD Lenzen's website, which also has information about his two books.



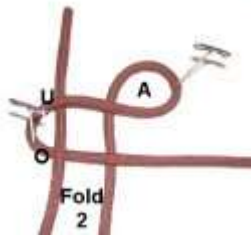
**Step 1:** You need one cord, 36 inches long. Secure one end to your board. **Four to six inches** from the end, fold the cord and secure it there as well.

The long portion is the working end, which should be at the **top**.



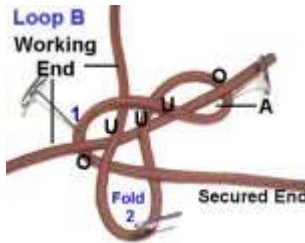
**Step 2:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop (A) with the working end.

Direct it straight down, passing **under** both parts of the first fold.



**Step 3:** Direct the working end upward, slightly to the left (closer to the fold), to create a second folded area.

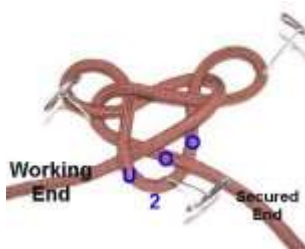
Pass **over** the lower portion of the first fold, and **under** the portion at the top.



**Step 4:** Make the second loop (B), by rotating the working end **counter-clockwise**.

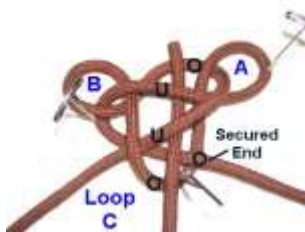
On the left, bring the working end **over** the crook of fold 1, and **under** both parts of fold 2.

Pass it through Loop A from below (**under - over**).



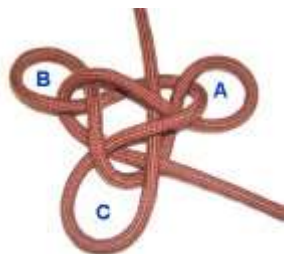
**Step 5:** Direct the working end down and to the left, passing **over** the right portion of fold 2, **over** the secured end, and **under** the left part of fold 2.

The two ends will cross, **inside** fold 2.



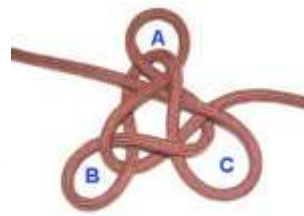
**Step 6:** To make the third loop (C), direct the working cord **counter-clockwise**, heading **upward**, through the center of the knot.

Pass it **over** the second fold, **over** the secured end, and **under** the next two segments. It should come out **over** the segment at the top.



<< This is what the Lambda knot should look like when you finish step 6.

Turn the knot so that Loop A is at the **top**. Gradually tighten each loop and fold. >>



The Lambda knot looks best if all the loops and folds are tightened completely.



Since the two ends are coming out of the knot at the sides, you can use them to tie more knots.

## Triangle Knot



**Description:** The Triangle Knot is a vintage Macrame technique that is rarely used anymore. I found it in a book written in 1899, but not in any books after that time.

You could use this interesting decorative knot in either an Alternating or V Pattern, instead of Square Knots. It can also be used to make a sennit, as well as a unique type of mount. These variations are shown below the basic instructions.

To view a Macrame pattern where this knot is featured, see the [Triangle Bracelet](#).

## Basic Instructions

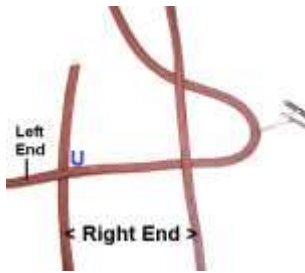
**Step 1:** Secure two cords to your work surface, **vertically**. Another option is to use one cord, folded in half. Then you will have a loop at the top.

I found it easier to practice the Triangle knot if the cords were on a project board, so I could use pins. Once you become familiar with this knot, you can tie it with the cords dangling.



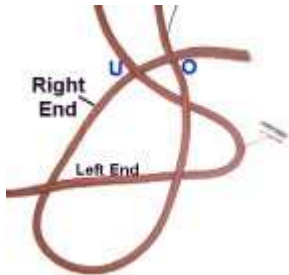
**Step 2:** Pull the left end **under** the right one, forming a bight on the **right**. Secure it to your board.

**Bight = Narrow Fold**



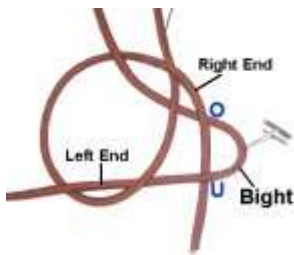
**Step 3:** Bring the right end up towards the top, starting a **clockwise loop**.

Pass it **under** the left end.



**Step 4:** Still using the right end, bring it to the area **above the bight**, where the two ends cross.

Pass **under - over** the two segments, as you continue to rotate clockwise.



**Step 5:** Bring the right end down to the bight. Pass the end through it, **over- under** the two segments.



Carefully tighten the knot by pulling on the ends.



## Triangle Mount

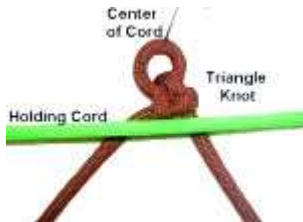
The Triangle Knot can be used to form an interesting mount.

You need one holding cord as well as three or more working cords.



**Step 1:** Fold one of the working cords in half, so you have the two ends to work with. Tie a Triangle Knot following the basic instructions. When you tighten it, remove most of the slack above the knot, so you have a small loop.

This is called a "picot", which gives character to the edge of items like handbags and curtain designs. Picots were used often in the 1800's.



Secure a holding cord horizontally to your board so it's taut. Slide the ends under it, vertically.

The knot should rest **above** the holding cord.



**Step 2:** Attach each end to the holding cord with a **Double Half Hitch**.

For the left half, rotate **clockwise** to make the two Half Hitches. For the right half, rotate **counter-clockwise**.



**Step 3:** Repeat steps 1 and 2 to add more Triangles to the holding cord (optional).



## Triangle Sennit

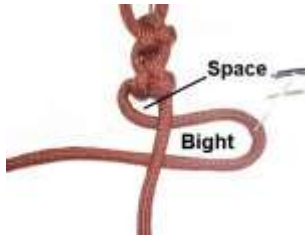
Several Triangle Knots can be tied one after the next, to form a sennit.

It's best to leave a small amount of space between the knots, so they can be seen more clearly.

You will need two cords, at least 25 inches long.

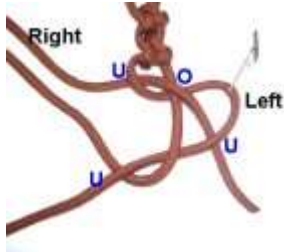






The process for tying the Triangle knot is the same as described in the basic instructions.

It's important that the bights are pulled so there is only a small amount of space **above** them.



When you are using the right end to make the rest of the knot, the space above the bight looks like a loop.

Don't let that throw you off. The end still passes through it, **under - over**.



## Alternating Triangle Pattern



You can use the Triangle Knot to form an alternating pattern, similar to how you use [Alternating Square Knots](#).

To practice, you need 6 separate cords. It helps if you mount them to another cord, but you can just secure them with pins.



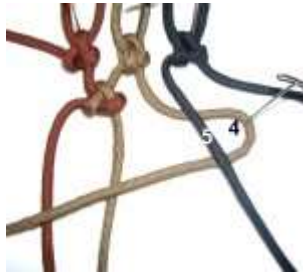
**Row 1:** Mentally number the cords 1 thru 6, moving left to right. Tie 3 Triangle Knots using sets of two cords.

Make sure they all line up in a **horizontal** row.



**Row 2:** Start the next row of knots by using cords 2 and 3 to make the triangle.

The cord used to make the **bight** is cord 2. The rest of the knot is made with cord 3.



To make the next Triangle for Row 2, use cord 4 to make the bight. Cord 5 is used for the rest of the knot.



**Row 3:** The next row is tied the same as the first row.

The knot on the left is tied with cords 1 and 2. For the knot on the right, use cords 5 and 6. The knot in the center is tied with 3 and 4.



To continue, repeat this process as many times as necessary to produce the net-like design.

## Eternity Knot

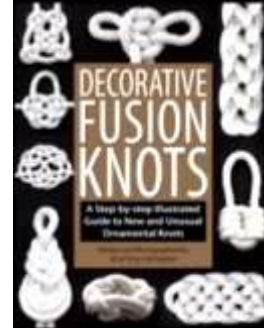
**Description:** The Eternity Knot is a wonderful decorative knot that can be tied with a single cord. It's a great knot to use in Micro-Macrame jewelry designs,

especially between beads.

In the Micro-Macrame section of this site, you will find a jewelry project featuring this knot. It's called the [Eternity Necklace](#).

I found this knot in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#), written by **J. D. Lenzen**.

Be sure to visit his website, by clicking on the link or image. His knot gallery contains tutorials for a variety of very unique and appealing decorative knots.



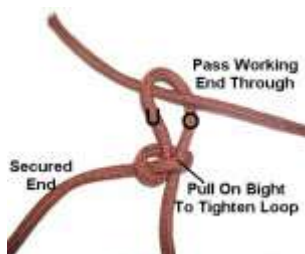
**Step 1:** To practice, make a loop in the center of a cord that's at least 24 inches long.

Make sure the left passes over the right to make the crossing point at the bottom. Secure the end that is now on the **left**.



**Step 2:** Use the working end, which is on the right.

Fold it to make a bight (narrow fold), and push it through the loop **from below**.



**Step 3:** Pull on the bight to tighten the first loop.

Move the working end around **counter-clockwise**, and pass it through the **bight** from the **front**, which is **over - under**.

**Design Tip:** Sometimes it's easier to make the Eternity knot in your hands rather than on a surface. In that case, make sure the bight is facing you, with the working end on the right. Pass the end through the bight **from front to back**.

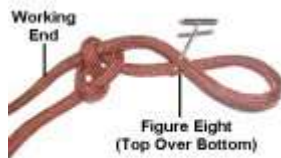


**Step 4:** When you finish step 3, a large loop will be present on your right.

Tighten the center portion of the knot by pulling on the **lower** portion of this loop.

**Design Tip:** When you are just learning this decorative knot for the first time, the loop should be around 2 to 3 inches in size.

Before moving on to the next step, make sure the **secured end** is the one on the **bottom**, especially if you made the knot in your hand.



**Step 5:** Make a figure eight design with the large loop by moving the top portion over the bottom.

Secure the figure eight at the crossing point, if you are using a project board. If not, hold the crossed area when you do the next step.



**Step 6:** Bring the working end around from left to right (clockwise), and pass it through the **rightloop** of the figure eight.

Make sure it goes through the space from below (under - over).

**Design Tip:** Bring it through from back to front, if you are holding the cord.



Tighten the Eternity Knot gradually, so that the center is wider than the loops on either side.

It should look like this image. If not, practice it again.

# Linked Overhand Knots



**Description:** The Linked Overhand Knots described on this page are often referred to as **connection knots**. This means their primary purpose is to link two cords together. They all have a raised appearance and are sometimes used to decorate cords instead of beads.

Most of these designs are historical knots that date back to the early days of Macrame. You will often find them under different names than those I use here.

These unique decorative knots are very strong and sturdy, and I have seen them used to make nets, hammocks, and other items that hold weight. But they can also be used in jewelry designs and just about any type of Macrame pattern.

Here is a list of the knots described on this page:

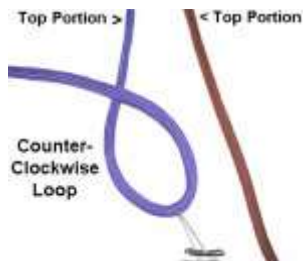
- **Shake Hands Bend**
- **Shamrock Knot**
- **Rosendahl's Bend**
- **Fisherman's Knot**
- **Overhand Bend**
- **Sheet Bend**
- **Alpine Bend**



## Shake Hands Bend

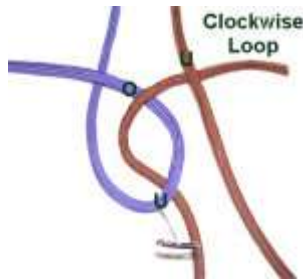
Linked Overhand knots often have interesting names. When you shake hands, you make a connection. So this name is very appropriate for this type of Macrame knot.

**Step 1:** You need two 18-inch cords to practice, preferably different colors. Make sure you look at the photos carefully, since the direction of the ends is very important. Secure both cords to your board, so they are vertical.



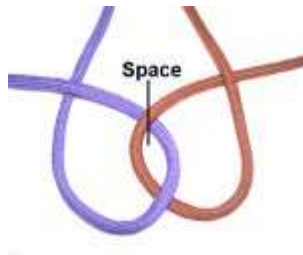
Make a **counter-clockwise** loop in the cord on the **left (purple)**.

The secured portion should be at the top. The other end should be resting to your left.



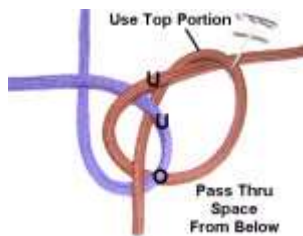
**Step 2:** Direct the cord on the **right (brown)** through the left loop from **below** (under - over). Move the cord **clockwise**, forming another loop.

Make sure the end passes **under** the **secured** portion as you move it to the right.



**Step 3:** Move the loops toward each other slightly so there is an extra **space** between them.

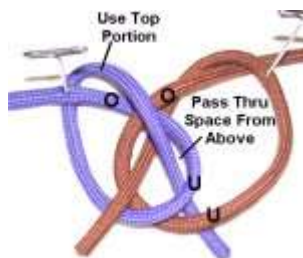
It's a good idea to secure both loops at the crossing points, if you have not done so already.



**Step 4:** Complete the **right Overhand knot** by moving the **top portion** down.

Pass it through the small space from **below**, which is **under - over**.

Make sure it passes through **both loops**.



**Step 5:** Complete the **left Overhand Knot** by directing the top portion into the same space from **above**.

The end should pass **over** both loops at the top, and **under** them at the bottom.



Tighten the linked Overhand knots slowly. Keep it flat on your board so you don't twist the knot.

There should be one end of each color coming out the **bottom** of the knot, on the right and left.



## Shamrock Knot

Linked Overhand knots sometimes have more than one name. This one is called the **Shamrock Knot**, or the **True Love Knot**.

I often use this technique when tying [Lanyard Knots](#), so I have a sturdy base to start with. It's easy to tie and makes an interesting crossed design.

**Step 1:** You need 2 cords, at least 18 inches long, to practice this decorative knot.



Make **Overhand Knot A** in the **center** of one cord. The crossed area needs to be at the **top**.

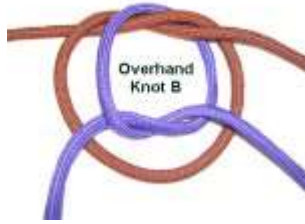
**Don't tighten the knot just yet.**



**Step 2:** Pass the **second cord (purple)** through the first Overhand Knot.

It should rest **over** the bottom and **under** the crossed area at the top.

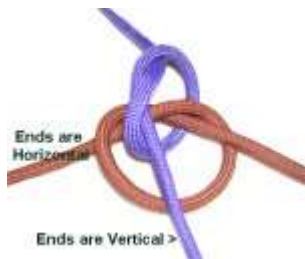




**Step 3:** Bring the **upper segment** of **cord B** down, so it **surrounds** the crossed area of the first knot.

Complete **Overhand knot B**. The crossing point needs to be at the **bottom**, and should rest **inside** the first knot.

**Design Tip:** Linked Overhand Knots need to be constructed **carefully**, or they don't work out. So pay close attention to the over and under details, as well as the direction of the ends.



**Step 4:** Turn **Overhand knot B sideways**, so the ends are heading vertically (up and down).

The ends of **Overhand knot A** should remain horizontal (side to side).



These linked Overhand knots should be tightened gradually.

Always make sure to keep the ends in the proper direction during tightening.



## Rosendahl's Bend

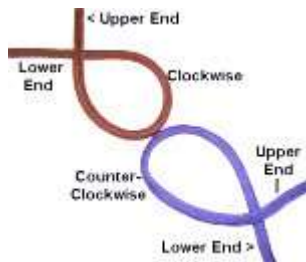
This decorative knot, also called the **Zeppelin Bend**, is a unique way to tie linked Overhand knots.

It's very useful if you want the cords to end up heading in 4 different directions, rather than two at the top and bottom.

**Step 1:** You need 2 cords, each at least 12 inches long, to practice this decorative knot.

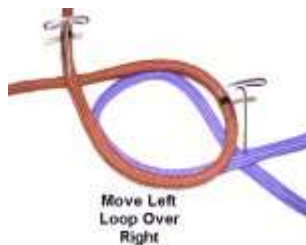
Secure the **first cord (brown)**, at one end, to your left. This is considered the **lower end** in the images shown.

Make a **clockwise loop** in the **center**, so the other end is heading upward, and is vertical. This is called the **upper end** in the images.



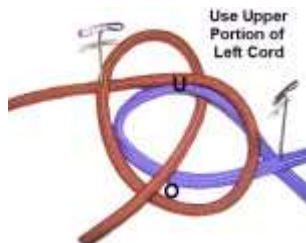
Use the **second cord (purple)** to make a loop in the center, crossing **left over right**. Position it so the crooks of both loops are touching, as shown.

The upper end should be heading right, the lower end downward.



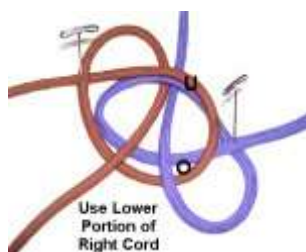
**Step 2:** Carefully move the **left loop** on top of the **right loop**. Secure them at the **crossing points**.

The crook (curved portion) of the right loop should be near the crossing point of the left loop, and vice-versa.



**Step 3:** To complete the **left Overhand knot**, bring the **upper end** down, moving **clockwise**.

Pass it through both loops from **below** (under - over).



**Step 4:** To complete the **right Overhand knot**, bring the **lower end** upward, moving **clockwise**.

Pass it through the loops from the **top** (over - under).



Carefully tighten the linked Overhand knots, by removing the slack and pulling on all 4 ends.

When finished, the ends will head in four different directions.



## Fisherman's Knot

Some of these Linked Overhand knots are used in other crafts. This one is used in fishing, to repair broken lines.



**Step 1:** Tie the **left Overhand Knot** in the center of a 12-inch cord, so the left end passes under the right at the crossing point.

**Don't tighten it yet.** Position it with the crossed area at the top as shown.

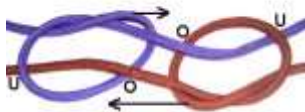


**Step 2:** Tie the **right Overhand Knot** at the center of a second cord. Make sure you tie it the same way, so it's left under right at the crossing point.

Position it to the **right** of the first knot, and so the crossing point is at the **bottom**.



**Step 3:** Pass the **right end** of the **left Overhand knot** through the other knot, from the **top**, which is **over - under** (see next image).



**Step 4:** Pass the **left end** of the **right Overhand knot** through the other knot, also from the **top**.



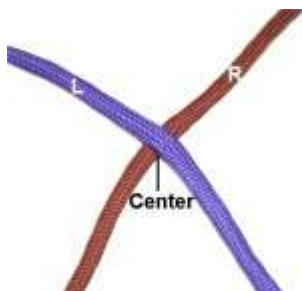
Tighten the Linked Overhand knots as they lie, taking care not to twist or rotate them.



## Overhand Bend

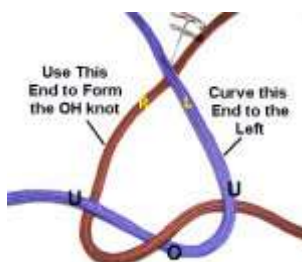
Like all of the Linked Overhand knots, this variation is a simple way to connect two cords.

If you were to run out of material as you are making something, you can add more length by using this knot.



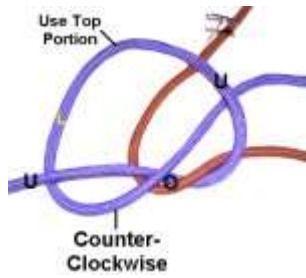
**Step 1:** Cross the **right cord (brown)** over the **left cord (purple)**, so the crossing point is at the center of the cords.

Secure them to your board at the crossing point.



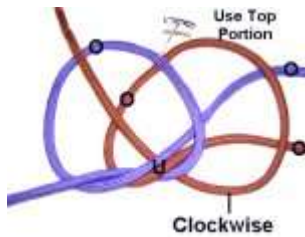
**Step 2:** Curve the **left cord**, which is now on the right, back towards the left.

Weave the **right cord** so it goes **under - over - under** the left cord.



**Step 3:** Bring down the **top** portion of the **left cord** (above the crossed area), and pass it under the lower end of the same cord.

Rotating **counter-clockwise**, bring it **over** the crossed area at the bottom, and **under** the segment of the **left cord** further up on the right.



**Step 4:** Bring the **top** portion of the **right cord** down, and pass it **over** both ends that are on the right.

Bring it **under** the crossed area at the bottom of the knot, moving **clockwise**. It should pass **over** both cords on the left, as you complete the circle.



Tighten the Linked Overhand knots gradually, by pulling on all four ends.



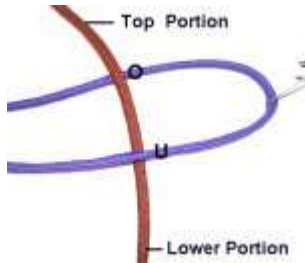
## Sheet Bend

I consider the Sheet Bend to be the most unique of all the Linked Overhand knots on this page.

It has a flatter profile than the others, and when tightened, there are three cords on one side, and one on the other.



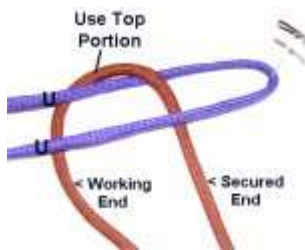
**Step 1:** Fold the **first cord (purple)** in half, so the center is on the right, and the ends are horizontal, heading left.



**Step 2:** Place the **second cord (brown)** through the first one, 1-inch to the left of the folded area.

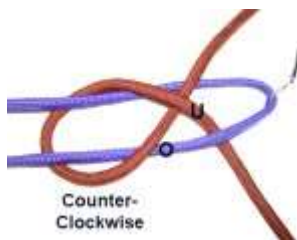
It should pass **over** the top portion of the first cord, and **under** the lower portion.

Secure the **lower** portion of the second cord.



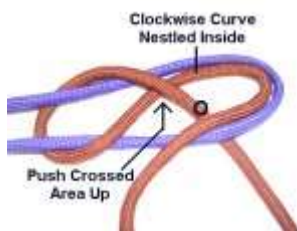
**Step 3:** Use the **top** portion of the **second cord** as the **working end**.

Direct it **under** both segments of the first cord, so it's to the left of the secured end.



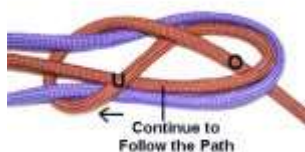
**Step 4:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop by bringing the working end **over** the lower portion of the first cord.

Bring it **under** the segment of the cord you are working with, which rests between cord 1.



**Step 5:** Push up on the crossed area of the second cord, so you are working below it. Rotate the **working end clockwise**.

Follow the path of the **first cord**. It should nestle **inside** the folded area.



**Step 6:** Use the **working end** to follow the path of the lower portion of the **first cord**, heading **right to left**.

It should pass **over** the secured end of the cord you are using.

Pass it through the loop made in step 4, **under - over**.





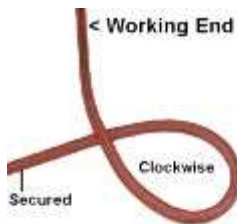
Tighten the Linked Overhand knots gradually, keeping the loops flat as you work. Three ends will be on the left, and one on the right.



## Alpine Bend

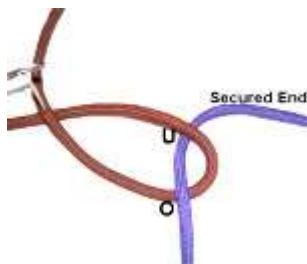
Linked Overhand Knots are often used in other crafts. The Alpine Bend has been in existence a long time, but mostly used in rope work.

You rarely see it in Macrame projects. It's one of the easiest to tie, and provides a good strong hold.



**Step 1:** You need 2 cords at least 12 inches long to practice this type of Linked Overhand knot.

Secure one end of the **first cord** to your left (brown). Make a **clockwise** loop, so the working end is heading **upward** when you are done.

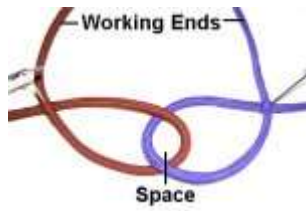


**Step 2:** Secure the **second cord** on your right (purple).

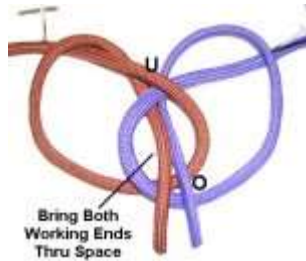
Pass it through the first loop from **below** (under - over).

Rotate it **counter-clockwise**, so the crossing point is on the right, and the working end at the top.





**Step 3:** Move the two loops slightly, creating an extra space. That is where the ends will go in the next step.



**Step 4:** Direct **both** working ends down and through the space from **below (under - over)**.



Tighten the Linked Overhand knots making sure you don't twist them.

## Knife Knot

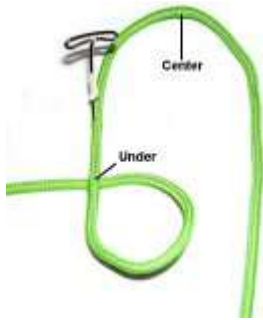


**Description:** The Knife Knot is also called a **Diamond Knot**, or a **Knife Lanyard**.

Sailors used to create this type of decorative knot with rope, to hold their knives, which is where the name came from.

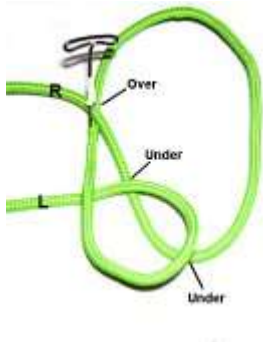
In Macrame, this technique can be used anywhere you need a stable loop, followed by a sturdy round knot. You can also tie it without a loop.

You could start a plant hanger with one, or even use it as part of earring designs.



**Step 1:** Fold one cord in half, securing it to your board. Use two separate cords, if you don't want a loop at the top.

Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the **left half**, passing **under** the vertical portion, as you rotate it to the left.



**Step 2:** Curve the right end so it passes **under** the left loop.

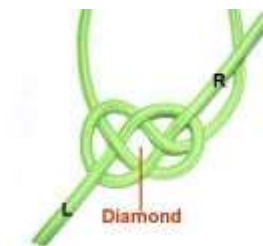
Bring it **over** the left portion of the cord, above the loop.

I placed the pin there on purpose, to support the cord for the next step.



**Step 3:** Still using the right end, bring it **under** the left end, moving **counter-clockwise**.

Pass it **over - under - over** the three segments of the loop, as you bring it back to the right side of the Knife knot.



Tighten the knot slightly, making sure the large loop above it is the size you need. It's easier to adjust the length of it now rather than when you tighten the knot later on.

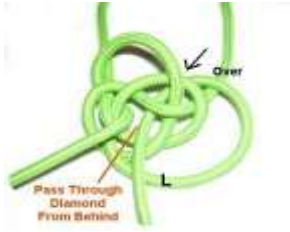
**Make sure you can identify the diamond shape in the center of the knot.**

**Design Tip:** The next portion is easier to make if you stand the knot up, so it's resting on the lower edge. This way you can clearly define the front versus the back of the knot.



**Step 4:** Rotate the **right** end **counter-clockwise**.

Pass it **behind** the tightened area, and bring the end through the diamond shape in the center, pulling it to the **front**.



**Step 5:** Rotate the left end **counter-clockwise**, heading towards the **upper right**. Bring the end through the diamond shape, also **from back to front**.

The two ends should rest side by side, as shown in this image.

**Step 6:** Start to tighten the Knife Knot by securing the large loop at the top.

Remove the slack **in the order the loops were made**. So the last thing you do is pull on the ends.

## Clasped Hands Knot



**Description:** The Clasped Hands knot is a unique way of forming a button shaped knot below a loop.

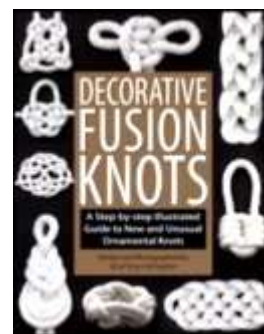
It's easy to tie and makes a great clasp for jewelry.

You could also use it anywhere in a Macrame pattern where you need a sturdy loop, such as in a plant hanger.

You need one cord, at least 36 inches long, to practice this decorative knot.

I found this historical knot in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#), written by **J. D. Lenzen**.

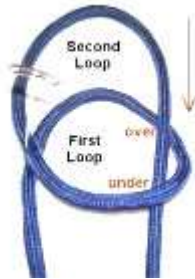
Be sure to visit his website, by clicking on the link or image. His knot gallery contains video tutorials for a variety of very unique and appealing knots.





**Step 1:** Secure one end to your board, in the area where you want the knot to start. Make a loop, moving **clockwise**.

The secured end should be heading downward vertically. The upper portion should be curved as shown.



**Step 2:** Direct the **upper** portion down and through the first loop, from the **top (over - under)**.

This creates the **second** loop.



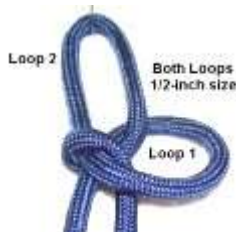
**Step 3:** Pass the same end **under** the standing end (secured). Next, curve it in a **clockwise** direction, forming a **third** loop.

Direct it **over** three segments, and **under** the lower portion of the first loop, as you bring it right.



**Step 4:** Pull on Loop 2 as well as the ends, to **gently tighten** this portion of the Clasped Hands Knot.

Secure the loop to your board.



**Step 5:** Tug on the tightened area on the **right**, which was **Loop 1** in previous steps.

Pull on it until it's around 1/2-inch in size.



**Step 6:** Move the end that is now on the **right** to make a **clockwise loop**. Bring it **under** the left end, **over** it, and down through Loop 1.

I marked the path of the right end with red X's so you can understand the photo better.



**Step 7:** Repeat Step 6 one more time.

Tighten the loops slightly, so you can clearly see all three of them, and they don't overlap.



**Step 8:** Flip the first half of the Clasped Hands Knot over, so you work in the **back**.

The end you were just using should now be on the **left**.



**Step 9:** You will use the end that is now on the **right**. Bring it **under** the left end in a **clockwise** circle.

Pass it through the **three loops** you made in steps 6 and 7. When you pull the end through, it will rest on the right again.

I've marked the path with red X's again.



**Step 10:** Repeat step 9 again, bringing the right end under the left, and through the coils in a **clockwise** direction.



**Step 11:** Tighten the Clasped Hands Knot by pulling on the ends more than the loop. Otherwise it may become too large.

Adjust the coils as needed so the knot looks neat.

## Monkey Fist

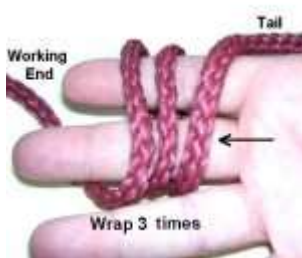


**Description:** The Monkey Fist is an interesting decorative knot seldom used in Macrame patterns. It is a unique way to finish off the end of a cord.

You could use this technique in combination with a [Buttonhole Clasp](#) rather than using a plastic button. Try making this button knot to use as a pendant, or as part of a bracelet design.

To view a Macrame pattern featuring this knot, see the [Monkey Key Chain](#).

**Step 1:** Cut one cord, at least 36 inches long. The first part of the Monkey Fist knot is tied around two fingers, so you won't need a project board to practice.



Arrange the cord so the tail is behind your **right** hand. The tail can be any size.

Wrap the working end around your spread fingers **three times**.

Make sure you wrap **towards the tips of your fingers (right to left)**.



**Step 2:** Bring the working end between your fingers, near the tips, and **across** the wraps **left to right**.

Pass it down through the space between your fingers near the palm, and wrap around the back portion. Then bring the cord up again for the next wrap.

**Step 2, continued:** As you progress, arrange the three loops moving towards **your index finger**. You may need to spread your fingers open more than what is seen in the photo above.





**Step 3:** Carefully remove the Monkey Fist from your fingers, and position it so you can see the two spaces.

Bring the working end into the **left** space, across the wraps you made in step 2, and down through the **right** space.

**You can see this better in the next photo.**



**Step 4:** Wrap three times, making sure the working end is on the right when you are through. The tail should be on the left.



**Step 5:** Tightening the Monkey Fist is the most challenging step. **Start at the tail, and tighten each wrap in the order they were made.**

The three sets of loops are labeled 1 - 3 in this image. The last thing you do is pull on the working end (4). **Here are some tips:**

**Tip 1:** Locate each loop by pulling **gently** on the one before it. You will be able to tell that it's the one to pull next by the fact that it moves slightly.

**Tip 2:** Once you know you have the right segment, pull it **firmly** to tighten the loop **before** it. It's really hard to go back a second time to remove slack from loops not tightened enough.

**Tip 3:** As you pull each segment, you should **flip** the knot front to back or from side to side. This way you are pulling only **one half** of each loop at a time. It takes longer, but it's not as confusing.

**Tip 4:** Gradually push the Monkey Fist into a round shape, particularly when tightening the loops in areas 2 and 3.

**Tip 5:** If you wish, you can tie an Overhand knot in the **tail**, and push it inside the knot before tightening the loops in area 3.

## Lanyard Knots





**Description:** Lanyard Knots are frequently found in Macrame patterns, especially in plant hangers and holiday projects. They're considered vintage knots, since they were very popular in the early 1900's.

These decorative knots are sometimes referred to as **Crown Knots**. They make beautiful woven patterns, and are fairly easy to tie.

Kids will often learn this knot in youth activities, because they can be used to make bracelets and belts.

Try making a chain of these decorative knots to use as a purse handle, or to make a collar for your pet.

Here are some patterns that feature this interesting knotting technique:

- [Candy Cane Decoration](#)
- [Round Bracelet](#)
- [Holiday Candle](#)

**Variations:** The Single Knot, Multiple Strands, Spiral Design, Striped Variation, and the Star Pattern are all described below.



## Single Knot

**Step 1:** To practice a single Lanyard Knot, you need two cords at least 24 inches long. Lay the cords on your board and cross them to form an X shape. Match the centers and secure the cords.

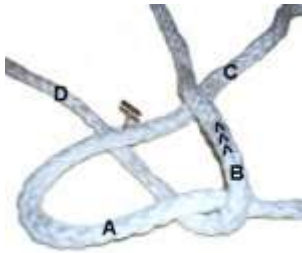


Move segment A to the **right**, so it rests **on top** of segment B.

Makes sure there is room for a cord to pass through the curved area.

**Design Tip:** Macrame patterns often require you to form Lanyard knots from cords that have already been in use. In that case, you would not cross the cords

before folding them. But the remaining steps are the same.



**Step 2:** Move segment B **upward**, to rest on top of segment C.



**Step 3:** Move segment C to the **left**, and position it so it rests on top of segment D.



**Step 4:** Move segment D **downward** to the curved area of segment A.

Pass through the area, **over - under** the two parts of the curve, as shown.

Pull on each end gradually to tighten the knot.



## Multiple Cords

The process for tying Lanyard knots using multiple cords (more than 2) is the same as for the single knot.



There is one change you need to make: It's important to **fold** the cords rather than curve them, particularly segments B - D.

The cords need to be neatly arranged, and folding them really helps. You may still need to shift their positions as you tighten the knots, so the cords don't overlap.



## Spiral Design

To make a spiral design using Lanyard knots, tie at least 5 knots. Be sure to tie each knot moving the **same direction** (counter-clockwise), as described in the instructions for the single knot.



The knots will **stack** on top of one another.

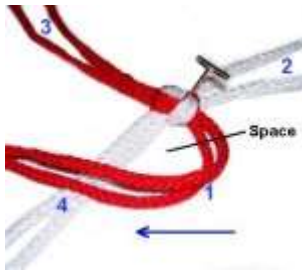
After you tie the first two knots, move the pin and secure the design on an angle, near the bottom.



## Striped Variation

You can make a striped variation using two colors. This [Candy Cane](#) shows how

the colors are separated. One color is on the front and back, and the second color is on each side.



To make a striped design, all you need to do is **alternate** the direction you tie the Lanyard knots.

So **every other knot** is tied in a **clockwise** direction.

**Be sure to keep track of the direction**, or the pattern will not work out.



## Star Pattern

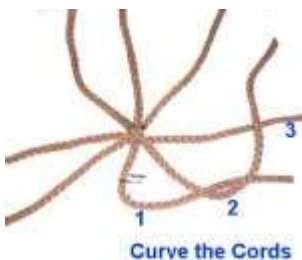
Lanyard Knots can be made with multiple cords arranged in a star pattern. The design forms a soft frame, so it can be used to encircle items like flat coins or beads.

You need 4 cords to practice. Match the centers and secure them to your project board.



Position one cord so it's vertical, another one horizontal, and two diagonal, as shown.

Mentally number the 8 segments.



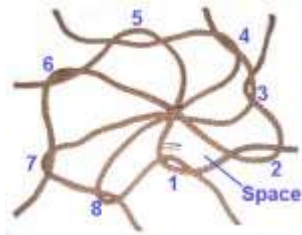
Move each segment so it rests on top of the next one in line.

It's best to **curve** the cords rather than fold them.

Mark the space at the bend in segment 1 with a pin.

**Design Tip:** Securing each end after it is used will help ensure you don't use the

same cord twice.



When you get to segment 8, pass it through the space near the bend in segment 1, where the pin is located.

It should go through the space **over - under**.

## Angel Wings



**Description:** Creating Angel Wings just got easier. These unique wings are a series of bights woven through the center of one another. They are easy to make and can be attached to any Macrame Angels you plan to make.

This weaving technique can be used to make similar shapes, such as hearts and leaves.

By adding more weaving (prior to step 5), these wings can be made wider, changing the shape. Make sure you cut the cord longer if you change the size.

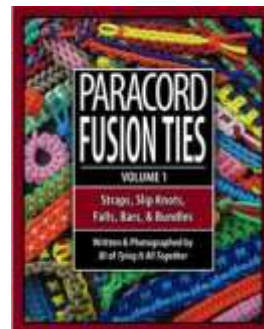
In the example, I use golden Parachute cord. But this design looks great in white and with other types of materials.

**Important:** When using Paracord, heat and melt the ends before you get started, so the inner core cannot slip out. Do this during the finishing steps as well.

I found this design on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for other interesting knots.

**Designs by JD Lenzen**

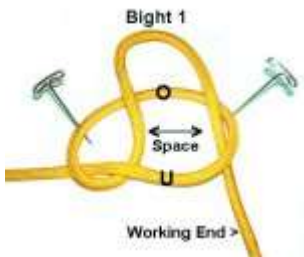


**Step 1:** Find the center of a 2-yard cord. Make a loop just to the **right** of the center, crossing the left end over the right.



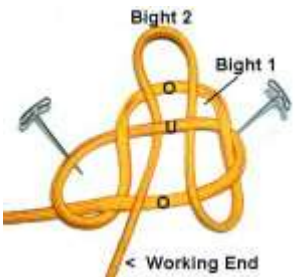
Turn the loop **sideways**, so it's arranged like a "P". Make sure the right portion of the cord is horizontal, heading left. It will be used to make the **left** wing.

The left portion is the working end for the right wing, which you will make first.



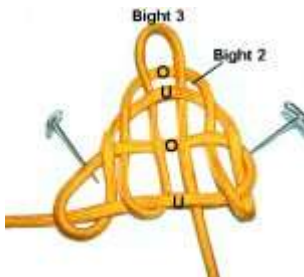
Form a bight by folding the working end, and push it through the loop from below (**under - over**).

Push the right and left sides of the bight apart, so there is **space** through the middle of it.



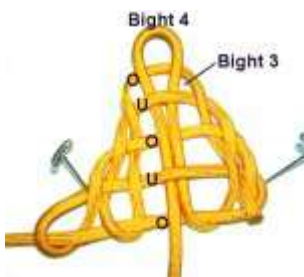
**Step 2:** Make another bight with the working end. Weave it **over - under - over** the three segments, as you bring it through the center of the first bight.

Push the right and left sides of the bight apart, so there is enough space for the next bight.



**Step 3:** Make a third bight, and weave it through **under - over - under - over**.

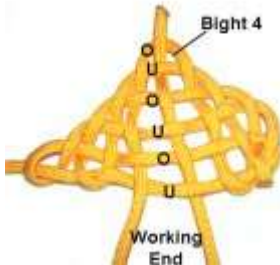
Push the woven areas apart as much as you can, since you have one more bight to weave.



**Step 4:** Make the fourth bight, and weave it through **over - under - over - under - over**.

**Design Tip:** This is where you can change the size of the wings if you wish. Just weave more bights through in the same manner. **Make sure the over - under sequence changes each time.**

Keep in mind you need to have enough material left for the final step below.



**Step 5:** This time, weave the **end** through the center.

Weave **under - over - under - over - under - over** the six segments.



**Step 6:** These Angel wings look better if they are well tightened.

Remove the slack one segment at a time, in the order you created the bights. The final step is to pull on the working end.

**Step 7:** The second half of these Angel Wings is a **mirror image** of the steps you just completed.

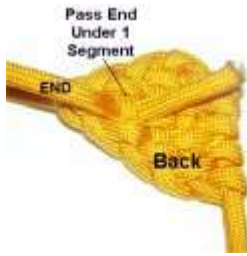
The weaving is the same, but the design will look different than the images above. Make sure the first wing is on the right, positioned as shown below.



Make a **clockwise** loop. Form the first bight, and pass it through from below (**under - over**).

- **Bight 2:** Weave **over - under - over**
- **Bight 3:** Weave **under - over - under - over**
- **Bight 4:** Weave **over - under - over - under - over**
- **Last Step:** Weave the **end under - over - under - over - under - over**





To finish off the end of the cord, direct it to the **back** of the wing. Pass the end under one segment, and apply glue to hold it in place. Cut off the excess.

Repeat this process with the second wing.



Fold the Angel wings so they face opposite directions. The segment between the two wings is used to attach them to your angel.

## Interlocking Weave



**Description:** The Interlocking Weave is not truly a knot. It's a type of weaving that is often used to make baskets.

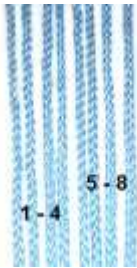
It's similar to the Tabby Weave, where you use one working cord for the entire weaving process. In this design, there are two working cords, and they **link** in the center of the design.

This vintage technique can be used in Macrame, to make items such as belts, pot holders and place mats. By changing the number and length of the **vertical holding cords**, you can make the weave any size.

To practice the Interlocking Weave, cut 8 holding cords, at least 12 inches long. These are the blue cords in the images.

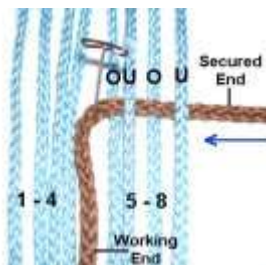
You need two working cords, at least 36 inches long. These are the tan and brown cords in the images.

It's a good idea to use different colors while you are learning this technique. **Make sure you use a project board.**



**Step 1:** Secure **both ends** of the 12-inch cords, so they are vertical. They need to have tension.

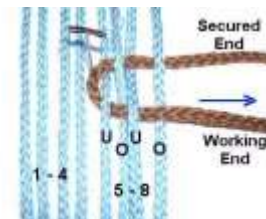
Mentally number them 1 - 4 and 5 - 8 as shown. Each working cord will weave through **only four cords**, so it's best to think of them as two separate groups.



**Step 2:** Secure the end of one working cord to the **right** of the holding cords.

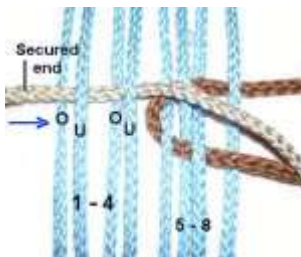
You'll be moving horizontally **from right to left**.

Weave **under - over - under - over** cords 8 - 5.



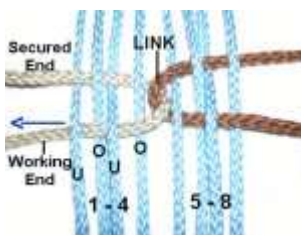
**Step 3:** **Fold** the working cord and weave it back through cords 5 - 8, heading **left to right**.

Weave **under - over - under - over**.



**Step 4:** Secure the the second working cord to the **left** of the holding cords.

Weave the working cord **over - under - over - under** cords 1 - 4, moving **left to right**.



**Step 5:** Link the two working cords by passing the left cord through the folded area of the right, from **below**.

Weave it back to the left, **over - under - over - under**.



**Step 6:** Repeat steps 2 through 5, using the **same** working cords to complete the rest of the Interlocking Weave design.

Tighten the design gradually, by pulling on each cord, pushing them close together.

# Clew Knot



**Description:** The Clew Knot is an interesting decoration that is sometimes seen in manufactured hammocks and similar Macrame projects.

It's a type of weaving where the ends are gathered together to form a V shaped design.

First they are attached to a ring, and then to a dowel, where they spread out again.

New for 2014: I've recently added instructions for making it in reverse, which is sometimes necessary. I've also given you tips for making hammocks that include this decorative knot.

In the images shown below, I left **space** between the rows of weaving, so you could make out the design more easily.

The Clew knot is supposed to be firm and compact, so tighten it completely, as in the image above.

**I recommend the first time you practice, you attach the cords to a **dowel**, so you can spread them out more easily.**

**Step 1:** To practice, fold **six** 36-inch cords in half and mount them to a dowel or ring with [Larks Head knots](#). Secure the ring to your board.

Mentally number the ends 1 thru 12, moving left to right.

When you are finished weaving in each row, secure the cord off to the side, since each cord is used **only once**.

This chart provides a general overview of the weaving process for the Clew Knot.

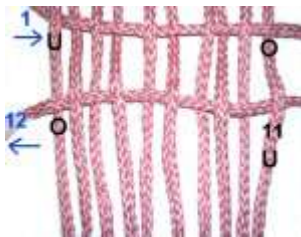
<b>Working Cord</b>	<b>Direction</b>	<b>OVER</b>	<b>UNDER</b>
1	Left to Right	3, 5, 7, 9, 11	2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12
12	Right to Left	10, 8, 6, 4, 2	11, 9, 7, 5, 3
2	Left to Right	3, 5, 7, 9, 11	4, 6, 8, 10
11	Right to Left	10, 8, 6, 4	9, 7, 5, 3
3	Left to Right	5, 7, 9	4, 6, 8, 10
10	Right to Left	8, 6, 4	9, 7, 5
4	Left to Right	5, 7, 9	6, 8

9	Right to Left	8, 6	7, 5
5	Left to Right	7	6, 8
8	Right to Left	6	7
6 & 7	NO WEAVING		



**Step 2:** Start with the first cord on the left (1). Weave the cord by **alternating** under and over, as you move it **left to right**.

Make sure you start the weaving by passing **under** cord 2.



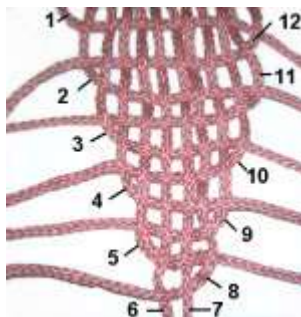
**Step 3:** Cord 12 is next, heading **right to left**. Be sure to pass **under** Cord 11 as you begin to weave.

The over - under sequence has changed, so it's now the opposite of the previous row.



**Step 4:** Weave cord 2 next, passing it **over** cord 3 as you move it **left to right**.

When you moved cord 12, it was passed **under** cord 3. For this row, it's the opposite.



Changing the over - under pattern is an important part of the Clew Knot process.

Always make sure the weaving pattern you are creating with the working cord, is **opposite** of the previous row.

Use this photo and the chart above, to continue the weaving.

**Step 5:** Since this knot is used in the construction of hammocks, the pattern may require you to attach the cords to dowels. That process begins **after the knot is completely finished**.

The last two ends (6 and 7), don't need to be woven, so bring them straight down when you are ready to attach them to the dowel. Tighten the Clew Knot, by pulling on each end firmly, removing the slack.

Cords 6 and 7 are attached at the **center** of the dowel. Next, you attach cords 8

and 5, followed by 9 and 4. Attach cord 10 and 3, followed by 11 and 2. The last two cords attached, near the **right and left ends** of the dowel, will be 12 and 1.



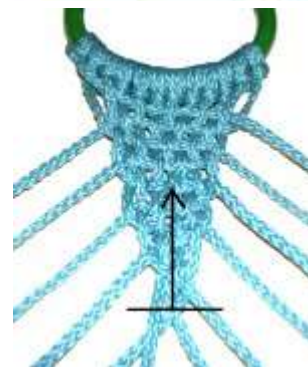
This is an image of the Clew knot in a Hammock design.

Notice how it's small and compact, and how the ends spread out from it, to cover the dowel.

## Reverse Clew Knot

Most hammock patterns are made by creating both Clew knots first, and then the woven portion.

In some cases, you may need to work from one end to the other. This next set of instructions show you how to make it from the bottom up.

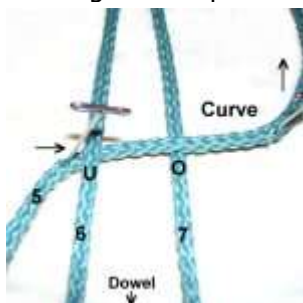


**Step 1:** Secure the dowel to your work surface or project board. The cords should already be attached to it, unless you are just practicing. In that case, mount the 6 cords to a dowel to mimic how the design will work in an actual project.

Determine where you want to start the Clew knot, by measuring the one at the opposite end of the hammock design. Measure the distance between the dowel and where the first knot **ended**. That's where this one will begin.

Mentally number the cords 1 - 12, moving left to right. You can place small pieces of tape on the cords, with the numbers on them, if you wish.

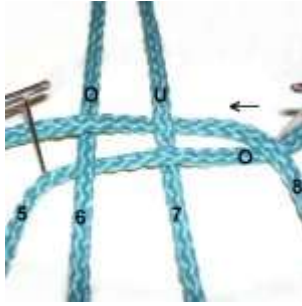
Secure cords 6 and 7 so they are heading vertically, straight up towards where the ring will be placed.



Move cord 5, **under - over** cords 6 and 7, heading **left to right**. The cord should be **horizontal**.

Secure it on the **right**, and then curve it so it's **vertical**.





**Step 2:** Weave cord 8 from **right to left**, passing **over** the portion of cord 5 on the **right**, near where it curves upward.

Pass it **under - over** cords 7 and 6.

Secure it on the **left**, and curve it upward vertically. You can see this better in the next photo.



**Step 3:** Weave cord 4 from **left to right**, passing over the portion of cord 8 where it curves on the **left**.

Bring it **under 6, over 7, and under 5**.

Secure it on the **right**, and curve it upward to rest beside the others.

Do you understand the process for the reverse Clew Knot? You move each cord on the dowel towards the Clew knot, on either the right or left (alternating). Progress from the center of the dowel, towards the ends.

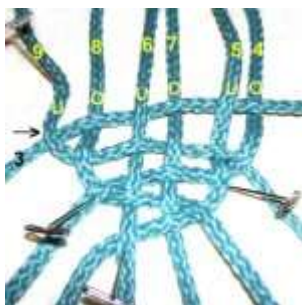
As you begin the weaving, the first step is to move it either over or under the cord previously used, **near the place where it curves upward**. Make sure the weaving is the opposite of the previous row.

After each row of weaving, remember to curve the cord upward, so it's vertical.



**Step 4:** Weave cord 9 **right to left**, starting by passing it **under** the portion of cord 4 on the **right**.

Bring it over 5, under 7, over 6, and under 8. Secure it and curve it upward.



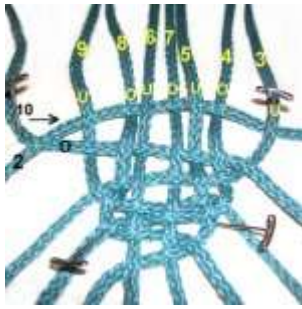
**Step 5:** Weave cord 3 from **left to right**. Pass it **under** the portion of cord 9 on the **left**.

Move it **over - under** the remaining cords, alternating as shown. Secure it on the right and curve it upward.



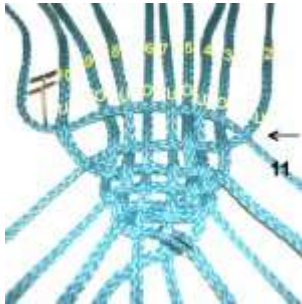
**Step 6:** Cord 10 is next, moving **right to left**. Pass it **over** the portion of cord 3 on the **right**, near where it curves.

Alternate **under - over** the remaining cords. Secure it on the left.



**Step 7:** Cord 2 is next, so weave it **left to right**.

Begin by passing it **over** cord 10 on the **left**, and then alternate **under - over** the remaining cords.

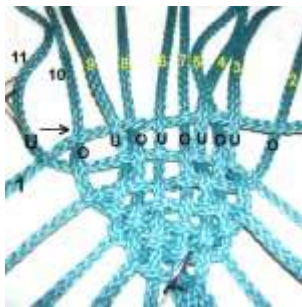


**Step 8:** Weave cord 11 from **right to left**. Start by passing **under** cord 2 on the right.

Weave over - under the remaining cords.

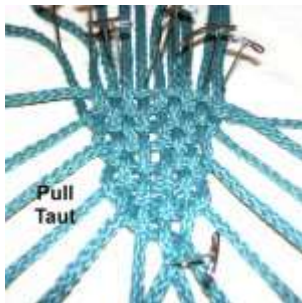
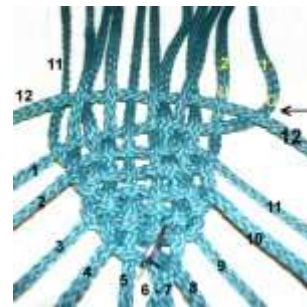
Before moving on to the final steps, **slide the cords closer together inside the Clew Knot**. Pulling upward on the vertical portions will help, too.

### Steps 9 - 10



<< Weave cord 1 **left to right**. Pass **under** cord 11 first, and then over - under the remaining cords.

Weave cord 12 **right to left**. Pass **over** cord 1, and under - over the remaining cords. >>



**Step 11:** Tighten and adjust the Clew Knot by pulling each cord taut. After you do so, secure it at the top.

The next step is to attach the cords to a ring. You need to check the other side of the hammock and determine which knot you used to attach the cords to the other ring.

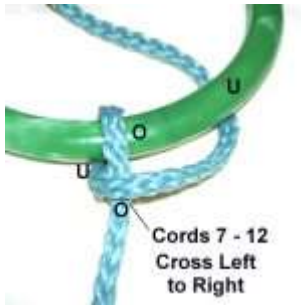
For cords mounted with reverse Larks Head knots, or Double Half Hitches, you should attach each cord to the ring with a **Double Half Hitch**. This is the best knot to use, so the two ends match.

**Attach the cords from the center working outward to the right and left.**

For cords mounted with a normal Larks Head knot, with the heads face up, use the instructions below. Make sure each cord is pulled taut and that the ring is **against the top row** of the Clew knot. In the images shown, I left some space so you could see the details better.

**For Cords 7 - 12**

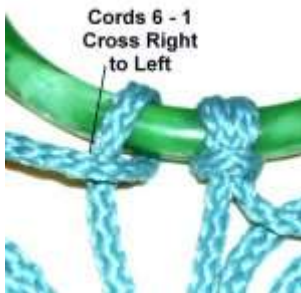




<< Pass the cord over-under the ring, and then cross over from **left to right**. Bring it under the ring to the right of where you started.



Bring the end over the ring, and under the horizontal portion. >>



**For cords 6 - 1** the knot is tied so the end crosses over in front, **right to left**.

## Masthead Mat Technique



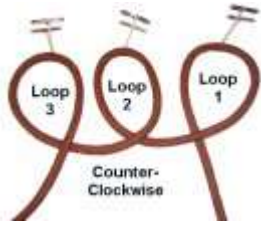
**Description:** The Masthead Mat Technique is a type of circular weaving. It has features similar to the [Pitcher knot](#), as well as the [Maedate knot](#).

This unique decorative knot can be used to make flat items like coasters, pendants, and small rugs.

You can keep it small by using only one cord. To make it larger, simply add one or more cords, following the path of the first one.

**Step 1:** You need one cord, at least 36 inches long to practice.

In the images, I used Paracord. If you decide to use that material, make sure you heat the ends to prevent the inner core from sliding out.



Secure one end of the cord to your board, to your **right**. Make three **counter-clockwise** loops, starting approximately 12 inches from the secured end.

Move from right to left as you create the loops, and mentally number them as shown.

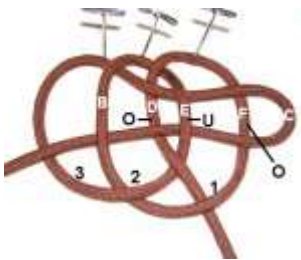


**Step 2:** Move Loop 2 to the **left**, positioning it partly **over** Loop 3. Do the same with loop 1, positioning it over loop 2.

Mentally label the 6 segments A - F, moving left to right. Secure the loops at the crook (top).

Locate segments C and D, which lead to the ends.

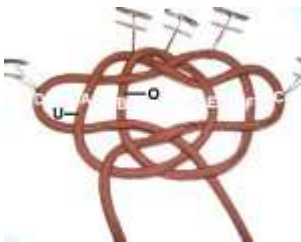
Those are the only segments that will be moved, in the next two steps.



**Step 3:** Form a bight with **segment C**. Move it to the **right**, weaving as follows:

- **Over** segment D
- **Under** segment E
- **Over** segment F.

Secure the bight to the right of the loops.



**Step 4:** Form a bight with **segment D**. Move it to the **left**, weaving as follows:

- **Over** segment B
- **Under** segment A

Secure the bight to the left of the loops.



**Step 5:** Locate the **end** on the right, which leads to segment D.

Move **right to left**, weaving as follows:

- **over - under - over - under - over - under**



To complete the Masthead Mat technique, turn the design so the ends are at the **bottom**.

Gradually remove the slack from each area, until it's the size you want.



To make the design larger, tighten and balance the knot slightly, leaving enough space for a second cord.

Starting at one end, use the second cord to **follow the path** of the first one. This will fill in the knot. Tighten it again after the second cord (or more) is added.

## Ashoka Chakra



**Description:** The Ashoka Chakra design features the [Slipknot](#). It is similar to the [Barnacle Knot](#), described on a separate page.

There is a loop at the top of this knot design, so it is great for making earrings, pendants, and frames for stones or focal beads.

**History:** The Dharmachakra is one of the most well known ancient symbols, shown as a wheel with spokes.

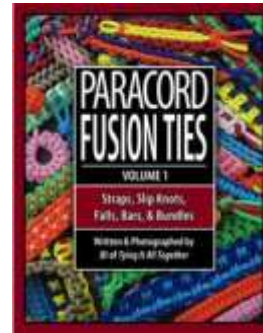
This icon has been traced back to the time of the Buddhist king **Ashoka**.

It is known globally as a symbol for the Buddhist faith, and is sometimes called the "Wheel of Life".

I found this design on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view [video tutorials](#) for other interesting knots.

### Designs by JD Lenzen



**Step 1:** To make this knot **earring size** (1-inch), cut one cord, at least 36 inches long (2mm material is best).

To make a **pendant** (2 inches), cut one 72-inch cord (2mm to 4mm material)

For other sizes, you need at least 30 inches of material for every inch in size.



Secure one end of the cord to your board. Move down 4 inches, and make a **counter-clockwise** loop.

Make sure the working end passes **under** the secured end (tail) to form the crossing point.



**Step 2:** Make a **bight** with the working end.

Push it through the loop, from the **top**, which is **over - under**.

Tighten the Slipknot by pulling on the **bight**.

**Important:** When constructing each Slipknot, I refer to the folded portion as a **bight**. In a few of the steps below, the bight is referred to as a **loop**.



This is a closer view of all the Slipknots you will make, showing the back and front.

**Make sure the front is facing up at all times.**





Secure the **knot** to your board (not the loop), so the working end is at the bottom.

The length of the first Slipknot determines the finished size of the Ashoka Chakra.

(see below)

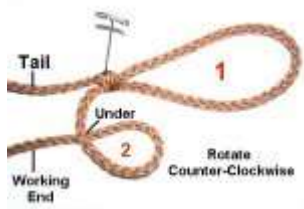
Here's how to determine the size of the first loop:

**Multiply the finished size you need by 2.**

- 2-inch Loop = 1-inch Earring Size design
- 4-inch Loop = 2-inch Pendant size

**Add at least 1/2-inch** for the loop at the top.

**Step 3:** Adjust the size of the loop by pulling on the working end.



**Step 4:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the working end to make a second Slipknot.

Pass the end **under** to make the crossing point.



**Step 5:** Make a bight with the working end, passing it into the loop from **the top**.

Keep the working end at the bottom as you tighten the knot by pulling on the **bight**.

This Slipknot should rest **1/4-inch below** the first knot.



**Design Tip**

By adding 1/2 to 1 inch of space between the knots, you can form picot loops.





**Step 6:** Direct the first Slipknot (long) through the second one from the **top (over - under)**.

Tighten the second knot by pulling on the end.



**Step 7:** Make the next Slipknot, just as you did in steps 4 - 5.

Direct the first knot through the new one, as you did in step 6.



**Step 8:** When you have tied enough knots to cover most of Loop 1, turn the Ashoka Chakra design so the **4-inch tail** is at the top.

Tie the last Slipknot with the working end, around Loop 1, as you normally would.

**But don't tighten it yet.**



**Step 9:** Pass the short tail through **both** loops, to create a circle.

Pull on the working end to tighten the last Slipknot.



The remaining portion of Loop 1 is used to hang the Ashoka Chakra from a necklace, or to attach it to earring hooks.

Apply glue to the last Slipknot and direct the ends through spaces in the **back**, to secure them.

# Barnacle Knot



**Description:** The Barnacle Knot is a great way to make ring-shaped designs for Macrame projects.

This circular knot can be used for jewelry designs, especially pendants and earrings. You can also use it to replace metal rings at the top of plant hangers. To use it as a holiday ornament, make it large and suspend bells or other decorations inside the loop.

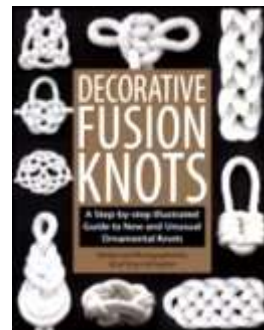
This decorative knot features a series of [Larks Head knots](#), tied onto a [Slipknot](#).

A similar knot design you should view is the [Ashoka Chakra](#).

A video tutorial of this beautiful decorative knot can be found on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

## Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the image or link to visit his website, and to view the knot gallery.



**Step 1:** To make this knot **earring size** (1-inch), cut one cord, at least 36 inches long (2mm material is best).

To make a **pendant** (2 inches), cut one 72-inch cord (2mm to 4mm material)

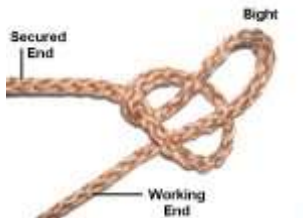
For other sizes, you need at least 30 inches of material for every inch in size.



Secure one end to your board (tail).

Move down at least 3 inches, and make a **counter-clockwise** loop. The working cord should pass **over** the secured end to make the crossing point.





**Step 2:** Make a bight with the working end and push it through the first loop from **below**.

This creates a Slipknot. Pull on the **bight** to tighten the knot.



**The bight is now referred to as a loop.**

The size of the loop determines the **finished size** of the Barnacle knot, so it needs to be adjusted:

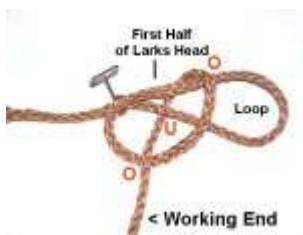
Here's how to determine the size of the first loop:

**Multiply the finished size you need by 2.**

- 2-inch Loop = 1-inch Earring Size design
- 4-inch Loop = 2-inch Pendant Size design

**Add at least 1/2-inch** for the loop at the top.

**Step 3:** Adjust the size of the loop by pulling on the working end.



**Step 4:** Bring the working cord **over** the loop, and then **under** it. As you pull it down, pass **over** the portion of the working end directly below.

This creates the **first half** of the Larks Head knot.

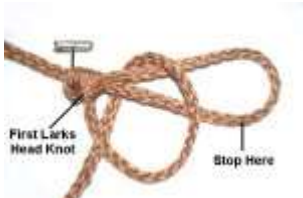


**Step 5:** To make the second half, pass the working cord **under** the loop first, and then **over** the front of it. As you pull it down, pass **under** the working end.

**Both steps equal one Larks Head Knot.**



**Design Tip:** If you wish, you can make Half Hitches instead of Larks Head knots, to change the design. Just repeat step 4 over and over.

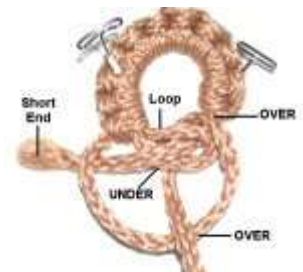


**Step 6:** Repeat steps 4 and 5 several times, until the last knot is **1-inch** from the end of the loop.



**Step 7:** Pass the **3-inch secured end** through the remaining portion of the loop.

Turn the Barnacle knot so the loop and ends are at the bottom, like the image below.



**Step 8:** Use the working end to tie the **first half** of the Larks head **around the loop as well as the short end.** (see step 4)

Make sure you pull this knot as tight as you can.



**Step 9:** Tie the second half of the Larks Head knot, as in step 5. Make sure the loop goes around the loop as well as the short end.

Pull on the **short tail** to close the circle, and then tighten the Larks Head knot as much as possible.



**Step 10:** Straighten the loop at the top of the Barnacle knot.

Finish off the ends by directing them through spaces in the **back** of the knot. Apply glue to hold them in place.

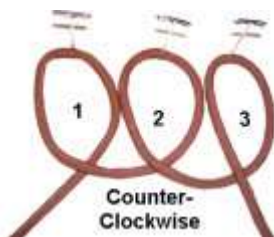
## Pitcher Knot



**Description:** The Pitcher Knot is an interesting historical knot that is not very well known. It is sometimes referred to as the **Jury Mast Knot**, as well as the **Bottle Sling**. The name comes from the fact it was used to make handles for earthen pitchers and bottles.

As a decorative knot, you could use it to make a pendant, or as part of a Macrame plant hanger. Try using it as it was intended; to hang glass bottles as wall or kitchen decorations.

The [Masthead Mat Technique](#) and the [Maedate knot](#) are very similar, so you may want to practice them, too.



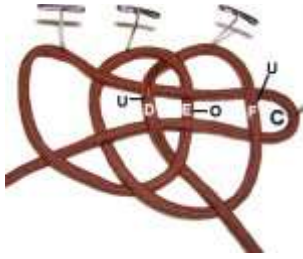
**Step 1:** Cut one cord, at least 30 inches long. Secure one end to your left.

Make 3 **counter-clockwise** loops, moving from left to right. The crossing points should be at the bottom.



**Step 2:** Move loop 2 to the left, so it rests partially **under** loop 1. Do the same with loop 3, positioning it under loop 2.

Mentally label the six segments A - F as shown.



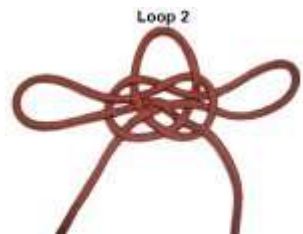
**Step 3:** Segments C and D lead to the ends, and are the only two portions that will be moved in the next two steps.

Form a **bight** with segment C. Move it to the right, **under** segment D, **over** segment E, and **under** segment F.



**Step 4:** Make a bight with segment D.

Pass it **under** segment B and **over** segment A, as you move it to the left.



**Step 5:** Pull Loop 2 upward, and pull bights C and D sideways, to tighten the center. To reduce the size of the bights, pull on the ends.

When using the Pitcher knot to hold a bottle, place the neck of it through the middle of the knot, and then tighten the knot firmly.

## Trilobite Knot



<< Trilobite Knot

Trilobite Fossil >>



**Description:** The Trilobite Knot is a very unique decoration you can use for key chains, necklaces, and many other Macrame projects.

This knot has the three ribbed lobes typical of Trilobite fossils. There is a loop at the top, which can be used to hang the design.

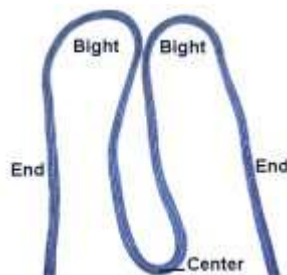
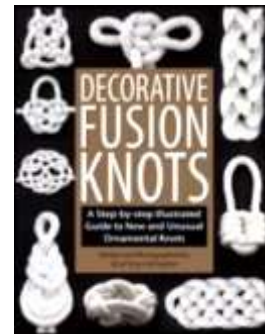
Children will love this interesting decorative knot, since it is easy to make, and will definitely attract attention.

**History:** A Trilobite is a fossil of an **extinct** marine arthropod. Back when they were still in existence, some were scavengers and hunters, while others fed on

plankton. These fossils have been found in every ocean and continent, so are well known.

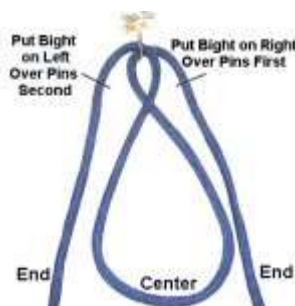
I found this great knot in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#) written by **J. D. Lenzen**.

Be sure to visit his website, by clicking on the link or image. His knot gallery contains [video tutorials](#) for a variety of unique decorative knots and designs.



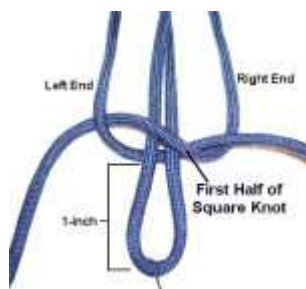
**Step 1:** Secure the center of a **60-inch** cord to your board. Make two bights, and position them above the center, as in this image.

The distance between the center and the top of the bights is what determines the size of the Trilobite knot.



**Step 2:** Place two pins on your project board, near the bights. Move the bight on the **right** over the pins. Then put the **left** bight over them.

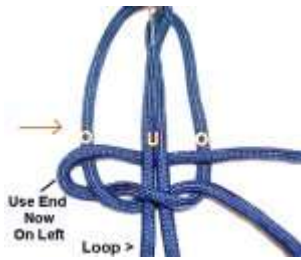
The ends should still rest on either side of the long loop in the center.



**Step 3:** Curve the **right** end **over** the central loop, and **under** the left end.

Pass the **left** end **under** the loop, and **over** the right end, as you pull it to the right.

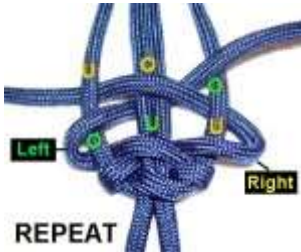
When tightening, make sure it rests 1-inch above the folded area at the center.



**Step 4:** Weave the end now on the **left** through the three vertical segments, **over - under - over**(left to right).



**Step 5:** Weave the end now on the **right** through the three segments, **under - over - under** (right to left).



**Step 6:** Repeat steps 4 and 5 several times to form the rest of the Trilobite knot.

The weaving pattern is shown in this image as yellow (right) and green (left).



**Step 7:** The last two rows should be **tighter** than the others, so the design is curved.

Remove the pins.

Pull on the loop at the **bottom**, so that the bights at the top begin to move inside the knot. **Apply glue** and then pull the loop firmly to tighten the design all the way.

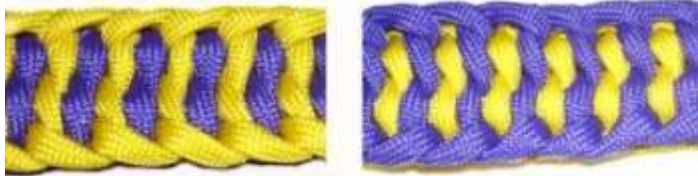


**Step 8:** Turn the knot around so the loop is at the top.

Trim the ends close to the bottom of the knot and use more glue if necessary. When using Paracord, melt the ends with heat.



# Feather Bar



FRONT

BACK

**Description:** The Feather Bar is a unique decorative knot that's suitable for a variety of Macrame projects.

Paracord bracelets and belts can be constructed with this reversible design, along with pet leads, plant hangers, and more.

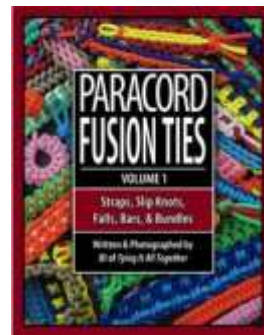
This design came from the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

**Designs by JD Lenzen**

Click on the image or link to view his knot gallery, and see video tutorials for a variety of interesting knots.

You can find this design under the name:

**Back to Back Feather Bar**

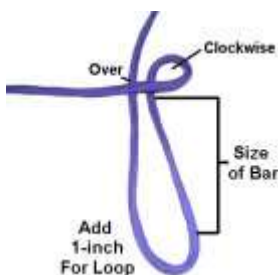


## Preparation

To practice this decorative knot, cut one cord of each color, 2 yards long. Prepare the ends to prevent unraveling. For Paracord, heat and melt the tips.

The steps below show you how to make the Feather Bar around a loop, which is the best method if you want a **clasp**.

When practicing, the clasp is **optional**. You can simply secure the two cords on your board with pins, or attach them to a holding cord temporarily.



Fold one cord in half, creating a long bight. The knots will be tied around this bight, so make it's the size you want the Feather Bar to be when it's finished. Add 1 inch if you want a loop.

Use the **right** half of the cord to make a **clockwise** loop, passing **over** the left half.





Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the **left** half of the cord.

Bring it **over** the right half, **under** the bight in the center, and through the right loop (**under - over**).

Tighten the two loops slightly by pulling on the ends.



Add the second cord, passing the ends through the two loops of the first. Pull the ends of the first cord to tighten the loops firmly.

When making a clasp, the button, bead, or button knot would be attached to the center of the second cord.



## Feather Bar Process

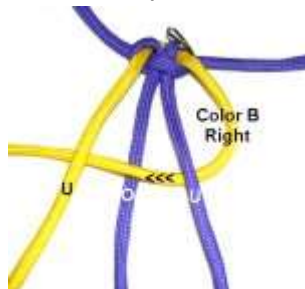
For the following instructions, color A is purple, and color B is yellow. Each cord has a right and left end, which are used to tie the knots (working ends).

The bight acts as a holding cord, with two portions (right and left).

The key to successfully creating this design is to use the **ends of one color at a time**.

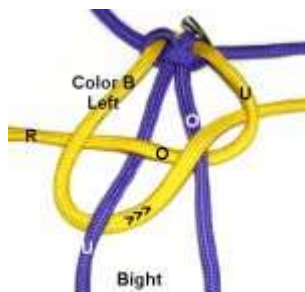
Pay close attention to the position of the two cords before you tie each knot.

The ends will **switch places**, so use the ends **where they lie** at the beginning of each step.



**Step 1:** Move the **right end of color B** to the left, passing **under - over** the bight.

Bring it **under** the **left** end of color B.



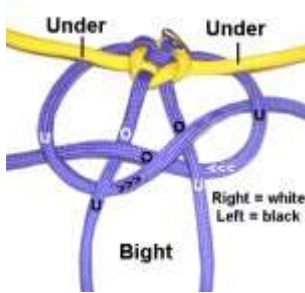
**Step 2:** Move the **left end of color B** **under** the left half of the bight.

Pass it **over** the **right** end of color B, and the **right** half of the bight, on a diagonal slant.

Bring the end **under** the **right** portion of color B further up.

The entire Feather Bar is made following steps 1 and 2. You will simply alternate the colors and starting positions of the cords.

Below are some tips and important points to follow as you continue:



**Important:** Move the ends of Color A under those of the Color B cord.

Do this before you tie any of the knots using **color A**.

After the ends are positioned, use them to tie the next knot (steps 1 and 2). In this image, the path of the **right end** is labeled in **white**. The **left end** is in **black**.



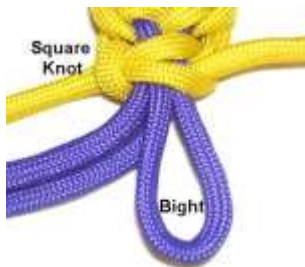
**Important:** Move the ends of Color B over those of the Color A cord.

Do this before you tie any of the knots using **color B**.



When tightening each knot in the Feather Bar, try to maintain the same width as you progress. The area at the top will be narrower than the rest.

Also, make sure the design remains flat at all times.



Stop when the band is the size you want, or is 1-inch from the end of the bight.

Tie a **Square knot** with two ends (same color), around the bight and the other two ends.

The remaining portion of the bight is then used as part of the clasp.

## Switchback Strap



**Description:** The Switchback Strap is made by weaving the working end of a cord back and forth around a long loop.

It's very easy to tie and is a great knot for kids who are learning the process for

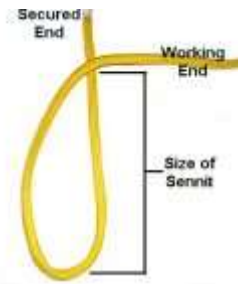
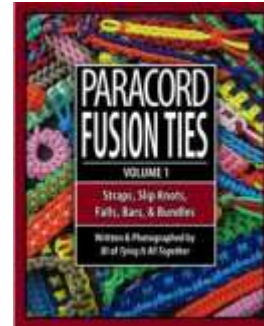
tying decorative knots.

This type of sennit can be used for jewelry projects, belts, straps for purses, leashes and collars, and many other Macrame projects.

I found this design on the [Fusion Knots website](#)

### Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for this and other interesting knotting techniques and designs.



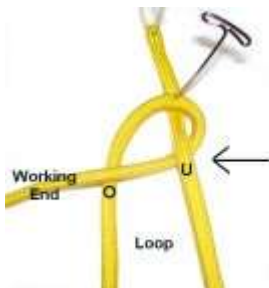
**Step 1:** To practice, cut one cord at least 45 inches long. Secure one end to your board.

Make a loop, in a **clockwise** direction. It should be around 5 inches long if you are just practicing.

The working end should be on the right when you are through.

**Important:** When making something with the Switchback design, the loop should be the size you want the sennit to be when completed.

The length of the cord should be at least **9 times** the length of the item you are making.



**Step 2:** Direct the working end to the **left**, passing **under** the right half of the loop, and **over** the left.



**Step 3:** Direct the working end back to the **right**, passing **under** the left half of the loop and **under** the right.

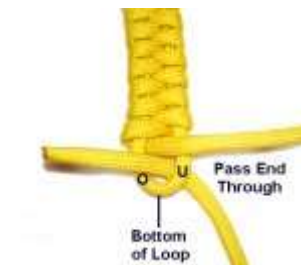


**Step 4:** Repeat steps 1 and 2 as many times as needed to reach the bottom of the loop.



Slide the knots up as you progress, so they are close together.

Tighten the wraps firmly. Keep the cord as flat as you can, without twisting.



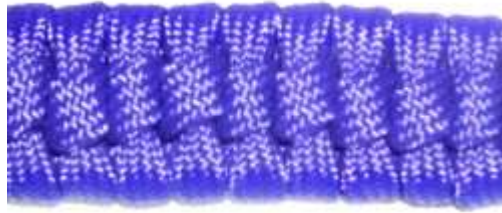
When you reach the bottom, pass the end through the space near the fold of the loop (under - over).

Pull on **both** ends to firm up the knot, so all spaces are eliminated. The ends can be used to make other knots, or to form a clasp.



Here is a closer view of the Switchback Strap weave.

# Stitched Switchback



**Description:** The Stitched Switchback is a variation of the [Switchback Strap](#).

In this decorative knot sennit, there are both horizontal and vertical elements, which makes it a little different from the Switchback Strap.

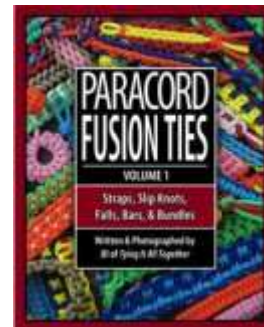
It's very easy to tie, and can be used to create Micro-Macrame bracelets, belts, purse straps, and other Macrame projects where you need a flat chain of knots.

In the example shown, I used Paracord material, which needs to be prepared carefully. The ends need to be **melted** with a flame, so the inner core material does not slip out.

I found this design on the [Fusion Knots website](#)

## Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for other interesting knotting techniques and designs.

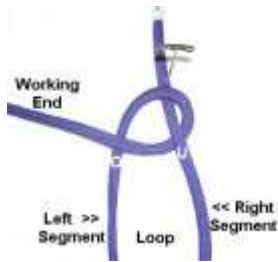


**Step 1:** To practice, you need one cord, at least 60 inches long. Secure one end to your board.

Make a **clockwise** loop, 6 inches long. The working end should be on the **right** when you are finished.

**Important:** When making something with the Stitched Switchback, the size of the loop determines the finished size of the sennit.

The cord needs to be at least **10 times** the length of the item you are making.



**Step 2:** Pass the working end **under** the **right** side of the loop and **over** the left, as you bring it to the **left**.



**Step 3:** Rotate the end **clockwise**, and pass it **under** the **left** side of the loop.

Bring it **under** the segment of the cord resting **inside** the loop.

Pass it **under** the **right** side of the loop. Tighten the knot firmly.



**Step 4:** Move the working end back to the left, passing **over** both parts of the loop.



**Step 5:** Rotate the working end **clockwise**. Bring it **under** the **left** side of the loop, and **over** the portion **inside** the loop.

Bring it straight down, and then pull to tighten.



**Step 6:** Arrange the vertical portion so it's as straight as possible.

**You will now repeat steps 4 - 6, as described below:**

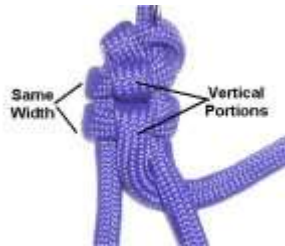




**Step 7:** Pass the end **under** the **right** side of the loop. Bring the end across to the left.

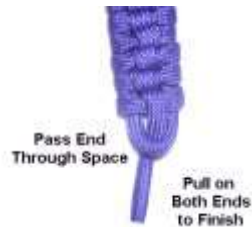
Pass the end **under** the **left** side of the loop, and **over** the portion resting **inside** the loop.

Pull the end straight down to tighten.



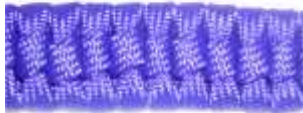
Repeat step 7 over and over, arranging the vertical portions so they are straight.

When you tighten the Stitched Switchback knots, make sure they are the same width.



**Step 8:** When you reach the bottom of the loop (or run out of material), pass the end down and through the space at the fold.

Pull on both ends to tighten the strap.



Here's a closer view of the Stitched Switchback sennit.

## Lizard Tail



**Description:** The Lizard Tail is similar to the [Bugle Braid](#), and is related to the [Zipper Sennit](#) as well.

It's a series of bights passed through one another, alternating between two



colors.

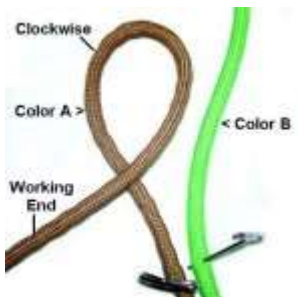
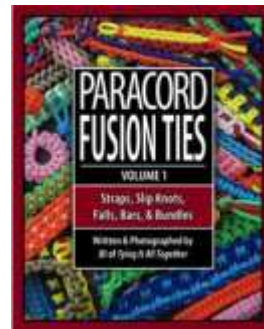
This decorative knot is **not flat** like other bars and braids. It has three surfaces. So you can use this design for items like leashes and straps, or as part of plant hanger designs.

A Macrame wreath can be made with this design, or you can make it small, for a pair of Micro-Macrame earrings. Just tie the knot and form a circle, joining the two ends with additional knots.

This design can be seen on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

### Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for this and other interesting knotting techniques and designs.



**Step 1:** You need two cords, at least 36 inches long, to practice. Arrange them vertically, secured at the **bottom** of your board.

Use the **color A** cord on the **right** (brown), and make a **clockwise** loop as shown.



**Step 2:** Make a **bight** with the **color B** cord (green). Pass it through the loop **over - under**. Pull on the working end of **color A** to tighten the loop around the bight.

Make sure the working end of the **color B** cord is on your right when you finish.



**Step 3:** Make the next bight with the working end of **color A**. Pass it through the first bight, keeping the working end on the right.

**Important:** The working ends of both cords should **always** be on the right as you progress, or the design will not work out.

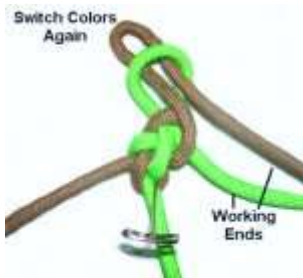


**Step 4:** Pull on the working end of the **color B** cord to tighten the previous bight around the new one.



**Step 5:** Now switch colors again, making a bight with the **color B** cord.

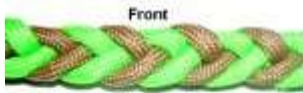
Pass it through, and then pull the working end of the other cord to tighten the previous bight.



**Step 6:** Continue switching back and forth between the two colors, as you repeat step 5 several more times.



**Step 7:** To complete the Lizard Tail sennit, pass one **end** through the last bight, rather than another bight.



Here's a view of the completed sennit, both back and front.



The front is flat, and the back has two surfaces, so it's raised.

## Zipper Sennit



**Description:** The Zipper Sennit is related to the [Chain Sennit](#).

I've also seen it called the **Zippy Chain**. It's made with a series of bights tucked into each other, using both ends.

This chain of knots is suitable for a variety of uses, including jewelry, Macrame belts, and handbag straps.

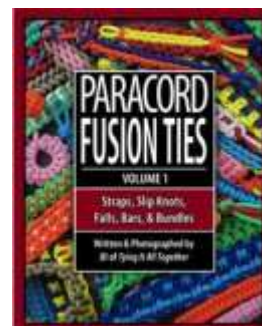
In the images I used Paracord, but this knot design looks great using much finer materials, such as satin, hemp, flax, or flexible leather.

This decorative knot is easy to tie, so can be used for projects involving children and beginners new to Macrame.

This knot is listed on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, **created by JD Lenzen**.

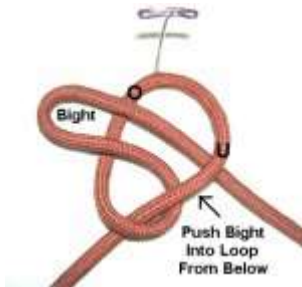
Click on the link or image to visit his knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for other interesting knotting techniques and designs.

Be sure to check out both books!



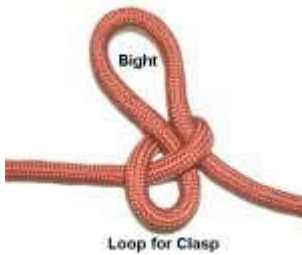


**Step 1:** Make a loop in the center of a 60-inch cord. Make sure the left portion crosses over the right.



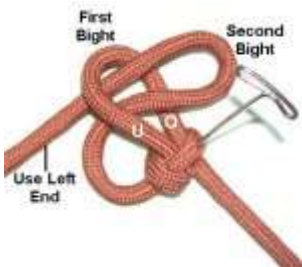
**Step 2:** Fold the end that is now on the right, and form a **bight**.

Push it into the loop **under - over** (from below).



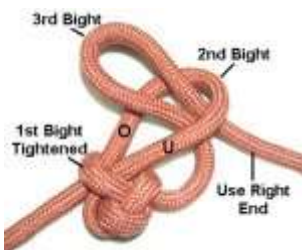
Pull on the **left** end to tighten the first loop around the bight.

You can pull on the lower portion to create a small loop for a clasp (optional).



**Step 3:** Make a new bight with the **left** end, and pass it into the first one **under - over** (from below).

Pull firmly on **right** end to tighten the first bight around the new one. Reduce the size of the new bight by pulling on the **left end**.



**Step 4:** Use the **right** end again, to make the third bight. Pass it into the second one, **under - over**. Pull on the **left** end to tighten the previous bight.

Continue to alternate between the two ends to make the rest of the Zipper Sennit.



**Step 5:** Finish by passing the **end** through the last bight, from below.



This is a closer view of the completed sennit.

## Genoese Zipper



**Description:** The Genoese Zipper is related to both the [Chain Sennit](#) and the [Zipper Sennit](#).

It's a series of **bights** passed into one another. But you will be using two ends, as well as two colors, which makes it a little more complex than the other sennits.

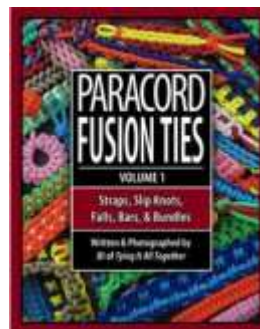
The key to success is to make sure you can easily identify the two ends of both colors. A good practice is to use tape to label either the left or right ends of the two cords.

This decorative knot can be used for Paracord bracelets, purse straps, belts, and in other Macrame projects requiring a wide chain of knots.

This design comes from the [Fusion Knots](#) website

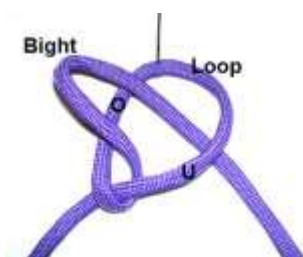
### Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for other interesting knotting techniques and designs.



The Genoese Zipper requires two 60-inch cords, each a different color.

In the images, color A is purple and color B is brown.



**Step 1:** Make a loop in the center of the color A cord, crossing the ends left over right.

Form a bight with the end now on the **right**.

Push it through the loop **under - over** (from below).



As you tighten the loop by pulling on the **bight**, you can leave a small amount loose for a clasp if you need one.



**Step 2:** Fold the second cord in half (color B).

Pass it through the bight made by the first cord, **over - under** (front to back).

Pull on the **right** end of the **color A** cord to tighten the first bight around the new one.



**Step 3:** Fold the **right end of color A** to make the next bight.

Pass it through the folded area of the **color B** cord, **over - under** (front to back).

Pull on **both ends** of **color B** to tighten it around this new bight.

**Design Tip:** From here, you will be alternating between the left and right ends on each side.

You use the left end of each color (steps 4 and 5), and then the right end of each color (steps 6 and 7).

The new bight is always passed through the **front** of the previous one, which is **over - under**.



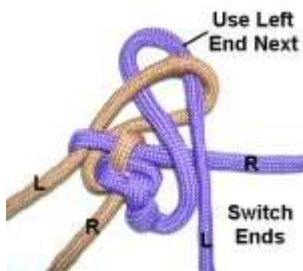
**Step 4:** Fold the **left end of color B** to make the next bight.

Pass it through the bight previously made (color A).

Pull on the **right** end of **color A** to tighten.

Look closely at the images below. The end you are using in each step rests **below** the other end of the same color.

This way when you make the bight, it passes **over** the opposite end.



**Step 5:** Fold the **left end of color A** to make the next bight.

Pass it through the one made in step 4 (color B).

Pull on the **left** end of **color B** to tighten.



**Step 6:** Fold the **right end of color B**, to make the next bight.

Pass it through the one made in step 5 (color A).

Pull on the **left** end of **color A** to tighten.

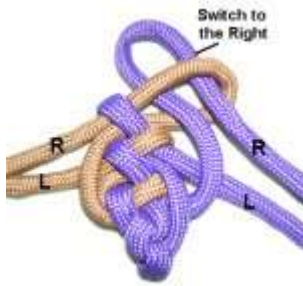
Continue alternating between the two ends on each side, until the Genoese Zipper is the size you need. The next 3 steps are shown below:

**Step 7**

**Step 8**

**Step 9**

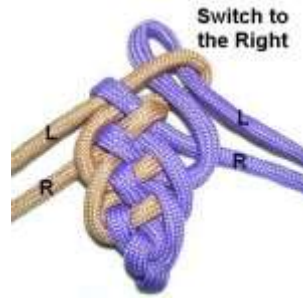




**Color A -- Right**



**Color B -- Left**



**Color A -- Left**



**Step 10:** Instead of making another bight, pass the **end** of one color through the last bight made by the previous color (same pattern).

Pull the end of the **last bight** firmly to tighten.



This is a closer view of the completed Genoese Zipper sennit.

## Double Zipper



**FRONT**

**BACK**

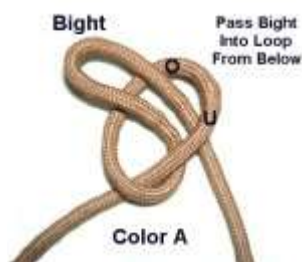
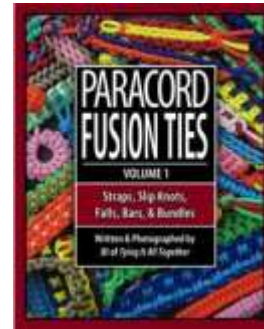
**Description:** The Double Zipper is reversible, with two colors switched front to back. Make sure you know how to tie the regular [Zipper Sennit](#) before you get started.

This decorative knot is a bit wider than the regular Zipper Sennit, and makes a great Paracord bracelet.

You can use it to make jewelry, key chains, belts, and other Macrame projects where you need a flat band of knots.

This design was found on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, under the name **Back to Back Zipper Bar**.

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for this pattern and other interesting knotting techniques and designs.



**Step 1:** You need two 60-inch cords to practice the Double Zipper (two colors).

Make a loop with the first cord, crossing left over right (color A).

Fold the end now on the right to make a bight, and direct it into the loop from below (**under - over**).



Pull on the **left end** to tighten the loop around the bight.

If you need a clasp, pull down on the lower area to leave a small loop. Securing it to your board really helps.



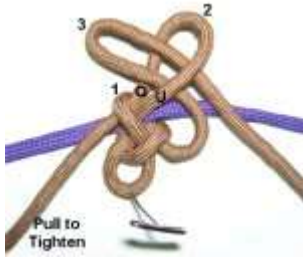
**Step 2:** Pass the second cord (color B) through the bight as shown. It should pass **over** the right area of the bight, and **under** at the left.

Make sure it's horizontal for now, and secure it as needed.



**Step 3:** Form the next bight with the **left end of color A**. Pass it into the previous bight from **below**, which is **under - over**.

Pull on the **right** end of color A to tighten the first bight around the second one. Reduce the size of the new bight by pulling on the end.



**Step 4:** Form the next bight with the **right end of color A**. Pass it through the one from step 3, entering it from **below (under - over)**.

Pull on the **left** end of color A to tighten, and then adjust the size of the new bight.

**Design Tip:** Whenever you are working in the **front** of the Double Zipper, the new bights enter the previous ones from **below (under - over)**.

When you work in the **back**, it's the opposite: The new bights enter the previous ones from the **top (over - under)**.

Each time you switch sides, you make **two bights, one with each end**.

It's important to tighten the one previously made, before you adjust the size of the new one.



**Step 5:** Flip the knot over so you are working in the **back**.

Make the next bight with the **right end of color B**. Pass it through the bight you made in step 4, from the **top (over - under)**.

Tighten the previous bight and adjust the size.



**Step 6:** The next bight is made with the **left end of color B**.

Pass it through the previous bight, over - under.

Tighten the bight made in step 5.



**Step 7:** Flip the design to the front again. The next bight is made with the **left end of color A**.

It's passed through **under - over (from below)**



**Step 8:** Use the **right end of color A** next, passing the bight through **under - over**.

Continue alternating from back to front, until the Double Zipper is the size you need (**steps 5 - 8**).



**Step 9:** The best place to stop is in the **back**.

Pass the **end** of **color B** through the previous bight, from the top (over - under).

Pull **firmly** on the bight to secure the end.



Side View

This is a side view of the completed sennit. Notice that it's thicker than a regular chain of knots, which are usually flat.



This shows the detail for the front of the Double Zipper sennit.

## Bugle Braid



Front



Back

**Description:** The Bugle Braid is a historical knot often used to make straps for musical instruments.

It's also been used in the military, so it's sometimes called the **Military Bugle Cord** or **Bugler's Strap**.

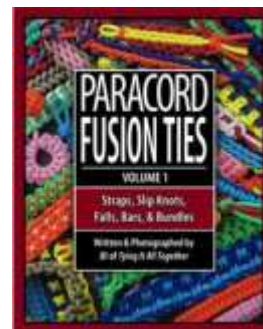
I've seen this design in a vintage Macrame book written in the late 1800s, so it's been around for a long time.

Like the [Chain Sennit](#), you use one end to form bights that slide into one another. But in this decorative knot, you pass through **two loops** instead of one. This makes the sennit stronger and more closely woven than the regular Chain Sennit.

I recommend you practice this technique with Paracord or Satin first, since they are both somewhat slippery, making the process easier.

This technique was found on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, designs by JD Lenzen.

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, where you will find **video tutorials** for this and other interesting knotting techniques and designs.



You need one cord at least 45 inches long to practice the Bugle Braid.

**Step 1:** Fold the cord approximately 12 inches from one end (1). Wrap the short end around the long end, rotating **under - over (2)**.



**Step 2:** Wrap the short end around a second time, closer to the folded area (3).

Mentally label the three loops as shown.



**Step 3:** Pass the **short end** through loops 3 and 2, moving left to right.

Turn Over



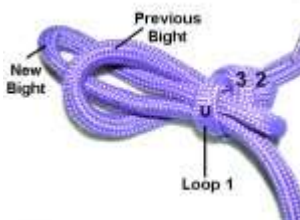
**Turn the knot over.** Make sure the short end is at the top, with the long end at the bottom.

You need to clearly see all three loops, so make sure nothing is twisted.



**Step 4:** Form a bight with the **long end**, and pass it **under loop 3**. Next, pass it through loop 1.

Pull on the **bight** as well as the **short end**, to tighten loops 1 - 3.



**Step 5:** Make sure the long end is at the bottom.

Fold the long end to form a new bight, and pass it **under loop 1**. Bring it through the bight you made in step 4.

**Design Tip:** The key to making the Bugle Braid successfully is to do the following:

- Keep the long end at the bottom, making sure it's not twisted.
- Pass each new bight through the **two** previously made. One will be tightened and the other loose.
- Pull firmly on the **new bight** when it's in position, which will tighten the others.
- Keep the sennit on a surface until you feel comfortable, then you can pick it up as you work.





**Step 6:** When the braiding is the size you want, pass the **end** through the two loops, rather than another bight.



Here's a closer image of the front and back views (click on the photo).

## Coyote Trail



**Description:** The Coyote Trail looks like a braid, but is more elaborate. A loop can be formed at the top, if you wish to make a bracelet or Macrame belt with this design.

This decorative knot can be used to make a variety of crafted items, such as key chains, belts, straps, pet collars and leashes.

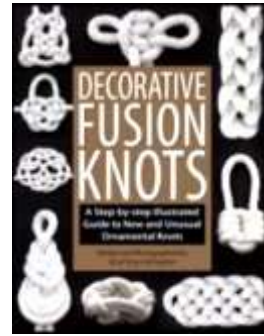
When you create your own custom plant hangers, this design is great for the long areas between the top and bottom.

Children and beginners should be able to create small items with this knot, so it's a good choice for group activities.

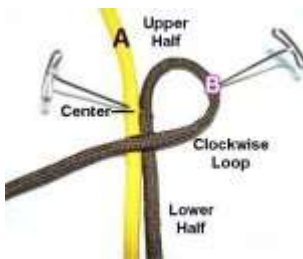


I found this design on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for other interesting knotting techniques and designs.



## Connecting the Cords (and Optional Loop)

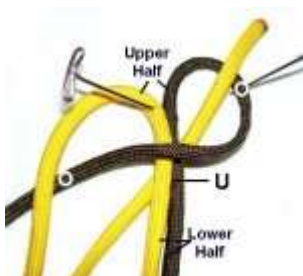


Place two 72-inch cords on your board, resting vertically. Secure them at the **center**.

Cord A is on the left (yellow), and cord B is on the right (brown).

Make a **clockwise** loop with the **upper half** of the cord on the right (B).

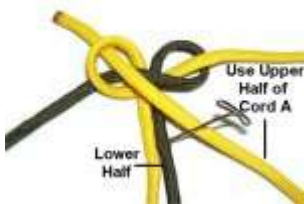
**Design Tip:** Note that the working ends for steps A - D are the **upper portions** of the cords. The lower portions should remain secured to your board.



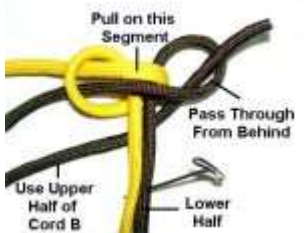
**Step B:** Bring cord A **over** cord B on the left, and then **under** the lower half of both cords.

Pass it through the loop you made with Cord B, from **below** (under - over).

Tighten slightly to remove most of the slack.



**Step C:** Direct the same end (cord A) into the left loop, from the **front**.



**Step D:** Bring the upper half of **cord B behind** the lower portion of both cords, and through the loop on the right.

Tug on the ends to tighten the knot.



**Optional:** To create a loop, pull on the segment indicated in the previous image (cord A).

The size should be slightly larger than the knot or button used for the clasp.

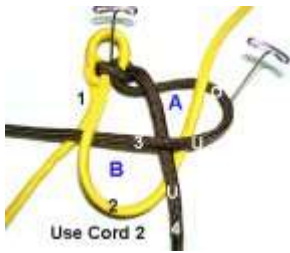


## Coyote Trail Design



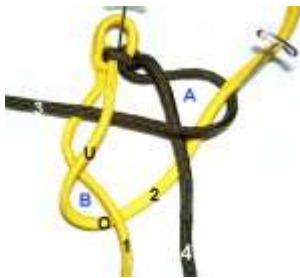
**Step 1:** Mentally label all four ends, from left to right. Move cord 3 to the right, passing **under** cord 4. As you bring the end back to the left, form a bight (**A**).

Pass the end **over** cord 4, **under** cord 2, and **over** cord 1.



**Step 2:** Direct cord 2 **under** cord 4, and through bight A from **below (under - over)**.

Leave a little slack so you can clearly see Area B, which is the curve made by cord 2.



**Step 3:** Direct cord 1 through the area labeled **(B)**, from below **(under - over)**.



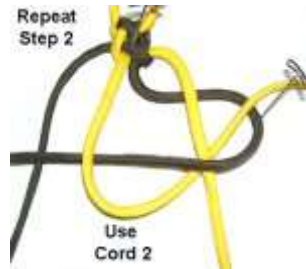
This is a closer view of the Coyote Trail knot, before it's tightened. Remove the slack by pulling **firmly** on all four ends.

**Steps 4 - 6: Mentally re-number the cords.**

Repeat steps 1 - 3 several more times, until the sennit is the size you need (see below).



**Step 4**



**Step 5**



**Step 6**

**Design Tip:** Once you are familiar with the Coyote Trail design, you may find it easier to hold the cords while tying it.



**Step 7:** To finish, tie a [Square Knot](#) using one cord of each color. Cut the two working cords close to the knot. If using Paracord, heat and fuse the ends. For other materials, use fabric glue.

The remaining two cords are used to make a button knot for the clasp, or to attach a button or bead.

## Blaze Bar



**Description:** The Blaze Bar shows what you can do when using two colors. It looks like a double row of Square knots, but the process is slightly different.

This decorative knot is a great choice for handcrafted Micro-Macrame jewelry. Just use 1mm to 2mm cord material.

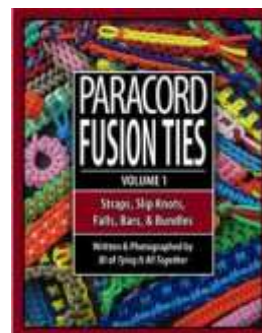
It is also wide enough for a Macrame belt, or can be part of handbag and plant hanger designs.

In the example, I used 4mm Paracord in two colors. When using this material, make sure you **melt the ends** to prevent the inner core from sliding out.

I found this knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

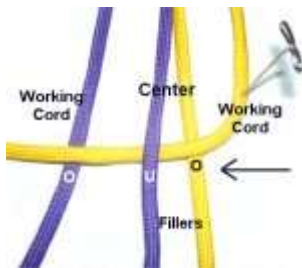
**Designs by JD Lenzen.**

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for other interesting knotting techniques and designs.



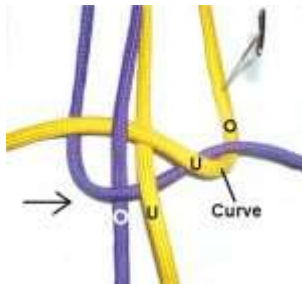
**Design Tip:** When using the Blaze Bar in a project, you would make a loop at one end if you need a clasp. You could also attach the cords to a buckle or ring.

For practicing, just fold the cords and secure them to your board, so that the portions furthest to the right and left are longer (working cords).



**Step 1:** Curve the **right working cord (yellow)** to the left.

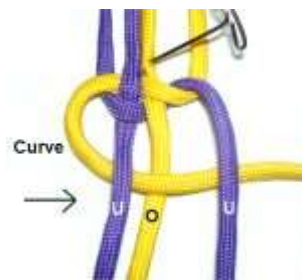
Pass it **over - under** the fillers and **over** the left working cord.



**Step 2:** Curve the **left working cord (purple)** to the right.

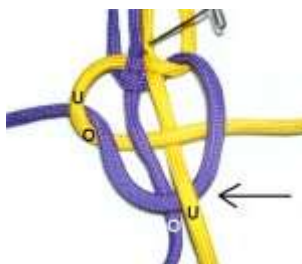
Pass it **over** the left filler and **under** the right one.

Bring it to the curve of the right cord and pass it through from **below (under - over)**.



**Step 3:** Direct the working cord **now on the left (gold)** to the right.

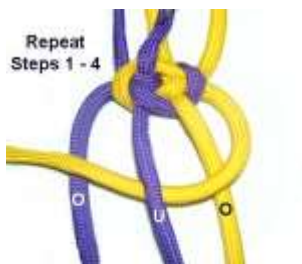
Pass **under - over - under** the other three cords.



**Step 4:** Direct the working cord **now on the right (blue)** **under - over** the fillers.

Bring it up to the curved portion of the other cord. Pass it through from the **top (over - under)**.

Tighten the knot by pulling on the ends. It helps if you pull the **filler cords** so they're straight.



**Step 5:** Repeat steps 1 - 4 several times, until the bar is the size you wish to make.



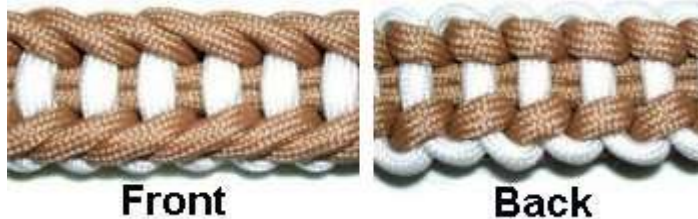
**Step 6:** Tie a [Square Knot](#) to finish. Use the remaining material to make a button knot, or add a bead for the clasp. It's best if you use the two fillers, and finish off the working cords.

When using Paracord, melt and fuse the ends to prevent the core from sliding out.



This is the Blaze Bar when it's completed.

## Jagged Ladder Bar



**Description:** The Jagged Ladder Bar features horizontal elements resembling a ladder, made with two colors. Try to use a dark color with a light one for added contrast.

This decorative knot is wide and relatively flat, and makes a great Paracord bracelet. You can also use it for key rings, belts, straps, and much more.

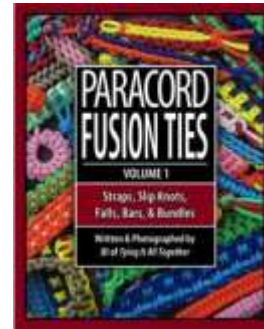
It's easy to tie and is a great way for beginners and children to become familiar with knotting and Macrame.



I found this design on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

### Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for this and other interesting knotting techniques and designs.



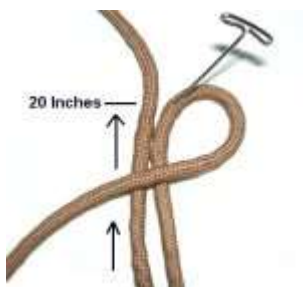
**Step 1:** You need two 60-inch cords to practice the Jagged Ladder Bar. The dark color should be the first cord, with the light one as the second.

Fold the first cord in half, and secure it at the center (fold at bottom).

Move up 8 inches and secure both ends there as well.

**Important:** When making something that requires a **clasp**, a button, bead or button knot would be placed at the **center** of the first cord.

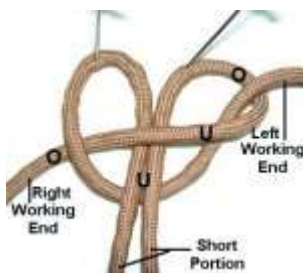
The loop should be the size you need for the bracelet. So for a 7-inch bracelet, move up 7 inches from the center to start the design.



The **working ends** should be at the top.

The 8-inch loop is called the **short portion** in the next image.

Make a small **clockwise** loop with the working end on the **right**.



**Step 2:** Bring the **left** working end over the right, and **under** the short portion (large loop).

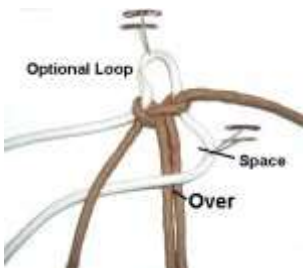
Pass it through the loop on the right (**under - over**).





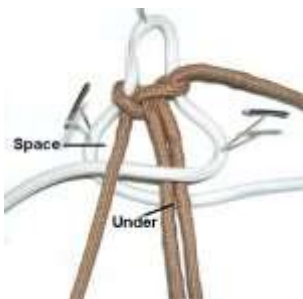
**Step 3:** Tighten the loops slightly. Start on the right and pass the **second cord** through the right loop **under - over**.

Then pass it through the left loop **over - under**. Match the ends to center the cord.



**Step 4:** Pull up a small segment of the 2nd cord if you need a loop for a clasp (optional).

Bring the **right** end of the 2nd cord **over** the long loop, so it curves horizontally. Make sure there is **space** to the right of the loop.



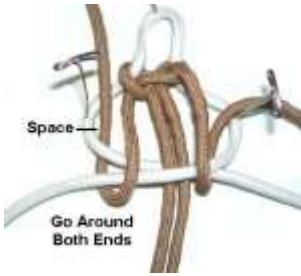
**Step 5:** Bring the **left** end of the 2nd cord **under** the loop, curving horizontally.

Make sure there is **space** to the left of the large loop.



**Step 6:** Wrap the **right end** of the 1st cord (brown) around both ends of the 2nd cord, from front to back.

It should come out through the **right space**



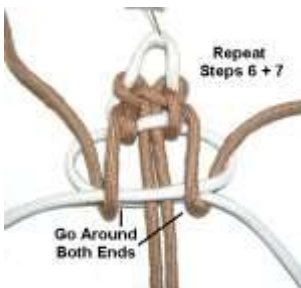
**Step 7:** Direct the **left end** of the 1st cord around both ends, so it comes out through the **leftspace**.

Pull on all four ends until the knot is snug.



**Step 8:** Repeat steps 4 and 5, crossing the second cord.

Remember that the right end goes **over** the loop and the left end is **under** it.



**Step 9:** Repeat steps 6 and 7, passing the two ends of the 1st cord around the ends of the 2nd cord.

Repeat steps 4 - 7 several more times, until the Jagged Ladder Bar is the size you want. You need to tie a Square knot, so be sure to leave some space.



To finish, tie a **Square Knot** with two ends around the other two as well as the loop. Cut the cords close to the knot, or weave them through the back of the design. Use glue to hold them in place.

Melt the tips with a flame if using Paracord.

# Chain Sennit

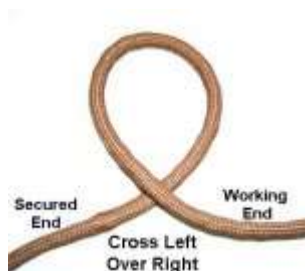


**Description:** The Chain Sennit is a historical knot that is sometimes called the **Caterpillar Sennit**.

It's simply a series of folded **bights** passed through one another. It's often used by electricians to organize cables and extension cords, so it has several uses.

Some of the braids and bars listed in Learn Macrame are related to this decorative knot, so it's important to know how to tie it.

This design looks like a linked chain, and is a good choice for casual jewelry, belts and straps. It's easy to tie, so is appropriate for Macrame projects involving children and beginners.



**Step 1:** Secure one end of a 60-inch cord to your board. Make a **counter-clockwise** loop **4 inches** from the secured end.

The end now on your **right** is the working end. Make sure it remains to your right at all times.



**Step 2:** Fold the working end to make a bight. Push it through the first loop from below (**under - over**).

Pull on the **bight** to tighten the first loop. Reduce the size of the bight by pulling on the working end.



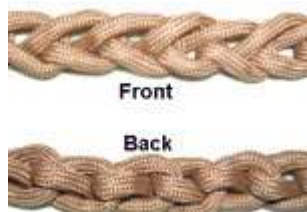
**Step 3:** Create the next bight by folding the working end. Push it through the bight made in the previous step, **under - over** (from below).

Pull on the new bight firmly, to tighten the previous one. Adjust the size of the new bight by pulling on the working end.



**Step 4:** Repeat step 3 several more times until the Chain Sennit is the size you need.

To finish, pass the **working end** through the the last bight (rather than another bight).



Here's a closer view of both the back and front.

## Ladder Strap



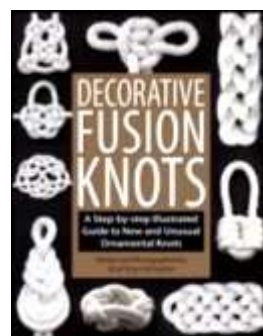
**Description:** The Ladder Strap is a very unique decorative knot, suitable for many uses in Macrame. It can be used as an interesting key chain, and for a bracelet, belt, or purse strap.

The material I used in the example is Nylon Paracord, also called Parachute Cord. You must prepare and finish the tips by melting the fibers with a flame, or the inner core can slip out.

The Ladder Strap is on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

Be sure to check out this site by clicking on the image, or the link above.

To learn new and exciting knots to experiment with, I highly recommend this book. The knot gallery contains [video tutorials](#).





**Step 1:** Fold a 2-yard cord in half, and secure it at the center.



**Step 2:** Bring the end on the **right under** the left, and then **over** it, as you move it back to the right.

Bring it back to the left again, lower down, passing **under** the left end.



**Step 3:** Now you will use the **left** end. Bring it **under** all three horizontal portions of the right end, and through the space at the top (above the knot).

Bring the end back down where you started, going **over** the front of the 3 segments.

This is considered the **first wrap**.

**Important:** Pull the left end firmly to tighten, after adjusting the size of the loop at the top.



**Step 4:** Wrap the left end at least two more times, as you did in step 3. Make sure the coils are snug and do not overlap. They should progress from left to right.

Make sure the end is resting **above** the wrapped area when you are finished.



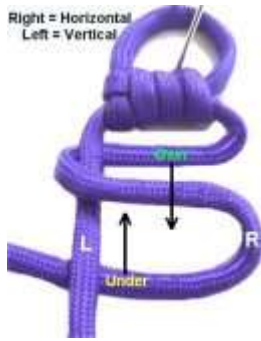
**Step 5:** Bring the **left** end down and into the loop on the right.

It's the portion of the right end at the **bottom** of the S shape you made back in step 2.



**Step 6:** Pull on the **right end** to tighten the first step of the Ladder Strap.

You can still adjust the top loop if necessary, by pulling on the three wraps.



**Step 7:** Repeat steps 2 - 6. Remember that the **right end** makes the **horizontal** s-shaped coils.

The left end wraps around them, moving vertically.

**(under going up, over coming down)**



**Step 8:** As you make each step of the Ladder Strap, make sure there is only a small amount of space between them.

Wrap the coils as snugly as possible while you construct the knot. It's not easy to adjust the coils once you move to the next step.



**Step 9:** When you are finished, trim the ends so they are even and finish them off with **finishing knots**, and/or beads.

For a bracelet, add a button or bead that will fit through the loop at the other end.

## Corset Spine



**Description:** The Corset Spine is a combination of the technique known as [Endless Falls](#) with crossed elements.

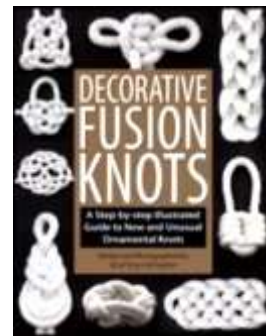
There are loops along the edges, making it neat and compact. This type of sennit can be used to make a Macrame belt, bracelet, purse strap, or in items like plant hangers.

In the example shown, there is a loop at one end. A ring can be attached to it to make an interesting key chain. For a belt or bracelet, you would use the loop as a clasp, with a button or decorative knot on the opposite end.

The material I used in the example is 3mm Paracord. For practicing, I highly recommend it.

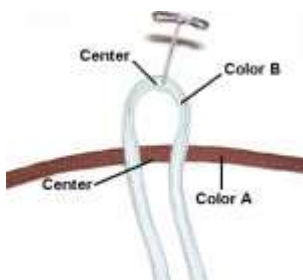
I found the Corset Spine on the [Fusion Knots](#) website. Be sure to check out the knot gallery by clicking on this image.

If you are looking for new and exciting knots to experiment with, I highly recommend you view the video tutorials, and get this great book.



**Step 1:** Cut 1 cord, 30 inches long (color A). Cut another cord, 60 inches long (color B).

When making something with this technique, the **color B cord** should be at least **7 times the finished length** of the item.



Fold the **color B** cord in half and secure it to your board vertically.

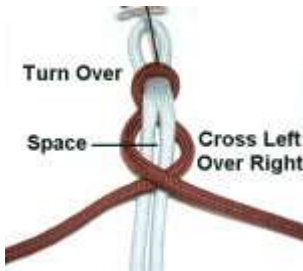
Place the **color A** cord underneath, resting horizontally as shown. The centers of both cords should be lined up.





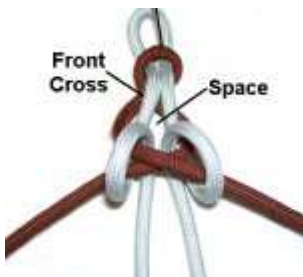
**Step 2:** Pass the left half of the **color A** cord over the right, to make the first cross.

**All the crossed areas in the Corset Spine are made left over right.**



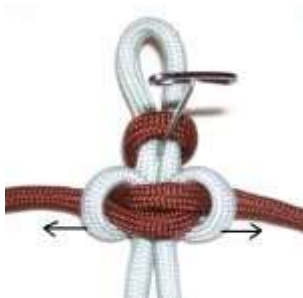
**Step 3:** Turn the design over, so you are working in the **back**. Cross the two ends of the **color A** cord again (left over right).

Take note of the space between the two halves of the **color B** cord. That's where the ends pass through in the next step.



**Step 4:** Bring the ends of the **color B** cord up and through the space between the two halves, forming two loops.

Make sure the ends go through **below** the cross in the **front** (step 2).



Tighten the first knot by pulling downward on the two ends of the **color B** cord first.

Then pull on the two ends of the **color A** cord.

The final step is to push the two loops right and left, so they are resting at the **edges** of the sennit.



**Step 5:** Turn the design to the **front** again, and cross the **color A** cords, as you did in step 2.



**Step 6:** Turn the design to the **back** and cross the color A cords again (as in step 3).

Direct the ends of the **color B** cords into the space between the two halves (as in step 4).

This takes place **below** the crossed area in front.



**Step 7:** Repeat steps 5 and 6 several more times to complete the Corset Spine.

## River Bar



**Description:** The River Bar is an interesting way to create a firmly woven band that can be used as a Macrame bracelet or belt. The loop at the top is optional, if you simply want to practice.

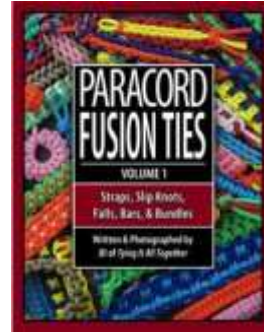
Paracord bracelets are very popular, and this decorative knot is a perfect choice if you are making one.

This knot is easy to tie, which is why I created a kid's bracelet pattern using this technique. It's called the [River Bracelet](#), and is a good project for beginners.

I found this knot the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

Click on the image or link to go there now.

Visit the knot gallery, which contains **video tutorials** for a variety of very unique and appealing designs for Paracord bracelets and similar projects.



**Step 1:** To practice, cut two cords, each at least 36 inches long (two colors).

When making a bracelet or belt, multiply the finished length you need by 6, and cut the cords to that size.

Be sure to **melt** the ends with heat if using Paracord, so the inner fibers do not slip out of the outer nylon cover.



Make a Reef Knot first, to create a loop and connect the two cords.

To do this, fold the two cords in half, and lay them on your board as shown. Color B should rest on top (silver).



**Step 2:** Bring the ends of color B through the folded area of the color A cord (purple).

The ends will be heading in opposite directions.



**Step 3:** Turn the Reef Knot around so all four ends are heading vertically.

The ends of the **color A** cord should be on the **inside**.

Leave a loop at the top if making a bracelet or belt.



**Step 4:** Mentally number the four cords (left to right).

Make a **counter-clockwise** loop on the **right**, by moving **cord 3 over** cord 4, and then **under** it further up.

Bring it **under** cords 3 and 2 in the center, and **over** cord 1 on the left.



**Step 5:** Make a **clockwise** loop on the **left**, by moving **cord 2 over** cord 1, and under the portion of cord 3 on the left.

Higher up, bring the end **under** cords 1 - 3, and **over** cord 4, as you pull it to the right.



Tighten the first knot by holding cords 1 and 4 steady as you pull on cords 2 and 3.

Cords 1 and 4 are now in the center and will be used to tie the second knot for the River Bar.



**Step 6:** The right loop is made by **cord 4** (color A), in a **counter-clockwise** direction:

Bring it **over** and then **under** cord 2 further up.

Pass it **under** cords 1 and 4 in the center, and **over** cord 3 on the left.



**Step 7:** The loop on the left is **clockwise**:

Bring **cord 1 over** cord 3, and **under** cord 4.

Pass it **under** cords 3, 1, and 4, and **over** cord 2 as you pull it right.



**Step 8:** Repeat steps 4 - 7 several times, until the River Bar is the size you need for your Macrame project.

## Endless Falls



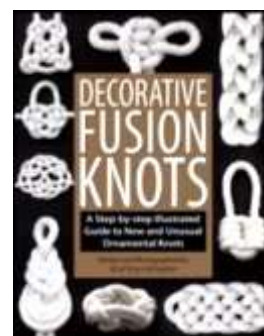
**Description:** Endless Falls is a knotting technique that's often taught in children's groups, such as Girl Scouts. This Macrame knot can be used to make bracelets, straps, belts and more.

In *Macrame for Kids* you will find a [Scout Bracelet](#), which features this decorative knot.

In the images below, the purple cord is color A, which is the **primary color**. The second cord is silver (color B), which is seen along the **sides** of the sennit.

Endless calls can be found on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

Visit the the knot gallery by clicking on this image or link above. This, along with other interesting combination knots are described in **video tutorials**.



**Step 1:** Cut one cord, 30 inches long (color B). The primary cord (color A) should be at least 60 inches long.



Fold the **color A** cord and place it in front of you, with the ends going left.

Fold the other cord in half, and place it on top, with the ends going right.



Move the ends of the **color B** cord through the folded area of the other cord, from **below**.

This is called a **Reef Knot**, and is a good technique for creating a loop at one end of the design.



Turn the Reef Knot around, so the ends are vertical. Leave a 1-inch loop at the top (color B).

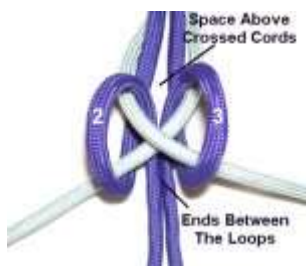
Make sure the primary color A cords are **between** color B.

Mentally number the ends 1 - 4 as shown.



**Step 2:** Cross **color B** cords 1 and 4, **left over right**.

They should rest on top of the other two ends.



**Step 3:** Bring the **ends** of **color B** cords 2 and 3 upward, passing them into the space between the same cords you are using (above the crossed area).

This will form two loops, which wrap around cords 1 and 4. Bring the ends straight down, between the two loops.



**Step 4:** Tighten the first knot by pulling on all four ends. Adjust the knot so it rests as close to the loop as possible. Make sure the color A cords straight when you tighten the knot.

Begin again, crossing the color B cords left over right. Repeat steps 3 and 4.



**Step 5:** Repeat steps 2 - 4 several more times, to complete the Endless Falls design.

Tighten each knot so it rests close to the one before it.

## Bug Belly Bar



The Bug Belly Bar is very similar in appearance to the [Trilobite Knot](#), but there are added elements.

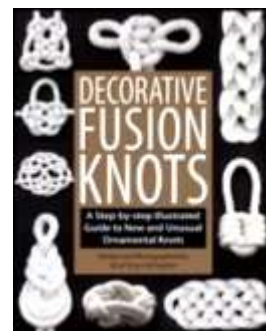
It makes a great key ring design, especially if you make it with brightly colored Paracord material, as I did in the example shown.

This decorative knot can also be used to make bracelets, purse straps, dog collars and more.

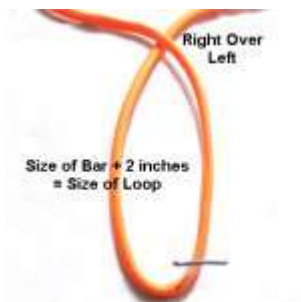
I found this unique design on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, which contains **video tutorials**.

Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the image or link to visit the knot gallery.



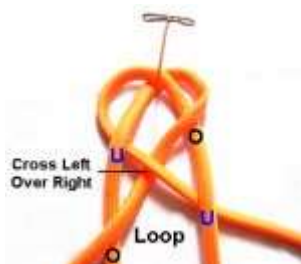




**Step 1:** Determine the size you wish to make, and cut one cord at least 4 times that length.

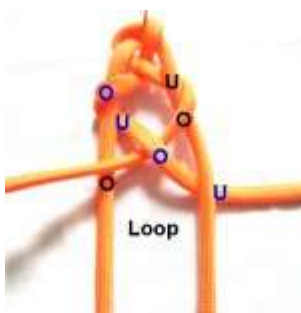
Make a long loop in the center, so the ends cross **right over left** (at the top).

The loop should be the **size of the bar + 2 inches**.



**Step 2:** Move the end on the **right over** both sides of the loop, heading left.

Move the **left** end **under** the left side of the loop, **over** the right end, and **under** the right side.



**Step 3:** The end that is **now on the right** should be moved **over** both sides of the loop, heading left.

Move the end on your **left under** the left side of the loop, **over** the right end, and **under** the right side.

This is the same as step 2, except the ends have switched places.



**Step 4:** Here is the most important key to making the Bug Belly Bar:

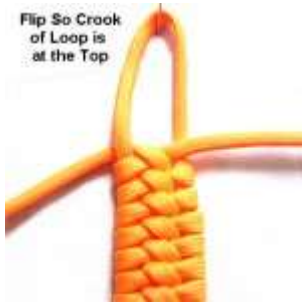
**Always** finish each row with the end on your **rightover** the **left** side of the loop.

The **left** end needs to be **under** the **right** side of the loop.

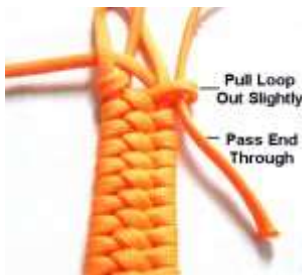


**Step 5:** Repeat steps 3 and 4, pushing the coils close together as you progress.

To make a key ring, stop when you are about 2 inches from the bottom of the loop.



**Step 6:** Flip the Bug Belly Bar over and turn it so the loop is at the top. The right end should be exiting the loop over the right edge.



**Step 7:** Pull the first loop along the side so there is room for the end to pass through.

Direct the right end through it heading downward, towards the starting point.



**Step 8:** Use needle nose pliers or tweezers to pull on **every other loop**, so you can pass the right end through. Stop when you reach the bottom.

**Step 9:** Repeat steps 7 and 8 on the left side of the Bug Belly Bar, weaving the left end through every other loop, exactly the same as on the right.

To make a key ring, trim the ends so they are the same size, and pass beads over each one. Tie a finishing knot near the tips to hold the beads in place.

The loop at the top is passed through the ring holding the keys. Fold the bar and ends through the loop, making a [Larks Head knot](#).

# Aztec Sun Bar



**Description:** The Aztec Sun Bar is a combination of the [Vertical Larks Head](#) with a slightly altered version of [Endless Falls](#).

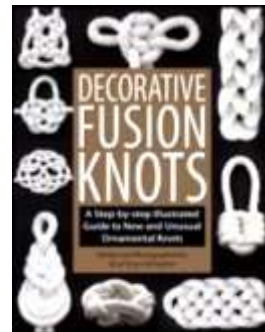
It's an excellent design for Macrame bracelets, key rings, and slender belts. You could also use it as part of a plant hanger design.

In the example shown, I used yellow and red Paracord. To make it more slender, try Satin cord, or Cotton. If you can, try to use yellow for the working cord, so the design resembles the sun.

To see a Micro-Macrame bracelet featuring this knot, see the [Sun Bracelet](#).

I found this design on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for other interesting knotting techniques and designs.

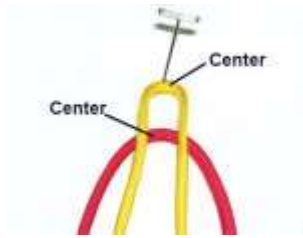


## Loop Clasp

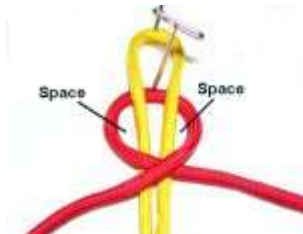
**Step 1:** Cut two cords, so that the **working cord** is **twice the length** of the other.

In the images, the longer working cord is **yellow**. The holding cord is the **red** one, and is shorter.

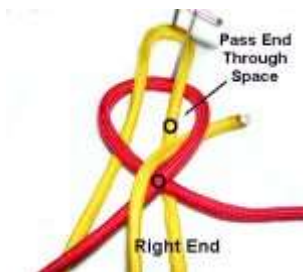
When using Paracord, you need to melt the tips with a flame to prevent the inner core from sliding out.



Fold the working cord in half and secure it at the center. Place the other cord under it and secure it as well.

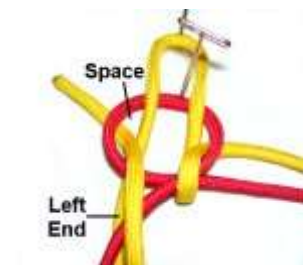


Cross the ends of the **holding cord**, leaving the loop large enough to see the **spaces beside** the two halves of the working cord.



Direct the **right** end of the working cord through the space on the right.

It should pass **over** the crossed area of the holding cord.



Direct the **left** end of the working cord through the space on the left.



Pull all four ends so the loops are firmly tightened.

Leave a small loop if you are making a bracelet, for the clasp. Make the loop larger for a key ring or belt.



## Aztec Sun Bar Design



**Step 2:** Make first half of a vertical Larks Head with the working cord on the **right**.

You do this by making a loop with the working cord (around the holding cord), **over - under - over** as shown. Pull firmly to tighten.



Make the second half by passing the working cord **under - over - under** as shown.



**Step 3:** On the left, repeat the process and tie the first half of the Larks Head, **over - under - over**.



Tie the 2nd half of the knot, **under - over - under**.



**Step 4:** Make sure both Larks Heads are firmly tightened, and neat.

Bring the ends of the **working cord** to the center, so they are ready for the final steps.



Keep the Larks Head knots as flat as possible.

**Step 5:** Cross the ends of the **holding cord**, left over right.



**Step 6:** Now you will repeat what you did back in step 1.

Direct the **right end** of the working cord through the space on the right.



Direct the **left end** of the working cord through the space on the left.



Pull the ends **firmly** to tighten.

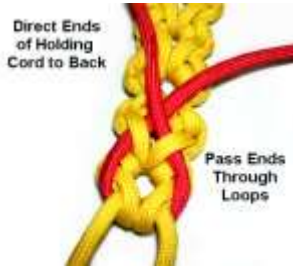
The **first** knot in the Aztec Sun Bar is now complete.



**Step 7:** Repeat the same process, beginning with step 2 (Larks Head knots).



## Finishing Options



**Step 8:** After you have made enough "suns" for your project, direct the ends of the **holding cord** to the back. Pass them through at least two of the loops to hold them, and apply glue.

When using Paracord, heat the ends to melt the fibers, to prevent the inner core from sliding out.

Knife Knot  
(No Loop)



Oysterman Knot



When making a bracelet with the Aztec Sun Bar, you need a knot at the end for the clasp. It needs to be tied with the two ends of the working cord.

The **Knife Knot** is a good choice. Just remove the loop when you are tightening it.

The **Oysterman knot** is easier to make, and is also a good choice. You tie the knot with one end, around the other, rather than folding the cord in half.

When using material other than Paracord, a **shank-style button** makes a good clasp. Just pass both ends through it from opposite directions, and pull the ends to slide it next to the last knot.

Tie the ends together with an **Overhand knot** and apply glue as you tighten it

## Rattlesnake Bar





**Description:** The Rattlesnake Bar is a very unique decorative knot, with a raised area in the center, making it look like a rattlesnake tail.

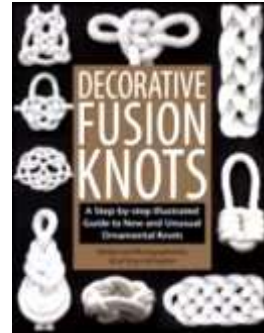
This is a thick, sturdy design that makes a great Macrame key ring, particularly if made with nylon Paracord, as in the images shown.

Try making it with flexible material, to form bracelets, purse straps, and belts. The ends can be finished off, as in the image above, or you can add other knots, beads or other decorations.

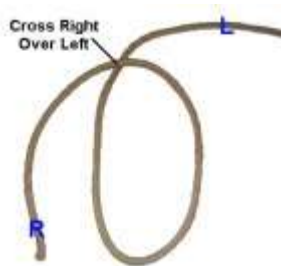
The Rattlesnake Bar is on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

### Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on this image or link to go to the site. Be sure to view the knot gallery, which contains video tutorials for many unique decorative knots.



**Step 1:** Determine how long you want the knot to be when it's finished. Cut one cord 8 times that size.



Form a loop near the right end, crossing right over left.

The loop should be the size you want the Rattlesnake Bar to be when it's finished.

The right end should be the **same length as the loop**, and be resting on the left.



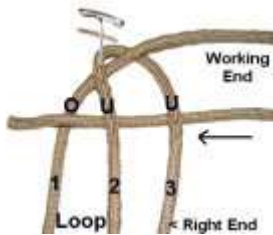
**Step 2:** Bring the right end back to the right, passing **under** the left portion of the cord.

Secure the right end where it rests under the left end, which marks it for when you get to step 9.



**Step 3:** You will use the **left end** to create the horizontal weaving for the Rattlesnake Bar (working end).

Mentally label the two sides of the loop, and the right end (segments 1 - 3). Secure them at the bottom.



**Step 4:** Direct the working end **under** segments 2 and 3, heading **right to left**.

At this point, it should rest **over** segment 1.



**Step 5:** Wrap the working end **around segment 2**.

The end should pass **over** segment 1 as you bring it to the left.

Pull it firmly and push the loop up to the top.



**Step 6:** Direct the working end back to the right, passing **under** segments 1 and 2, and **over** segment 3.

**Step 7:** Repeat steps 4 - 6 to make the remaining rows:



**Step 4**



**Step 5**



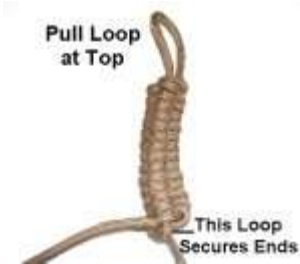
**Step 6**

**Step 8:** Stop when you get close to the bottom of the loop, so about 1 inch remains. Make sure you stop on **STEP 4**.



<<< The left end should be coming out of the loop next to segment 2.

Bring the **right** end through the loop, entering into it from above (**over - under**). >>>



**Step 9:** Go to the top of the Rattlesnake Bar and find the area that was marked in step 2.

That's the right side of the loop, which was labeled segment 2.

Pull on the loop at the top, which tightens the one at the bottom, holding the ends in place.



**Apply glue** as you tighten the loop at the bottom. When it's dry you can cut off the extra material. Melt the end with a flame if using Paracord.

## Interlaced Plaits



**Description:** Interlaced Plaits are also called **braids**. They can be used for Macrame jewelry and other projects that require a long, flat knotted design.

These woven patterns are seen in many works of art. The ancient Egyptians were quite fond of them, as were the Romans.

The first braid shown is frequently used in hairstyles, and is called the **King Solomon Plait**.

The second design described below is the **Woven Plait**, which features multiple

cords. It's constructed differently, by weaving the cords instead of crossing them.

The third type of plait described on this page is called the **Braid Knot**. The ends come out of the braid at each end, making it a great option for casual necklace designs, belts, or bracelets.

## King Solomon Plait



**Step 1:** Secure 3 cords to your board, and mentally number them, moving left to right.

I use different colors for instruction purposes. I recommend you can do the same when you practice these Interlaced Plaits.



**Step 2:** Move Cord 3 to the **left**, crossing **over** cord 2.

It should rest **between** cords 1 and 2.



**Step 3:** Move Cord 1 to the **right**, crossing **over** cord 3.

It should rest to the left of cord 2.

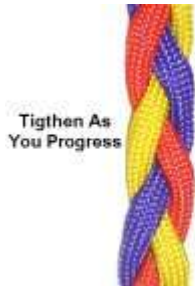
Cord 3 should now be on the left.



**Step 4:** Use cord 2, since it's on the right now. Bring it left, so it rests between cords 1 and 3.

To continue, keep alternating between the cord on the left, and the one on the right.

Make sure the cord you are working with always comes to rest **between** the other two cords.



Tighten the Interlaced Plait **as you progress**, by pulling on the ends firmly.

Holding the plait in your hands while it's constructed really helps to form a neater design.



## Woven Plait (Multiple Cords)

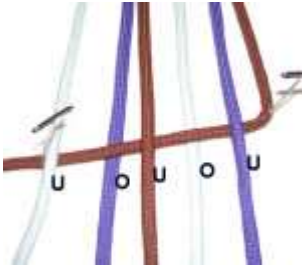


This type of Interlaced Plait is tied a bit differently than the King Solomon braid.

You use 4 or more cords to make rows of **weaving**. Using separate colors really helps when learning this technique.

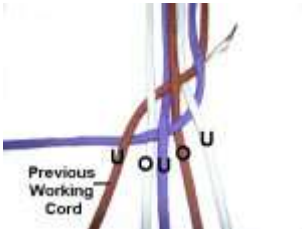


**Step 1:** Secure 4 to 6 cords to your project board, so they are vertical.



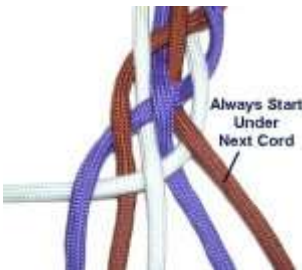
**Step 2:** Weave the cord furthest to the **right** through the other cords, heading left (on an angle).

The weaving pattern should begin by passing **under** the cord that's resting to the **left** of the one you are using.



**Step 3:** Use the cord furthest to the right again, weaving towards the left, through the other **five** cords (**include the cord used in step 2**).

The weaving pattern is the same as in step 2.



**Step 4:** Continue on, always using the cord furthest to the right.

As you weave it to the left, always start by passing **under the next cord**.

Make sure you include the cords used previously.



Interlaced Plaits should be tightened **as you progress** rather than at the end.

In this design, pulling on each of the vertical cords works the best.



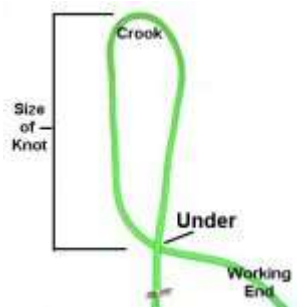
## Braid Knot



The Braid Knot is a unique Interlaced Plait I've only seen in one book so far. The process is similar to the King Solomon braid, but only one cord is required.

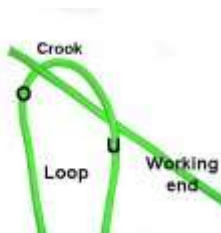
It's tied around a loop, which makes it suitable for a necklace or belt. The ends of the cord come out at the top and bottom, so you can use them to form a clasp.

You need one cord at least 60 inches long. Secure one end to your Project board or table surface.



**Step 1:** Make a large loop in the center of the cord, crossing right over left. The **left portion** is considered the working end. Secure the other end to your board.

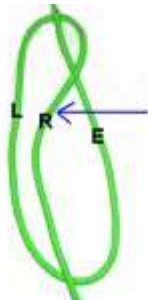
The length of this loop (top to bottom) determines the size of the Braid Knot. So arrange it to the size you need.



**Step 2:** Pass the working end through the top part of the loop, at the crook.

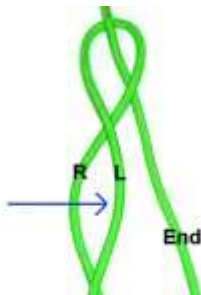
Direct it through the area from **below** (**under - over**).

Secure it just above the loop.



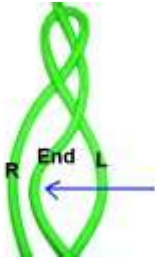
**Step 3:** Mentally label the two sides of the loop, left and right. The working end is the third segment.

Start with the right half of the loop and move it over towards the left. It's already between the other two segments, so only needs to be moved slightly.



**Step 4:** Cross the **left segment** over the right, so it rests to the left of the working end.



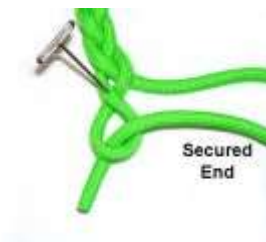


**Step 5:** Cross the **working end** over the left segment, so it's between the two parts of the loop.

**Important:** As you continue, alternate between the segment that's resting on the left and the one on the right. The portion you work with needs to rest between the other two.

There will be unwanted twists **below** the area where you are working. Pull out the end at the **bottom** first. Then straighten out the bottom portion of the loop.

You can hold the knot in your hand if that makes it easier to straighten the loop when it's needed. Make sure you tighten as you progress, since Interlaced Plaits look better when firm.



**Step 6:** Continue on until you have about an inch left.

Direct the **end** through the area at the bottom of the loop from the top, which is **over - under**.



**Braid Knot**

The ends can now be used to form a clasp when using the Braid Knot for a bracelet or belt.

## Link Weave



**Description:** The Link Weave features large curved segments that resemble links in a chain. They are arranged so that one color is above another, which

makes the design reversible.

This interesting knot can be used to make a Macrame belt, or a purse handle. Other items like dog collars and Paracord bracelets can be made using this unique design.

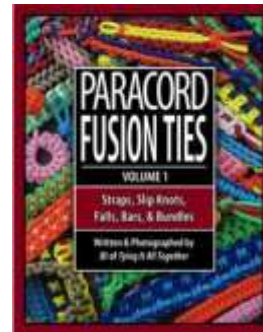
This decorative knot looks best if made with **two colors**.

To see a Macrame project using this technique, go to the [Reversible Belt](#).

I found this interesting knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, under the name **KBK Bar**.

### Designs by JD Lenzen

A **video tutorial** of this decorative knot is available in the knot gallery, which contains a wide variety of unique decorative knots.



To practice, you need two cords, each at least 60 inches long.

When actually making something with the Link Weave, multiply the length you need by 6, and cut the cords to that length.

You need to first make a **Sailors Knot**, to connect the two cords and give you four ends to work with.



## Sailors Knot



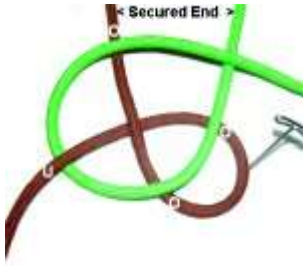
**Step 1:** Secure the end of one cord to your board, on the left.

Rotate the working end **counter-clockwise** to make the first loop.

Make sure it passes **under** the secured end to make the crossing point.

**Important:** Make sure the **secured end** of both cords are **longer** than the part you will be working with to make this first knot.

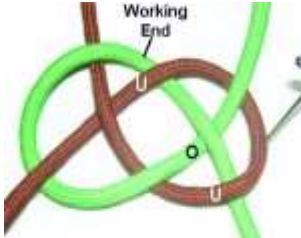
When I made the Link Weave for the first time, I placed the Sailors knot 45 inches below the secured end, so that most of the material was at the top.



**Step 2:** Secure the second cord on the right.

Direct it **over** the loop, and **under** the working end of the first cord.

Bring it **over** the secured end, as you rotate it **clockwise**.



**Step 3:** Weave the working end of the second cord through the first loop **under - over - under** the three segments.



**Step 4:** Tighten the Sailors Knot by pulling on the ends.

Adjust the knot so that the **secured ends**, which are at the top, are still longer than the ones on the bottom.

When actually making something, the **lower ends** need to be the size of the design you are aiming for, **plus 6 inches**. (see image below)

The rest of the material will be at the top, since the working cords need to be longer.



## Link Weave

**Step 1:** Secure the Sailors Knot to your project board, so that the ends coming from the **bottom** are pulled taut.



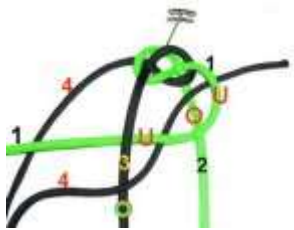
The lower ends are considered the core, and should be mentally numbered 2 and 3.

The longer ends that were secured at the top now become the working cords. Mentally number them 1 and 4, as shown.



**Step 2:** Move **working cord 1** to the left, so it's horizontal.

Pass it **under** the core (2 and 3), and **over** cord 4. Secure it on the left.



**Step 3:** Move **working cord 4 over** cord 3. Bring it **under** the horizontal segment of Cord 1 that rests between cords 2 and 3. It should be diagonal.

Pass it **over** cord 2, and **under** the curved segment of cord 1 on the far right.

**Design Tip:** The loops in the weave can be any size, depending on how you are using this knot. I recommend you leave some space, so you can see the overall design more clearly.



**Step 4:** Tighten the first Knot by pulling on all four ends. Secure cords 2 and 3 again, so they're taut.

The working ends (1 and 4) have now **switched places**.

Move **cord 4** to the left, passing **over** cords 2 and 3. Bring it **under** cord 1 on the left, and secure it.



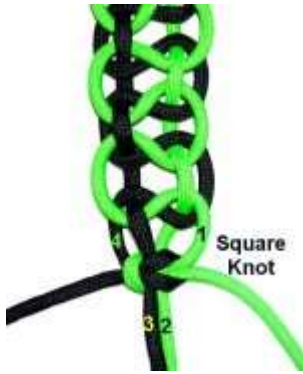
**Step 5:** Move **cord 1** (left) **under** cord 3. Bring it **over** the horizontal segment of cord 4 that rests between cords 2 and 3. It should be diagonal.

Pass it **under** cord 2, and **over** the curved portion of cord 4 on the far right.



**Step 6:** Now the working ends are back in their original positions.

Repeat steps 2 - 6 several times, until the Link Weave design is the size you need.



**Step 7:** Use the working cords (1 and 4) to tie a Square Knot around Cords 2 and 3, which are the fillers. Add glue while tightening, so it's on the **inside**.

Finish off the working cords by cutting them close to the knot. Heat and melt the ends if using Paracord.

The **center space** in the first Sailor knot can function as a loop for a clasp. Use the remaining two ends to tie a button knot, or use a regular button or bead, for the other half of the clasp.

## Round Braid



**Round Braid**



**Cross Braid**

**Description:** The Round Braid is an interesting decorative knot you can use to make Paracord bracelets. You can also use this knot to make Macrame rings and necklaces, by using fine materials.

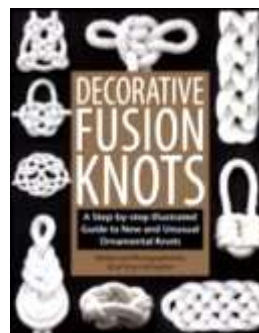
This knot is easy to tie, so is a good project for children's group activities. Click here to see the [Braid Bracelet](#), which features this knot.

I've added a second design, which I call the **Cross Braid**. It's very similar, but there is a holding cord, which makes the sennit wider and more flat. So it's a really nice option for a belt design.

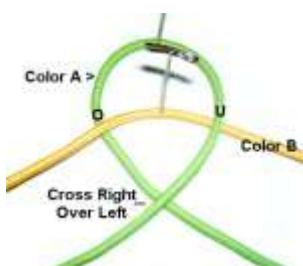
You should use a project board and pins when you practice both variations.

I found the Round Braid on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, which are designs by JD Lenzen.

Be sure to visit his knot gallery, by clicking on the link or image. It contains **video tutorials** for a variety of very unique and appealing knot designs.

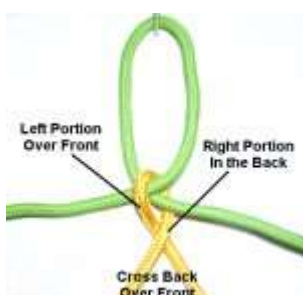


## Round Braid



**Step 1:** You need two cords, each at least 40 inches long. Mentally label the first cord, Color A (green). Make a loop in the center, crossing **right over left**.

Pass the other cord (Color B - yellow) through the loop, matching the centers.

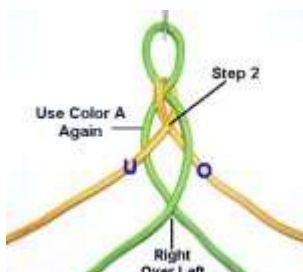


**Step 2:** Move the **Color B** cord down, so it's next to the crossing point of the first loop.

Bring the **left half** of the cord over the **front** of the crossed area of Color A. Bring the **right half** around the **back** of the crossed area.

Finally, cross the two ends, right over left (**back over front**).

**Design Tip:** Both cords are crossed right over left, but Color B is **sideways**, so it's also considered back over front.

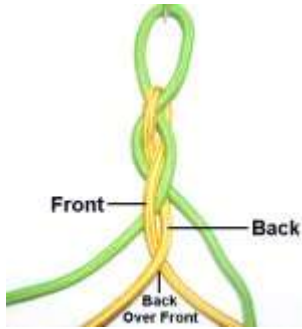


**Step 3:** Move the **Color A** cord now on the **left under** the left half of the Color B cord.

Move the right end **over** the right half of the Color B cord.

Cross the ends of the Color A cord, **right over left**. Pull on all four ends to tighten the loops.



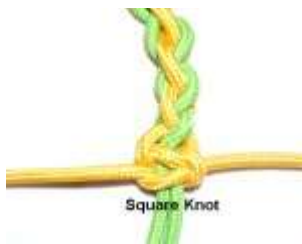


**Step 4:** The Color B cord is next.

The end now on the **left** goes over the **front** of the crossed area for the other cord. The other end goes over the **back**.

Bring the back segment over the front to complete the loop, which is the same as right over left.

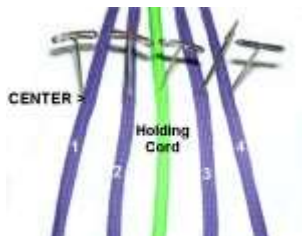
To continue, repeat steps 3 and 4, until the Round braid is the size you want.



**Step 5:** Depending on what you are making with the Round Braid, you may need to finish it with another type of knot. Here I used the **Square Knot** to secure the braid.

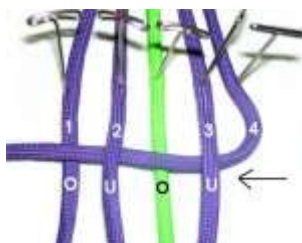


## Cross Braid



**Step 1:** You need four working cords and one holding cord for the Cross Braid. Secure the cords to your board at the **center**. You will be working from the center towards one end.

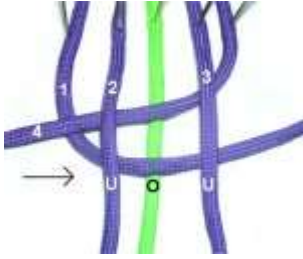
Mentally label the working cords 1 - 4 as shown.



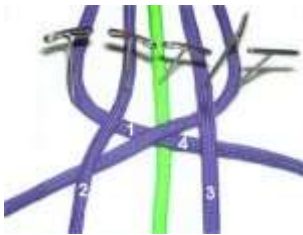
**Step 2:** Move **working cord 4** horizontally, to the left.

It should pass **under - over - under - over** the other four cords, as shown.





**Step 3:** Move **working cord 1 under** cord 2, **over** the holding cord and **under** cord 3, as you move it to the right.



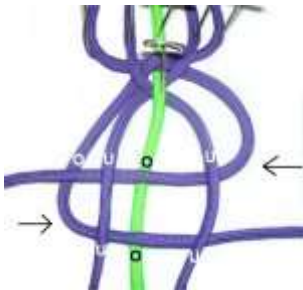
Tighten the braid slightly by pulling on cords 1 and 4, so they cross.

The crossing point should be positioned on top of the holding cord.



**Step 4:** Bring **cords 2 and 3 under** the holding cord, and then cross cord 2 over 3 (left over right).

Tighten the first knot by pulling on all four ends. It should rest as close to the **center** as possible.



**Step 5:** The four cords have now **switched places**, so mentally re-number them.

**Repeat steps 2 and 3.**

Remember that you move the cords furthest to the right and left (1 and 4).



**Step 6:** Repeat step 4 by moving cords 2 and 3 down and **under** the holding cord.

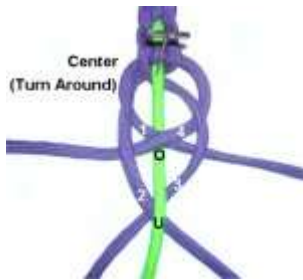
Cross the cords left over right.

**Design Tip:** The key to making this variation of the Round Braid is to make sure the outer two cords (1 and 4) pass **over** the holding cord, and the other two pass **under** it.



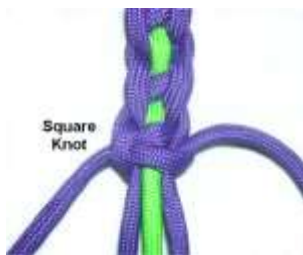
Make several more knots, until the design measures **half** the size of what you are making.

So for an 8-inch bracelet, you would stop at 4 inches.

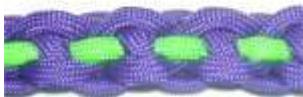


**Step 7:** Repeat steps 2 - 6, starting at the center, and moving toward the other end.

Stop when the second half is the same size as the first.



**Step 8:** To finish **each end**, tie a Square Knot using cords 1 and 4, around the other three, which all act as fillers.



This is a close up view of the Cross Braid design.

## Bush Bar



<< **Closely Woven**

**Open Design** >>



**Description:** The Bush Bar is a unique decorative knot suitable for many Macrame projects. Kids will find this knot easy to tie, so it can be used for a craft party or a school art project.

You can use it to make Macrame bracelets and chokers, as well as belts, straps for purses, and more.

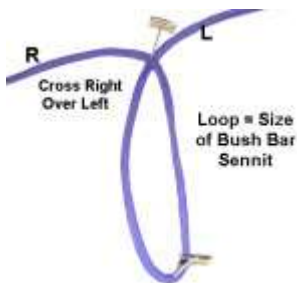
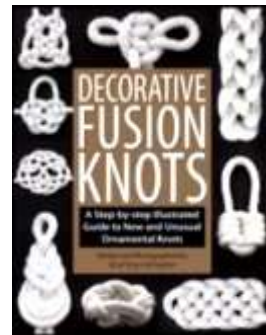
You can tie it closely woven, as in the image above, on the left. You can also tie it so there is space between the knots, forming an open design.

Click on the link to see a [Bush Bar Bracelet](#) featuring this interesting knotting technique.

**Re-written and improved in October, 2013.**

I found the Bush Bar on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, in the knot gallery, which contains tutorials for a variety of very unique and appealing designs.

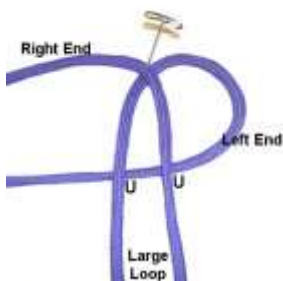
The author, JD Lenzen, also has two books, so be sure to visit his website by clicking on the link or image.



**Step 1:** To practice, cut 1 cord, at least 60 inches long.

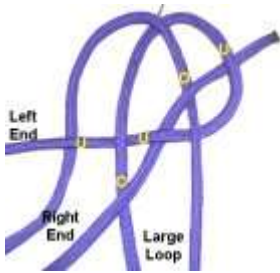
Secure the center of the cord at the bottom of your board. Make a large loop, crossing **right over left**. Secure it at the crossing point (top).

The loop should be the size you want the Bush Bar to be when it is finished.



**Step 2:** Move the **left end**, which is now on the right, towards the left.

Pass it **under** the large loop.



**Step 3:** Move the **right end**, which is now on the left, **under** the left end.

Pass it **over** the left side of the large loop, and **under** the horizontal portion of the left end.

Bring it **over** the right side of the loop and **under** the segment of the left end near the top right.

Another way to look at this important step is to pass the **right end under three parts** of the left end: At the left, middle and right areas of the knot.

Pass it **over** both sides of the large loop.



**Step 4:** Tighten the first knot by pulling on the ends.

You now need to decide whether you want an open design with space between the knots, or a closely woven pattern.

The remaining knots are tied moving **towards the fold** of the large loop (top to bottom).



<< Repeat steps 2 and 3.

Pull down on the bottom of the loop, so there's **tension**.

Tighten the second knot so it's around **1/4 to 1/2-inch** below the first knot. >>



For a tighter weave, go back and tighten the first knot all the way. It will be smaller than the others, causing the end to be rounded.

As you tighten the new knots, push them **upward** after pulling on the ends **firmly**. You may need to pull down on the loop to make the knots slide up more easily.

# Woven Wave



**Description:** The Woven Wave design is suitable for many knotted items, such as bracelets, choker style necklaces, belts, straps, and more.

The process is unique in that you **expand** the weave after it's completed. So in the image above, the green portions started close together, then were pulled to separate the folded areas.

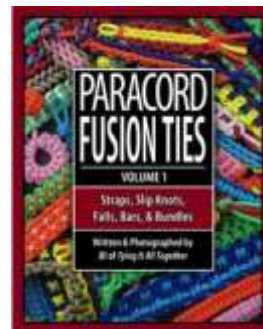
This is an easy decorative knot technique, so would be a great knot for children and beginners to learn.

A simple Macrame bracelet can be made by just adding a button knot for a clasp (with the core -- **see step 10**).

I found this design on [Fusion Knots](#)

## Designs by JD Lenzen

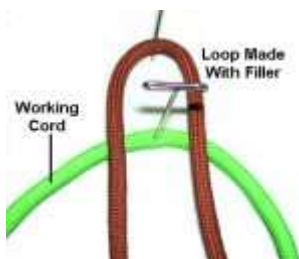
Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view **video tutorials** for this and other interesting knotting techniques and designs.



The best approach to starting the Woven Wave design is to form a simple loop using two cords.

To practice, they should be 45 inches long.

To make something like a bracelet, decide the finished length you want to end up with and multiply by 8. Cut both cords to that length (different colors).



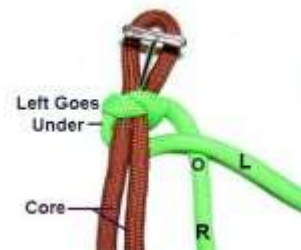
Fold both cords in half and secure them so the **working cord** is **behind** the other.

The green cord is used to create the weaving (working cord), and the brown runs through the center (filler, or core).



Use the working cord to tie an **Overhand Knot**, so the crossed area is in front of the other cord.

Tighten it firmly. Adjust the loop so it's around **1/2-inch** in size (brown cord), or the size of the button or bead used at the other end.



**Step 1:** Mentally label the two ends of the working cord, right and left.

Apply tape to one end, so you can tell them apart.

Bring the **left end under** the core, and **over** the right end.



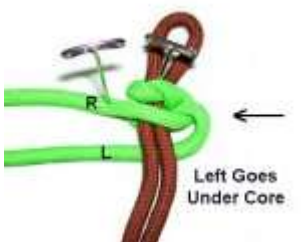
**Step 2:** Bring the **right end** downward slightly, so it rests below the left end.

Move it to the left, passing **over** the core.

**Design Tip:** To help you remember the process for the Woven Wave design, remember that the **left end** always goes **under** the core.

The **right end** goes **over** the core.

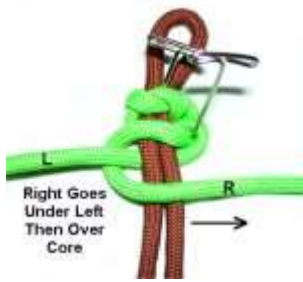
First you will bring both cords one direction, then in the opposite.



**Step 3:** Bright the **left end** down slightly, resting under the right end.

Move it **under** the core, as you bring it back to the left.

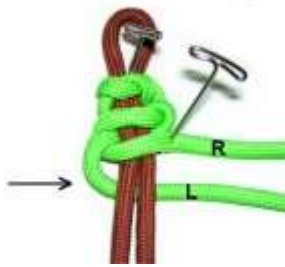




**Step 4:** Bring the **right end** down, so it passes under the left end.

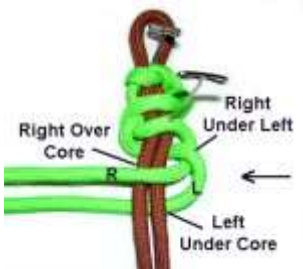
Pass it **over** the core, heading right.

Push the green segments close together.



**Step 5:** Bring the **left end** down slightly, and pass it **under** the core, heading right.

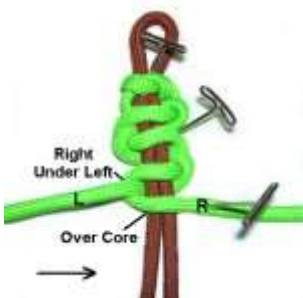
**This is the same as step 1.**



**Step 6:** Bring the **right end** under the left, and **over** the core, heading left.

Bring the **left end** down slightly, and then **under** the core, also heading left.

**This is the same as steps 2 and 3.**



**Step 7:** Bring the **right end** under the left, and then **over** the core, as you move it back to the right.

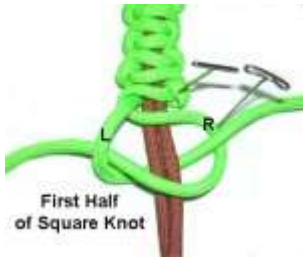
**This is the same as step 4.**

**Step 8:** Repeat steps 5 - 7 **two more times** to make an 8-inch bracelet. To make something larger, such as a belt, you need to repeat several times.

Remember that you will be **stretching** the Woven Wave to the size you need.

In general, steps 1 - 7 will turn out to be close to 4 inches. Completing steps 5 - 7 is around 2 inches.





When the design complete, tie the first half of a **Square knot**, with the working cords.



**Step 9:** Tie the second half of the SK just below. Tighten the knot firmly.

If using Paracord, cut and melt the ends of the **working cord** close to the SK.

For other materials, use glue instead.



**Step 10:** Take hold of the Woven Wave, and slide the **working cord** along the core, stretching the entire design.

The two ends of the core are used to make a button knot for the clasp, or to attach a button or bead.

## Bonobo Bar



**Description:** The Bonobo Bar is a unique decorative knot that features small rectangular shapes arranged diagonally. This design requires two colors, to get the proper effect.

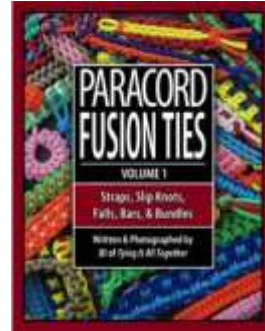
This knot pattern is suitable for a variety of Macrame projects. Bracelets, key chains, belts and more can be made with this design. When creating your own Plant Hangers, give this knot a try for the long sennits in the middle section.

The material used in the example is nylon Paracord, which I recommend for practicing. Be sure to melt the tips with a flame, to prevent the inner cord from sliding out.

I found this knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

### Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the image or link to visit his site. The knot gallery contains a wide variety of combination knots and techniques, all demonstrated through video tutorials.

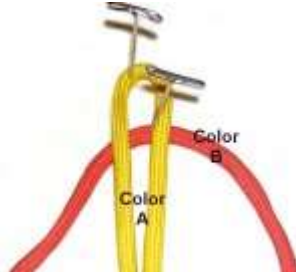


### Preparation and Clasp

To practice, cut two cords, each at least 60 inches long.

When making something with the Bonobo Bar, such as a bracelet, you need to **multiply the finished length by 12**. Cut the two cords to that size.

The loop at the top is part of the clasp and is optional. Here are the steps if you decide to create the loop:



Fold the cords in half, placing color B under color A.

Match the centers and secure the cords to your board.

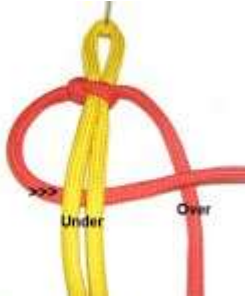


Move the **right half of color B over** color A, and **under** the left half of color B.

The **left half** goes **under** color A, and **over** the curved area of the right half, as you pull it to the right.

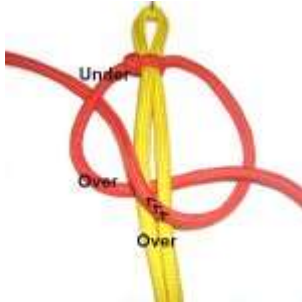
Tighten firmly by pulling on both ends. Adjust the size of the loop to match the button, bead, or knot that will be on the opposite end.

The next two steps are important, so the clasp will match the rest of the Bonobo Bar design:



Move the end of the **color B cord** that's now on the left, to the right.

Pass it **under** color A and **over** the right end of color B.



Move the end of the **color B cord** now on the right, passing **over** the color A cords.

Bring it through the **curved area** of color B on the left, passing **over - under** the two segments.

Pull the ends to **firmly** tighten the knot.



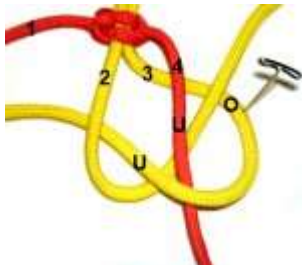
## Bonobo Bar Design



**Step 1:** Mentally number the cords 1 - 4, moving left to right.

Move **cord 3** to the right (color A), so it's **under** cord 4.

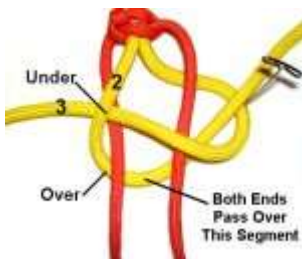
Secure the cord on the right, and then bring it back to the left, passing **over** cord 4 and **under** cord 2.



**Step 2:** Move **cord 2 under** cord 3, and **under** cord 4.

As you pull it out on the right, pass it **over** the curved portion of cord 3.

**Do not tighten the knot yet.** Spread the segments so you can see all areas.



**Step 3:** Move **cord 1** (color B) straight down, passing **under** the crossed area of cords 2 and 3.

Bring it **over** the lower segment of cord 2.

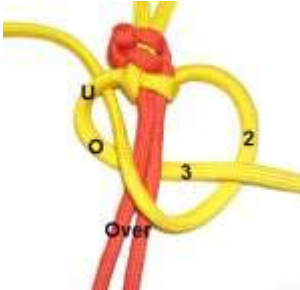
Both ends of color B pass over this segment, which is a good way to confirm the placement.



**Step 4:** Tighten the first half of the knot **firmly**. Make the second half as follows:

Direct **cord 3**, which is now on the left, **under** cords 1 and 4.

Bring it **over** cord 2, which is on the right.



**Step 5:** Move **cord 2** to the left, passing **over** cords 1 and 4.

Bring it **through** the curved area of cord 3 on the left, **over - under**.

Tighten the second half firmly by pulling on the ends.

**Step 6:** Repeat steps 1 - 5 to make the remaining knots.

Mentally re-number the cords before you start **each new knot** in the Bonobo Bar. Here is a review of the steps:



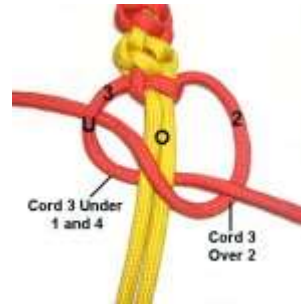
<< **Cord 3** goes **under - over** cord 4, and **under** cord 2 (right to left)

**Cord 2** goes **under** cord 3, **under** cord 4, and **over** cord 3 (left to right) >>

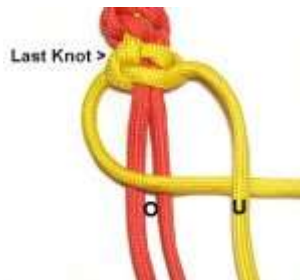


<< **Cord 1** goes **under** cords 2 and 3 where they cross, and **over** the lower segment of cord 2.

**Cord 3** goes **under** 1 and 4, and **over** cord 2. Cord 2 goes **over** 1 and 4, and **under** cord 3. >>



## Finishing



After the last knot is tied, you need to complete the Bonobo Bar with a **Half Knot**:

Pass the **left end** **over** the two ends in the center, and **under** the right end.



Pass the **right end under** the two ends in the center, and **over** the left end (on the left).

Apply glue to the two ends in the center. Tighten the knot as much as you can, over the glue, so it's on the **inside** of the knot.



You can direct the ends you were just using to the back and work them under the back of the knots.

Another option is to cut off the extra material close to the Half Knot. Apply glue or melt the tips with heat to secure.

The remaining two ends are used to secure the button or bead, or to tie a button knot for the clasp.

Below are the two button knots I recommend. Click on the blue links below the photo for the instructions:



[Knife Knot](#)



[Oysterman Knot](#)

## Crashing Waves Bar



Front



Back

**Description:** The Crashing Waves Bar gets its name from the crossed segments that look like ocean ripples, on the front. As you can see, both sides have interesting features, so this design is considered **reversible**.

This is a very unique decorative knot that has similar features as [Endless Falls](#).

You could use this design for a Macrame belt, bracelet, or any project where you need a slender sennit of knots.

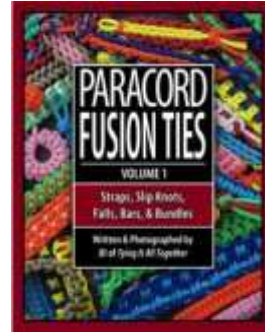
The material used in the example is 4mm Paracord. Be sure to **melt the ends** with a flame to prepare (and finish) this type of material.



I found this knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

### Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the image or link to visit his site. The knot gallery contains a wide variety of combination knots and techniques, all demonstrated through video tutorials.



### Preparation and Loop

To practice the Crashing Waves Bar, cut two cords 60 inches long (two colors).

When making a project with this knot, the length of the cords need to be **9 times** the size you plan to make.

In the images, color A is dark blue. Color B is light blue.



Make a loop in the center of the **color A** cord, crossing right over left.



Slide the second cord through the loop, **over - under** as shown. Match the center of this cord with the other.

Move **color B** down slightly. Pass the right half in front of the crossed area of color B.

Move the left half behind the crossed area.



Move the portion of the **color A cord** that's resting on the **right** towards the left.

Bring it **over** the color B cords, and **under** the left portion of the color A cord.



Move the **left** portion of **color A under** color B, and **over** the right portion, as you move it to the right.

Adjust the size of the loop, and then tighten the Half Knot by pulling firmly on the ends.

The loop is **optional**, so if you don't want it, just **pull down** on the color A cords as you tighten.



### Crashing Waves Design

Each knot in the Crashing Waves Bar is made with **three cords**. They are not always the same ones, though.

Pay close attention to which cords are being moved, and where they are placed. It helps if you label the 4 ends with tape.



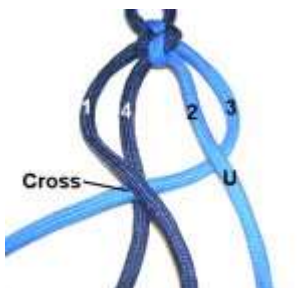
**Step 1:** Move **cord 2** (color B) **over** cord 3.

Move **cord 4** over cords 2 and 3, forming a crossed area.



**Step 2:** Move **cord 3** (color A) upward, folding it over the crossed area.

Bring the cord through the space on the **right**, passing **under** cord 4 as you pull it right.



**Step 3:** To make the next knot in the Crashing Waves Bar, move **cord 3 under** cord 2.

Bring it **over** cord 4. Move cord 1 **over** cords 3 and 4, creating the crossed area.

**Cord 3 is the one you folded in the last step.**





**Step 4:** Move **cord 4** upward, folding it over the crossed area.

Bring the cord through the space on the **left**, passing **under** cord 1 as you pull it left.

**Here is another way to look at the steps:** The crossed area is made by the cord you folded in the previous step, along with the one on the **outside**. Always cross **left over right**.

The third cord, in the center, is used to make the next folded loop. You pass it through the right space when you are working on the right.

For the left, the end goes through the left space. Both are on the **outside**, if that's easier to remember.

**Step 5:** Below are the steps for making the next knot in the Crashing Waves Bar:



<< Move **cord 4 under** 3, and then pass it **over** cord 1.

Move **cord 2 over** 1 and 4, to form the crossed area.

Fold **cord 1** up and **over** the cross, and through the space on the right. >>



**Step 6:** Continue on in the same manner, until the Crashing Waves Bar is the size you need for your project. Alternate from right to left as you progress.



## Finishing the Bar



**Step 7:** Select the two cords **furthest to the right and left**.

Cross them **right over left**, on top of the other two cords.



**Step 8:** Fold the **two cords** in the **center** up and over the crossed area.

They should pass through the space between them, above the cross.

Apply glue while tightening, which is done by pulling firmly on all 4 cords.



**Step 9:** After the glue is dry, you can finish off the cords on the right and left, which were crossed.

The two in the center can be used to add a button, bead, or button knot for a clasp. Another option is to finish them off like the other two ends. (see below)

**Finishing Methods:** When using Paracord, you can heat and melt the tips, which will help them stay in place.

When using fine cord material (2mm or less), you can tie tight [Overhand knots](#) combining two ends.

You can also direct the cords to the other side of the bar and work them under the loops to hold them secure. Make sure you apply glue.

## Asclepius Rod Bar



**Description:** The Asclepius Rod Bar is a unique decorative knot with elements similar to a [Square knot](#).

You have the option of expanding the knots so they are separated, or keep them close together.

The crossed portions form a S-shaped design, which makes the bar look like the **Rod of Asclepius**, which is a staff wrapped with a snake.

This Greek symbol represents the healing arts, and has a very interesting ancient history.

You can use this type of bar to make a Macrame belt, bracelet or similar design. It would look great as a purse strap or as part of a plant hanger.

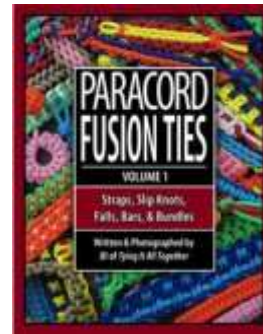
This knot design requires two colors. In the images shown, **color A** is dark blue and **color B** is green.

For the example, I used 4mm Paracord. When using this type of material you must melt the tips with heat to seal the inner core, or it will slip out.

I found this design on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, under the name "Rod of Asclepius Bar".

### Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the image or link to visit his site. The knot gallery contains a wide variety of combination knots and techniques, all demonstrated through [video tutorials](#).



## Preparation

You have the option of creating the Asclepius Rod Bar with a loop and button clasp. The directions for the loop are shown below. You need to decide which color you want on the **inside**, which is **color B**.

**To practice, cut the two cords to at least 60 inches long.**

When making a project with this knot, cut the cords as follows:

**Expanded Design:** Both cords at least **10 times the finished length**

**Knots close together:** **Color A -- at least 14 times the finished length**  
**Color B -- at least 12 times the finished length**

The **color B** cord should be cut even longer if you plan to make a **button knot** for the clasp.



Fold the **color A** cord in half and form a loop, crossing the ends right over left.

Pass the **color B** cord through it **over - under** as shown. The center should be lined up with the crossed area.



Fold the right half of **color B** over the front of the crossed area.

Move the left half behind (under) the crossing point.



Move the **color A** cord on the **right over** color B and **under** the left color A cord.

Adjust the loop at the top to the size you need for a clasp. This is optional, if you prefer to remove the loop at the top of the Asclepius Rod Bar.



Bring the **color A cord** on the **left under** color B and **over** the right color A cord.

Adjust the loop again as you tighten the Half knot, by pulling on the ends.



## Asclepius Rod Design

The Asclepius Rod Bar is made by crossing the **color B** cords, which are the **fillers**.

The next step is to tie a modified **Half Knot** (1/2 of a Square knot) with the other color (working cords).

The first knot is slightly different than the others, so make sure you read through all the steps, not just the first two.



**Step 1:** Cross the **color B** cords, **right over left**.

Mentally number the cords **where they are now**, moving left to right.



**Step 2:** Moving **left to right**, pass **cord 1 under** cord 2 and **over** 3.

Pass it **under** cord 4.

**Design Tip:** I consider this a modified version of a Half Knot because the only change is in the first step. The working cord passes **under - over** the fillers, instead of over both.

The second step is tied like a regular Half Knot:



**Step 3:** Pass **cord 4 under** cords 2 and 3 (**color B**).

As you pull it out on the **left**, it goes **over** cord 1.

**Important:** Notice that **cord 2** is in **front** of the horizontal portion of cord 1.

Cord 2 should **always be in this position** after the Half knot is complete.

You can place a piece of tape on cord 2 so you can locate it more easily.



**Step 4:** Pass **cord 2 under** cord 3, which comes out from the **back** of the previous knot.

The crossing of the fillers is the most important step in the Asclepius Rod Bar.

You will always cross **cord 2 under 3**, which can also be viewed as **front under back**.



**Step 5:** Move the working cord on the **right under** filler cord 2, **over** filler 3, and **under** the left working cord.



**Step 6:** Pass the working cord on the **left under both fillers** and over the right working cord.

Pull both ends to tighten the Half knot.

**Step 7:** Follow the same process as in steps 4 - 6, to make the remainder of the Asclepius Rod Bar. Make sure you cross filler cord 2 (front), **under** cord 3 each time.

When you start the Half knot, the working cord should always pass **under filler cord 2**, so it remains in the **front**.

The images below show you the next Half Knot:



<< Cross filler cord 2 **under** 3.

Move the working cord on the left **under - over** the two fillers and **under** the right working cord.

Move the right working cord **under** both fillers and **over** the right working cord. >>



**EXPANDED**

**Step 8:** You need to decide if you want the Asclepius Rod Bar to be **closely woven**, or **expanded** so there is space between the knots.

For a design with the knots **close together**, continue repeating steps 4 - 6 until the size is what you want.

For an **expanded** design, stop when the sennit is **2/3 the finished size**. So for a 8-inch size, stop at approximately 5 inches.

To **stretch** the knots apart, secure the **top** to your board, near the loop. Slide each knot towards the ends (at the bottom).

When it's the proper size, tie the final knot to secure the ends:

**Step 9:** Tie a **normal Half knot**, passing one cord **over both fillers** and the other **under** both fillers.

**Step 10:** Finish off the **working cords** (color A), in whatever manner you prefer. When using Paracord, you need to melt the tips after cutting.

The **filler cords** (color B) are used to attach a button, bead or to tie a Button knot, for a clasp (optional).

## Mycelium Bar



**Description:** The Mycelium Bar is similar to the [Woven Wave](#) in that the knots are stretched after they are tied. This process allows you to see the weaving, which is quite interesting.

You will be tying **Half Knots**, which is the **first half** of a [Square knot](#).

This decorative knot is perfect for Paracord bracelets, Macrame belts, and other



designs where you need a long, slender knot.

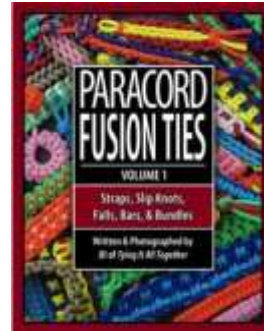
The instructions below include a loop at one end. At the opposite end a button, bead or button knot can be placed to form a clasp.

When using Paracord, as in the example shown, be sure to melt the tips with a flame to prevent the inner core from sliding out. This applies to the finishing steps as well.

I found this knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

### Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the image or link to visit the site. The knot gallery contains a video tutorial for the is knot, under the name **Branching Mycelium Bar**. There are also many other appealing decorative knots there as well.



## Preparation and Loop

Cut two cords, each at least 60 inches long. Using two colors is an important part of making the Mycelium Bar.

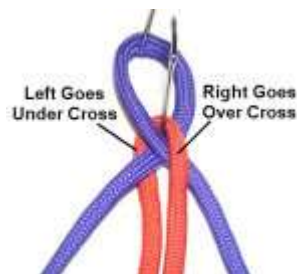
When using this decorative knot in a Macrame project, the length of the cord should be 8 times the length you want the design to be when it's finished. Add more material if you plan to tie a Button knot for a clasp.

The loop design below is optional, if you prefer to just secure the folded cords to your board.



Make a loop in the center of one cord (color A - purple), crossing **left over right**.

Slide the other cord (color B -- red) through the loop, **under - over** as shown. Make sure the centers of both cords line up.



Move the **left half of color B under** the crossed area of color A.

The right half should go **over** the front of the crossed area.

Now you will tie the first **Half Knot**, following the instructions below:

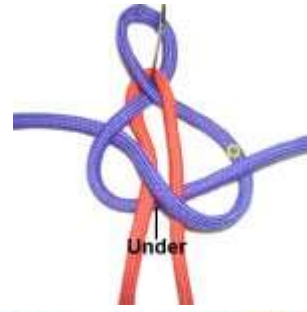




<< Move the **right end of color A** to the left, **over** the color B cords and **under** the left end.

Move the **left end** to the right, **under** the color B cords and **over** the right end. >>

Pull the ends **firmly** to tighten.



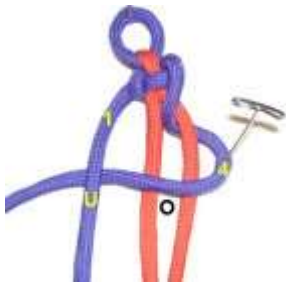
## Mycelium Bar Design



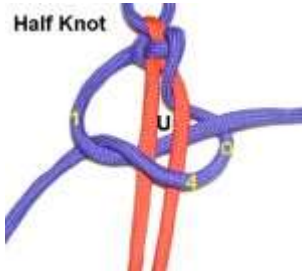
**Step 1:** The working cords are 1 and 4 (color A). The fillers are 2 and 3 (color B).

Move **cord 4** to the left of cord 3, passing **over** it.

Move down slightly, and bring it **under** cord 3.



**Step 2:** Move **cord 4** from right to left, passing **over** the fillers and **under** cord 1.



**Step 3:** To complete the **Half Knot**, move **cord 1** **under** the fillers and **over** cord 4, as you pull it right.

Pull on both ends to tighten the knot **firmly**.



**Step 4:** Use **cord 4** again, which is now on the left. Wrap it **over - under** filler cord 2, as you did in step 1.

**Step 5:** Tie a Half Knot, as shown below:



<< Move **cord 4** to the right, **over** the fillers and **under** the cord 1.

Move **cord 1** to the **left**, **under** the fillers and **over** cord 4. >>

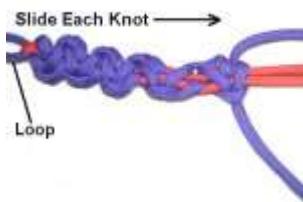
Pull the ends **firmly** to tighten.



**Step 6:** Repeat steps 1 - 5 several times, until the sennit is **half the finished size** you wish to make.

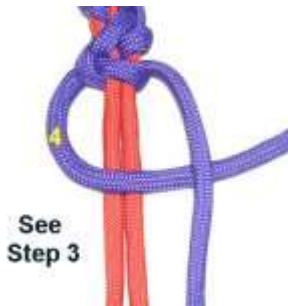


## Stretching and Finishing



Secure the sennit to your board horizontally. The loop should be on the left.

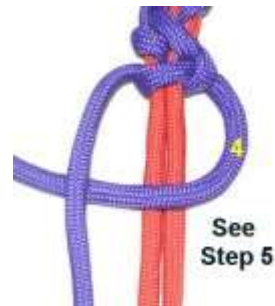
**Slide each knot to the right**, stretching them as far as possible. **Measure** the Mycelium Bar to verify it's the size you want. You may need to add or remove knots if necessary.



To complete the Mycelium Bar, you need to tie one **Half knot**.

The **direction** will depend on which side of the knot cord 4 is resting.

As you tighten the knot, apply glue to the **fillers**, so it's on the **inside**.



After the glue dries, you can finish off cords 1 and 4. The best method is to cut them off close to the last knot. Heat and melt the ends if using Paracord.

Another option is to bring them to the back and tie an Overhand knot, if you are using fine cord (under 2mm).

Use the fillers to tie a button knot, or to attach a regular button or bead (for a clasp).

Here are the two button knots I recommend. [Click on the links to view the instructions:](#)



[Knife Knot](#)



[Oysterman Knot](#)

## Mated Snake Knot



**Description:** The Mated Snake Knot is a variation of the [Chinese Snake Knot](#), but has small differences. This decorative knot features one color along the edges, with the other color on the inside.

You could use this type of sennit for Macrame projects that require a closely woven, sturdy design. It would be suitable for a purse handle, a plant hanger, or a belt. Since it's a thick knot, it makes a great Key Chain project for kids.

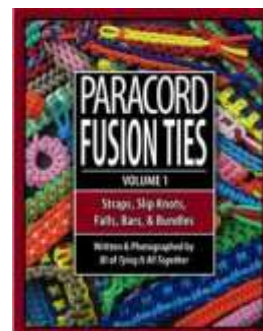
You can use fine material, 2mm or less, to make a Micro-Macrame bracelet or choker with this knot design.

In the example shown, a loop was added at the top, which is **optional** if you are just practicing. When using Paracord, as in the example, make sure you melt the ends with heat to seal the inner fibers.

I found this knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

**Designs by JD Lenzen**

Click on the image or link to visit his site. The knot gallery contains a wide variety of combination knots and techniques, all demonstrated through [video tutorials](#).



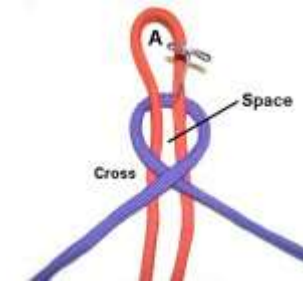
## Preparation

Cut two cords, each at least 72 inches long, to practice the Mated Snake knot (two colors). In the images shown, **color A is red**, and **color B is purple**.

When using this knot in a Macrame project, the cords need to be at least 12 times the finished size of the item you are making.

Add **extra material** if you plan to make a button knot for a clasp (color A only).

Here are the instructions to make a simple loop design at the top:



Fold **color A** in half and secure it to your board.

Place **color B under** it, and match the ends to center the cord.

Cross the two ends of color B in **front** of color A.

**Note the space indicated above the crossed area.**



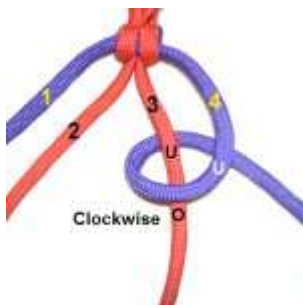
Bring the ends of **color A** up and over the cross, passing through the space.

Pull them straight down, and adjust the size of the loop.

Tighten by pulling on all 4 ends.



## Mated Snake Knot Design



**Step 1:** Mentally number the cords 1 - 4.

Make a **clockwise** loop with **cord 4** (color B), passing **over - under cord 3**.

As you pull the end right, pass **under** cord 4 to make the crossing point.



**Step 2:** Use **cord 3** to make a **counter-clockwise** loop, as follows:

Bring it **under** the end of **cord 4**, and **over** the crossed area.

Pass **over** the portion of cord 3 next to the cross, and **under** the crook of loop 1.

**Step 2, continued:** You can tighten the second loop slightly, but leave the first loop expanded for now.



**Step 3:** Rotate **cord 1 counter-clockwise**, to make loop 3, on the left.

Pass the end through loop 1 (color B) from the top, which is **over - under**. As you pull it left, pass **under** cords 2 and 1.

You can tighten loops 1 and 2 slightly, if you wish.



**Step 4:** Make a **clockwise** loop with **cord 2**, passing **under** the end of cord 1 on the left.

Bring it through the loop you made in the previous step (3), passing **over** the segments of **both cords** above the loop.

The end should come out from **under** the crook, close to where loops 1 and 3 are linked.

**Step 5:** Tighten all 4 loops by pulling on the ends. Make sure all the slack is removed and the loops are firm, since it's hard to go back if they are too loose.

Repeat the four steps above, to make the next set of loops. Below are additional photos:



<< Repeat Step 1

Repeat step 2 >>



<< Repeat Step 3

Repeat Step 4 >>



Apply glue when tightening the last set of loops at the bottom of the Mated Snake knot, so it's on the **inside**.

When it's dry, you can cut off cords 1 and 4 close to the bar, or direct them to the back and work them under the knots.

For Paracord, melt the ends with a flame.

Cords 2 and 3 are used to attach a button, bead, or to tie a button knot for a clasp (optional).

Finish them off if you don't need a clasp.



# Spring Sinnet



**Description:** The Spring Sinnet is based on the decorative knot named the [Slipknot](#). You tie a series of them in a **chain**, which is called a sinnet (or sennit).

The best thing about this Macrame technique is that you can pull it and it will spring back into its original shape.

This knotted design makes a great bangle bracelet, but you can also make it with heavy cord or rope to make a wreath. It's not flat like other bars, but it's still a good choice for items like belts, key rings, etc.

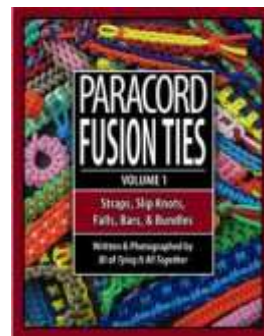
Children will find this knot easy to tie, so encourage them to learn the technique.

The material used in the example is Paracord. Melt the ends with a flame before use and during the finishing steps.

I found this design on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

## Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the image or link to visit his site. The knot gallery contains a wide variety of combination knots and techniques, all demonstrated through [video tutorials](#).



To practice the Spring Sinnet, you need one cord, at least 72 inches long.

When making something with this technique, the cord needs to be 15 times the finished length of what you are making. A 3-yard cord will make a design close to 7 inches.

**You may find it easier to create this decorative knot while holding it.**



**Step 1:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop **4 inches** from one end, which is considered the **tail**.

Secure the tail, loop, or both (optional).



**Step 2:** Fold the working end to make a **bight**.

Pass it through the loop from **below** (under - over).

Tighten the **loop** by pulling on the bight. Make sure the working end remains on the **right**.



**Step 3:** Pass the working end through the bight from the **front**.

**Step 4:** Pull it through most of the way, but leave a small portion for the next loop (see below).



<< Pull on the area just below the first knot, to tighten the **bight**.



You can reduce the size of the next loop by pulling on the **end**. >>



**Here's the most important step:**

**Step 5:** Flip the knot upside down, so the loop is at the **top**.

The working end needs to remain on the **right**.



**Step 6:** Make the next loop by passing the end through the previous one, front to back.

Pull on the area near the knot to tighten the previous loop.





**Step 7:** Flip the new loop so it's at the top and the working end is on the right.

From here, you just repeat steps 6 and 7 to continue creating the rest of the Spring Sinnet.



## Finishing Options



To finish the Spring Sinnet, pass the end through the last loop, and pull it all the way through.

Tighten the loop as you did all the others.



This will produce a nicely rounded, finished appearance.



When making a bracelet with this design, here is another finishing option:

Fold the 4-inch tail to make a bight, and pass it through the last loop.



Pass the working end through the bight, and pull it all the way through.

Pull on the tail to tighten the bight firmly. You can add glue while tightening, which will help hold the ends of the Spring Sinnet together.

Finish off the ends by tying additional knots, or work the ends under loops in the area. Apply glue and cut off the extra material.

When using Paracord, make sure you melt the ends with a flame.

# Mystical Chain



**Description:** The Mystical Chain is a unique decorative knot based on the [Endless Falls](#) design, listed separately.

It's easy to tie, and kids may enjoy using it to make fun Macrame projects such as key chains and bracelets.

Using at least two colors is important, or you won't see the chain link design as clearly. I recommend you use a light color for the primary working cord, as I did in the images shown (yellow). The other two cords should be darker, to provide the most contrast.

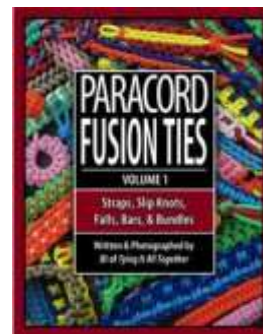
Make sure you know how to tie [Endless Falls](#) as well as a [Square Knot](#).

The material shown is 4mm Paracord. You need to melt the cut ends with a flame to seal the inner fibers, if using this material.

This knot is on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, under the name

## Mystical Chained Endless Falls

Click on the image or link to visit the site. The knot gallery contains a wide variety of combination knots and techniques, all demonstrated through [video tutorials](#).



## Preparation

To [practice](#) the Mystical Chain, cut one cord of each color, at least 2 yards long.

To use this decorative knot in a Macrame project, first determine the length of the item you wish to make (finished length). Cut the cords as follows:

- **Color A** (primary working cord) -- Finished length of item x 11
- **Color B** -- Finished length x 2 (+ 8 inches)
- **Color C** -- Finished length x 2 (+ 8 inches)

**Important:** Color A needs to be longer if you plan to make a **button knot** for a clasp.

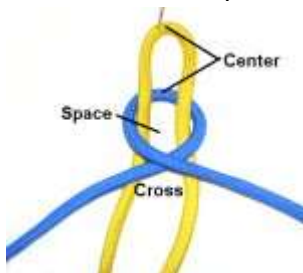
Prepare the ends with tape or glue to prevent unraveling. Don't forget to melt the ends if using Paracord.

In the images shown, color A is yellow, and is the working cord. It forms the

chain link design down the center.

Color B is blue, and color C is red, which are along the **edges** of the sennit.

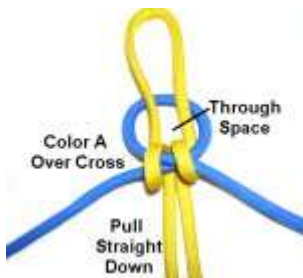
The first four steps are preparation for the primary design, called the **base**:



**Step A:** Fold color A in half and secure it to your board. Place color B under it, so the centers line up.

Cross the two ends of **color B** in **front** of color A.

Note the **space** indicated above the cross, between the two halves of color A. That's where the ends go through in the next step.



**Step B:** To complete the Endless Falls design, bring the two ends of **color A** up and **over** the crossed area, and down through the space.

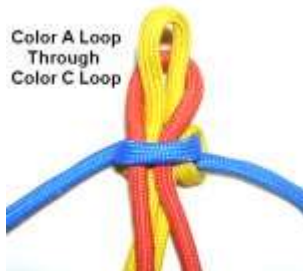
Pull the ends straight down to tighten color A slightly.

Leave color B loose, since you need to add another cord.



**Step C:** Flip the design over, so you are working in the back.

Fold the 3rd cord in half (color C) and slide it under the segment of color B.

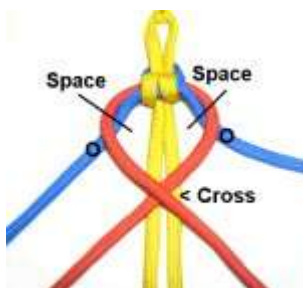


**Step D:** Pass the loop made by the color A cord through the one from color C.

Turn the knot over to the front again, and pull on the ends to firmly tighten all three cords.



## Mystical Chain Design



**Step 1:** Pass the ends of **color C** over color B.

Bring them in front of color A, and cross the ends left over right.

Move the two ends of **color A** together, so there is space on **either side** of them.

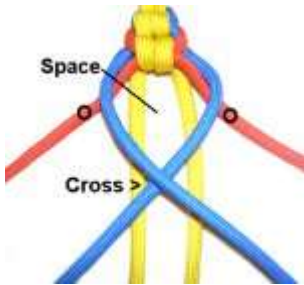
**Design Tip:** The Mystical Chain differs from Endless Falls in the fact that the ends are not always passed between the halves of color A.



**Step 2:** Move the ends of **color A** up and over the crossed area of color C.

One should go in each space, on either side of the color A cord in the center.

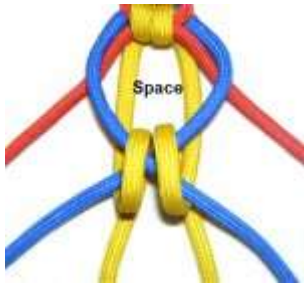
Pull all 4 ends to tighten the knot **firmly**.



**Step 3:** Move the ends of **color B over** color C.

Cross them in **front** of color A, left over right.

This time, the ends will pass through the space **between** the two halves of color A, just like a regular Endless Falls pattern.



**Step 4:** Move the ends of **color A over** the crossed area of color B, and through the space.

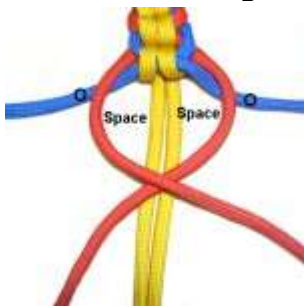
Pull all 4 ends to tighten the knot firmly.

**Step 5:** Repeat steps 1 - 4 as many times as you wish, or until the Mystical Chain is the size you need. You still have one knot to tie, so make sure you have at least 6 inches left.

Here are some tips to remember:

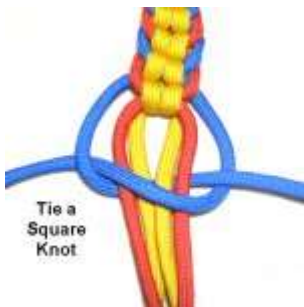
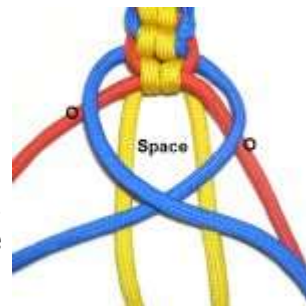
Make sure you move the color B (or color C) cords into position after **passing over the other color**.

Cross **left over right** each time, so the pattern is consistent.



<< On a step where you cross **color C**, the ends of color A go through the spaces on **either side** of the portion in the center.

When **color B** is crossed, the ends go through the space **between** the two halves of color A. >>



To finish the Mystical Chain, use the color that was next to be crossed (B or C), to tie a **tight** Square Knot.

Apply glue while tightening each half, so it's on the **inside** of the knot.

When the glue is dry, you can finish off the ends of color B and C in any manner you wish.

To make a clasp, tie a button knot or add a regular button or bead to the ends of the **color A** cord.

## Snake Braid



**Description:** The Snake Braid is sometimes called the Snake Weave as well as the Cross Braid. The reason is that the sennit is formed by crossing cords and has a small amount of weaving as well. It's easy to make and suitable for kid's and beginner's projects.

This plait is usually tied around a loop. Not so in this case. The ends are free, to make the crossings easier to manage.

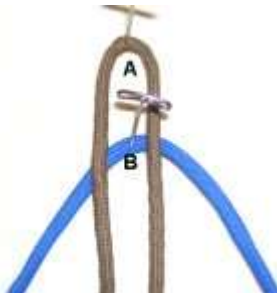
In the example shown, I made a simple loop at the top, which I recommend when practicing. Since this decorative knot is suitable for Macrame bracelets and belts, you will need to form a loop for a clasp, and the method I chose is one option.

Make sure you know how to tie a [Square knot](#), or use a different knot for the loop and in the finishing steps.

I recommend you use a project board and pins while learning this style of braiding. Here are other types of braid styles you may wish to learn:

- [Interlaced Plaits](#)
- [Celtic Bar](#)
- [Round Braid](#)

**Preparation:** You need two cords, at least 36 inches long, to practice the Snake Braid. When using Paracord, melt the tips of the cords to seal the inner fibers.



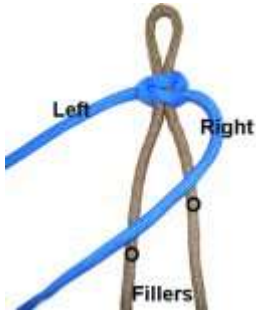
**Step 1:** Fold one cord in half and secure it to your board at the center (**color A**).

Fold the second cord, and place it under the first one as shown (**color B**).



**Step 2:** Tie a Square knot with the two ends of the **color B** cord.

The fillers are the ends of the color A cord. Tighten it firmly after adjusting the size of the loop at the top.



**Step 3:** Mentally label the ends as shown. Color B is considered the working cord, and color A the fillers.

Move the **right** working cord to the left on an angle.

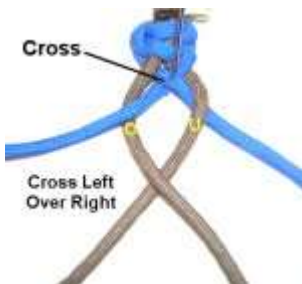
Pass it **over** both fillers.



**Step 4:** Move the **left** working cord **under** the left filler, and **over** the right working cord.

Pass it **under** the right filler as you pull it to the right, on an angle.

Pull the ends firmly, so the crossing point rests just below the Square Knot (see next image). Secure the crossed area.



**Step 5:** Cross the fillers (color A) **left over right**. Pull the ends firmly, so the crossed area is below the one from step 4. Securing it is recommended.

It's better to tighten the Snake Braid as you progress.

**Important:** Before moving on, check to make sure the ends of the working cord still rest **over** the filler on the left and **under** at the right.



**Step 6:** The ends of the working cord have switched places, so the **left end** is on the **right**.

Move it **over** both fillers heading diagonally, right to left.





**Step 7:** Move the **right end** (now on the left) to the right, passing **under - over - under** the three segments.

Pull the ends firmly, so the crossed area moves up below the one from step 5.

**Repeat step 5**, crossing the **fillers right over left**.

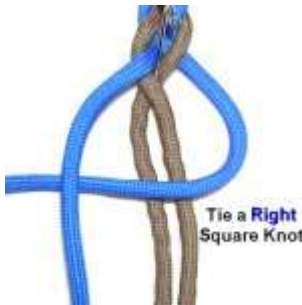
Before moving on, check the placement of the working cords.



**Step 8:** Repeat steps 3 - 7 several times, until the Snake Braid is the size you want.

Make sure final step is where you cross the **fillers**, (as in step 5).

Below is one option for securing the bottom of the Snake Braid. Since I used a Square knot to make the loop at the top, I used it here as well.



<< Tie a **right facing** Square knot, by moving the **right** cord first.

Make sure the fillers remain crossed, just above the area where you are tying the knot.



**Completed Knot** >>

## Cloverleaf Knot



**Description:** The Cloverleaf knot is the most common design used in Chinese Macrame. You need to know how to tie this basic decorative knot easily, if you want to create combinations using Chinese knots.

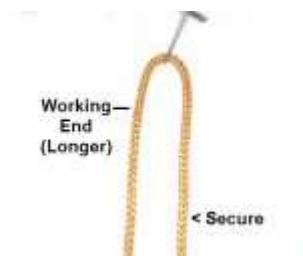


On this page I not only describe the 3-loop variation shown above, but also show you how to tie it with two loops and four loops. Each variation has it's advantages, particularly when tying elaborate Chinese designs.

Practice tying each variation **several times**, so you are as comfortable tying this knot as you are the Square Knot.

If you can, reverse the direction you tie each design, so you can make them in both directions.

## Cloverleaf Knot -- 3 Loops



**Step 1:** Fold a 60-inch cord close to the center, so the **left half** is about 10 inches longer than the right.

Secure both the fold and the right portion to your board.

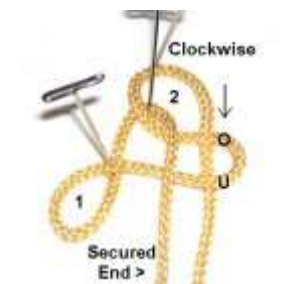


**Step 2:** Make a **clockwise loop** on the left, passing **over** and **under** the two segments as you bring the working end to the **right**.



**Step 3:** Bring the working end back to the **left**, forming the first **bight**.

Make sure you pass **under - over** the two segments.



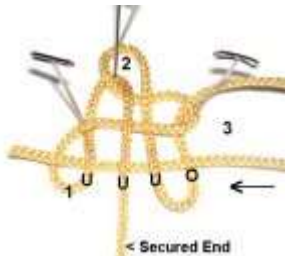
**Step 4:** Bring the working end up above the first fold, and rotate it **clockwise** to form **loop 2**.

Bring the end down through the bight you made in the last step, **over - under**.



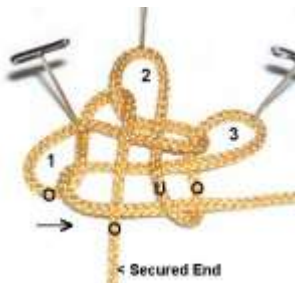
**Step 5:** Bring the working end to the right and back up, passing through the first bight, **under - over**.

This forms another bight.



**Step 6:** Rotate the end **clockwise**, to form loop 3. Bring the working end **over - under** the bight made in the previous step. You should be moving horizontally, towards the left side of the Cloverleaf knot.

Bring it **under** the **secured end** and **under** the right side of loop 1.



**Step 7:** Bring the working end back to the **right**, passing **over** the secured end, and **under - over** the bight.



**Step 8:** Tighten the **center** of the Cloverleaf knot first, by pulling on the three loops and the ends. Don't tighten it completely, just enough for the knot to hold its shape.

Reduce the size of each loop **in the order they were made**.

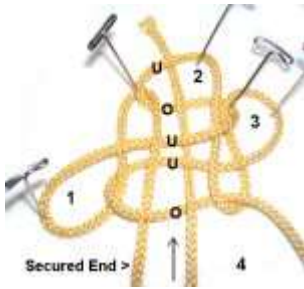


## Cloverleaf -- 4 Loops

The advantage to making a Cloverleaf knot with four loops is that the ends are heading in **opposite directions**. So this is a great feature knot for items like bracelets or belts.

The three loop variation is better for items that **dangle**, such as earrings and pendants.

**Step 1:** Start by making a 3-loop Cloverleaf by following steps 1 - 7 above.



Rotate the working end **clockwise** to make loop 4.

Bring the working end **over** the first horizontal segment you come to, at the bottom.

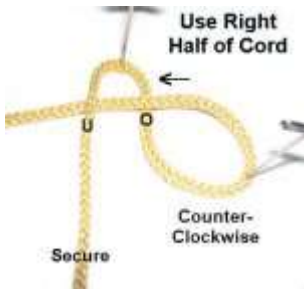
Pass it **under** the next two segments, and through the loop at the top (2), **over - under**.

**Step 2:** Pull on the loops and ends to tighten the center slightly. Then reduce the size of the four loops by removing the slack from each one, in the order they were made.



## Cloverleaf -- 2 Loops

The main advantage to using this variation is that it's easy to attach to other Chinese knots. The two loops can be any size, and still be balanced. Make sure you practice this variation several times.



**Step 1:** Fold a 36-inch cord in half and secure the left half. Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the **right half**.

Bring the end **over** to make the crossing point, and **under** the left half of the cord.



**Step 2:** Bring the working end back to the right, passing **under - over** the two segments. This forms a bight on the left side of the Cloverleaf knot.



**Step 3:** Rotate the working end **counter-clockwise** to make loop 2. Bring the end through the knot on a **diagonal slant**:

Pass **over** the bight at the left, **under** the secured end, **under** the loop's crossing point, and **over** the crook of loop 1.



**Step 4:** The final step to this Cloverleaf knot is to bring the end back to the left, passing **over** the secured end. Bring it through the bight from below (**under - over**).

Tighten the knot by pulling on the loops first. Then reduce their size by removing the slack.

## Brocade Knot



**Description:** The Brocade knot comes from the circular symbols favored by the Chinese to represent good fortune and completeness. The center is round and is outlined by five loops, which can be any size. I've seen it called the Chinese Flower knot in some books.

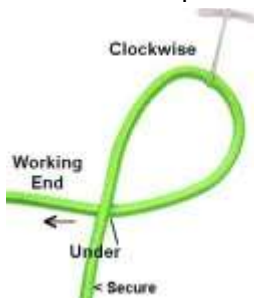
This decorative knot is a challenge to construct. I recommend you make the loops as large as possible when you first learn this Chinese knot. You will need less material as you become more familiar with the knot and have practiced a few times.

To view a Macrame pattern where this knot is featured, see [Butterfly Earrings](#).

Cut one cord, at least 72 inches long, the first time you make the Brocade knot.

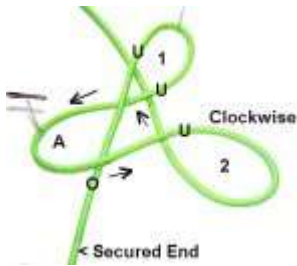
When using Paracord, as in the example shown, melt the ends with a flame to seal the inner fiber inside.

Secure all loops and bights as you make them, preferably at the crook or bend.



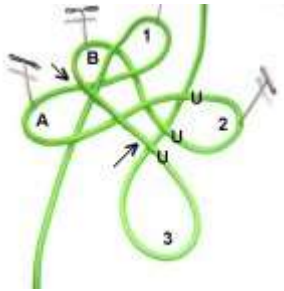
**Step 1:** Secure the cord at the center. You will use the **right half** of the cord to make the first portion of the Brocade knot. Secure the **left half** for now.

Make the first loop in a **clockwise** direction, passing the working end **under** the secured end to form the crossing point.



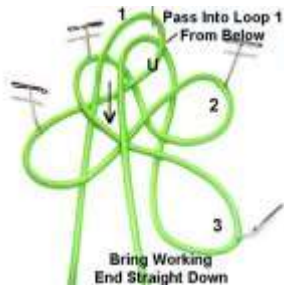
**Step 2:** Bring the working end back to the right, passing **over** the secured end. This forms Bight A, which should be diagonal, as shown in the image. Secure the bight so it's large and open.

Make the second **clockwise** loop on the **right**. Bring the end **under** to form the crossing point. Move it **under** the **first loop** on an angle, as shown.



**Step 3:** Bring the working end down to the **lower right**, to make bight B in the upper left area of the Brocade knot.

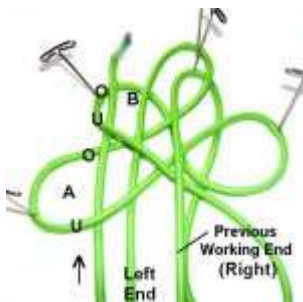
Rotate **clockwise** to make loop 3, at the lower right. Pass the end **under** to make the crossing point. Move the end **under** loop 2.



**Step 4:** Bring the working end **through loop 1**, passing **under** the right edge of it (from below).

Bring it **straight down**, passing **over all** the segments of the Brocade knot. It should rest to the **right** of the secured end.

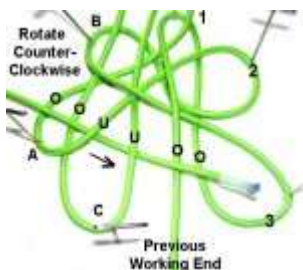
**Design Tip:** Before moving on, make the loops and bights as large as possible so you can see all parts clearly. The second half of the Brocade knot is where all the weaving takes place, and you will need plenty of room to work.



**Step 5:** Now you will use the **left half** of the cord. Pass it through **bight A, under - over**.

Direct it through **bight B under - over** as well.

This creates **bight C**, which is **vertical**, at the bottom left. You can see it better in the next image.



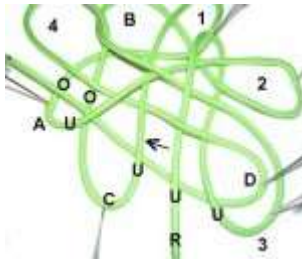
**Step 6:** To make the next loop (4), rotate the end **counter-clockwise**.

Weave the cord through bights A and C, passing **over - over - under - under** the four segments. Bring it **over** the right end, and **over** the edge of loop 3.

**Design Tip:** You are actually passing **through** bights A and C (over - under).

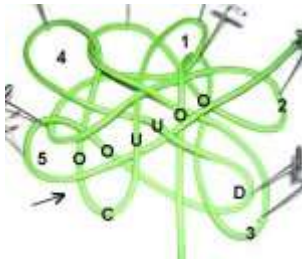
Because they are crossed, the over - under sequence is easier to remember.

Focus on passing the end through one bight at a time if you get lost.



**Step 7:** Bring the cord back to the left, passing **under** loop 3, and **under** the right end.

Weave it through the last four segments, by going **under - under - over - over** (same path as previous step, in reverse).

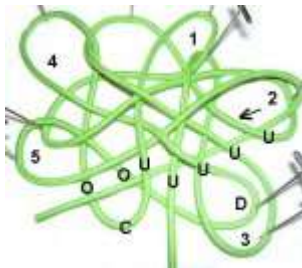


**Step 8:** Rotate the end **counter-clockwise** to make the 5th loop. Weave through the knot again, heading towards **loop 2:**

**Over - over - under - under**, and **over** the remainder

**Design Tip:** Another way to look at this step is that the working end **passthrough** both bight C and D (over - under), and over all the remaining segments.

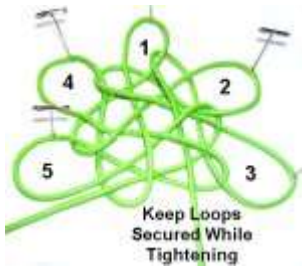
If you get lost, just focus on the two bights individually.



**Step 9:** The final weaving sequence for the Brocade knot starts by passing **under** loop 2.

Direct the end **under** the remaining segments, **except for the last two, which should be over.**

The two segments the end passes **over** are the same as where you started the weaving in the previous step.



**Step 10:** Identify and secure the five loops. Remove the rest of the pins.

Tighten the Brocade knot **in the order the loops were made.**

Keep each loop secured until you are ready to tighten it, then reduce the size and secure it again.

**Design Tip:** You can **tighten the center first** by pulling on the loops. Leave enough room so you can see the path of the cord.

## Chinese Button Knot





**Description:** The Chinese Button Knot is frequently sewn onto traditional Chinese and Asian clothing, to form the closures. It's often combined with other decorative knots, such as the [Pipa Knot](#).

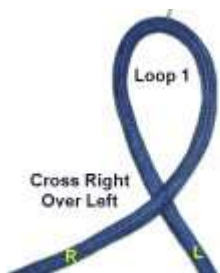
The traditional Chinese Button has five loops, which makes it larger than most button knots. When using it in a Micro-Macrame project, you can pull up a loop to attach it to an earring hook or a jump ring.

See the [Butterfly Earrings](#) to view an example of how it can be used in a Macrame project.

**Button knots are a challenge to tighten, so make sure you have no distractions.**

You should practice constructing this button knot several times, until you can tie it without the instructions. This is one of the basic knots used in Chinese Macrame. In order to create combination knots, practicing is essential.

Note that only a few pins were used in the example shown, to make the details easier to see. **I highly recommend you use a project board and secure each loop as you make them.**



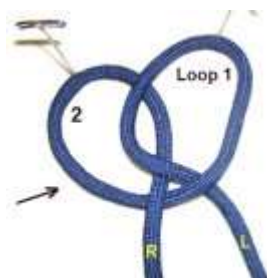
**Step 1:** Secure the center of a 60-inch cord to your board.

Cross the right half over the left to make loop 1.



**Step 2:** Make **loop 2** with the **right half** of the cord, in a **clockwise** direction.

It should rest to the **left** of Loop 1.



**Step 3:** Slide Loop 2 to the right, so it's **under** the left side of Loop 1, creating three spaces.

Secure the **right half** of the cord to your board.





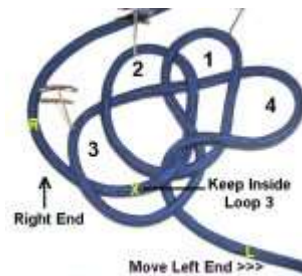
**Step 4:** Use the **left half** next, rotating it **clockwise**, to make **loop 3**.

Pass it **over** the right end at the bottom, and then through loops 1 and 2, **under - over - under - under**.



**Step 5:** To make **loop 4**, pass the left end **over** the first two segments and the right end (top right area of knot).

Direct it **under** the two segments at the lower left.



**Step 6:** Move the **right end** to the upper left area of the Chinese Button knot, passing **over** the left.

The segment with the X should rest **inside** Loop 3.

Move the **left end** to the right, and secure it.



**Step 7:** To make loop 5, bring the right end **under** the top of Loop 1.

Pass it **over** the next 3 segments, and **under** the three segments at the very bottom. The segment with the X in the previous step is indicated in yellow.



**Step 8:** Tighten the Chinese Button knot slowly and carefully, removing the pins as you progress.

Loops 1 - 2 - 5 lead to the **right end**. So you can pull on loop 2 to tighten 1, and then 5, followed by the end.

Loops 3 and 4 lead to the **left end**.

# Chinese Snake Knot



**Description:** The Chinese Snake Knot symbolizes good fortune, due to the fact that you are considered lucky if a snake is found in your home.

The snake is considered the guardian of treasure and riches, so it's not surprising that traditional Chinese craftsmen have a knot named after that creature.

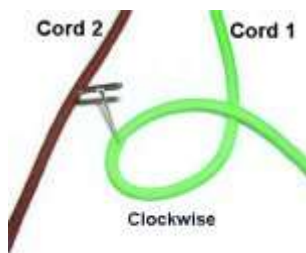
This unique decorative knot is not seen in most Macrame projects. I added these instructions for it because it's so beautiful.

This knot can be used as a purse handle, as part of a handcrafted necklace, or even as a slender belt.

**Paracord** was used in the example shown. Make sure you heat and melt the ends if using this material.

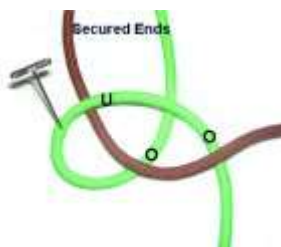
You will need 2 cords, at least 36 inches long, to practice the Chinese Snake knot. The design looks best if there are two colors, but it can be made with one.

In the images, Cord 1 is **green**, and Cord 2 is **brown**.



**Step 1:** Secure one end of both cords to your project board or work surface.

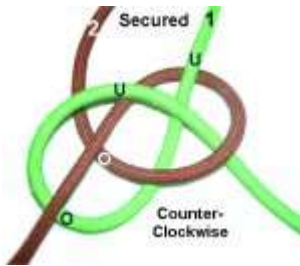
Make the first loop in a **clockwise** direction, using **cord 1**, which should be on the right.



**Step 2:** Loop 2 is made with **cord 2** (left).

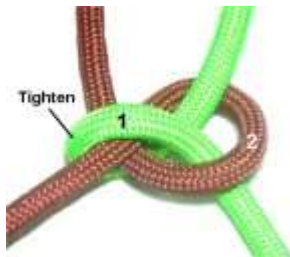
Bring it through the first loop **under - over** (from below).

Pass it **over** the working end of the other cord as well.



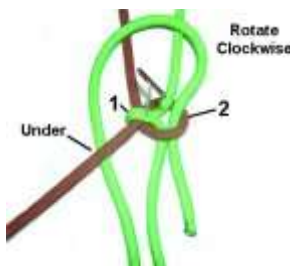
**Step 3:** Rotate **cord 2 counter-clockwise**, bringing the end of it **under** the secured end of **cord 1** (upper right).

Pass it through the first loop, **under - over - over** the three segments.



Always keep the secured tails at the top, and the working ends at the bottom.

Tighten the first loop by pulling on the working end. The second loop should be left a little loose.



**Step 4:** Bring the working end of **cord 1 under** the working end of **cord 2**.

Pass it through Loop 2 **from the top**. This creates the third loop.

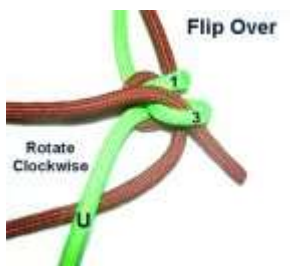
Arrange it so it rests **below** the first loop (on the left).



Before moving on, **tighten loop 2** by pulling on the end.

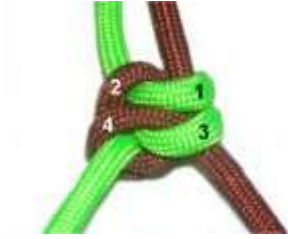
Leave **loop 3** a little loose.

Flip the Chinese Snake Knot over, so the third loop is on the right. (see next image).



**Step 5:** Rotate the end of **cord 2** (on the right) in a **clockwise** direction, passing **under** the working end of **cord 1**.

Direct it through the last loop made (3). Tighten loop 3, leaving the new loop (4) a little loose.



When using two colors to make the Chinese Snake Knot, the loops of each color will be on the **same side**.

Flip the knot again, before moving on to the next step.



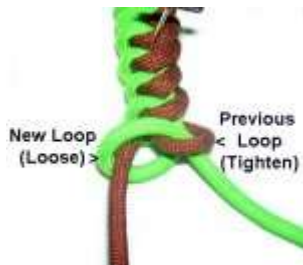
**Step 6:** Repeat this process several more times to make the Chinese Snake Knot longer.

Refer to step 5 as needed, even though the colors will change as you progress.

**Design Tips:** Make sure you **always flip the knot over first**, before making the next loop.

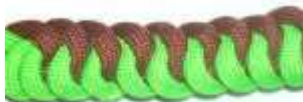
Always use the working cord on the **right**. Pass it **under** the working end of the other cord before you rotate it around **clockwise**.

Always pass the end into the loop previously made, which will be on the **right**.



**You tighten this knot as you progress.**

After the new loop is made, pull on the end of the other cord, to tighten the loop you passed the end through.



This is the completed Chinese Snake Knot.

# Chinese Step Knot



**Description:** The Chinese Step Knot is also known as the **Triple Connection Knot**. The design resembles a bead when completed.

You can use this decorative knot at the tips of the cords during the finishing steps. But it can be tied anywhere on the cord, not just the ends.

This Chinese Macrame knot works best if the cord material is more than 2mm thick, or it doesn't show up well.

It works great if you are using Satin cord, which has a beautiful sheen and is very soft and luxurious. Since this material is slippery, a tight knot is needed in some cases, and this one is a great choice.

You need one piece of cord material, at least 12 inches long (to practice).



**Step 1:** Secure one end to your board. This is called the standing end.

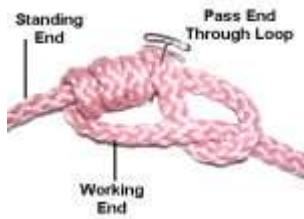
Use the other end to make a **clockwise** loop, so that the crossing point is on the left.

**Make sure you secure the crossed area.**



**Step 2:** Wrap the working end around the standing end **three times**, moving **right to left**.

Keep the coils **firmly** wrapped, or it's harder to tighten the knot.



**Step 3:** Pass the working end through the folded area, which looks like a loop now. Pass it through from **front to back**.

I moved the loop down slightly, so you could see the details better.



Tighten the knot by pulling on the **standing end** first. This reduces the size of the loop.

Pull on the working end to adjust the wrapped area.

## Cross Knot



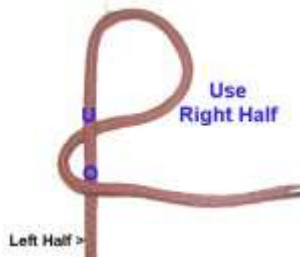
**Description:** The Cross Knot is one of the easiest Chinese Macrame knots. On one side, it looks like a cross, on the other side, a diamond shape. You can tie alternating rows of this decorative knot to make a really beautiful pattern.

The **Diamond Stitch** is a related technique, so I've added it to this page. It's a vintage Macrame knot, and is sometimes called the **Square Stitch**. It's made with two separate cords, and does not have a loop at the top.

The **Winged Cross** is another interesting variation, and is also described below.



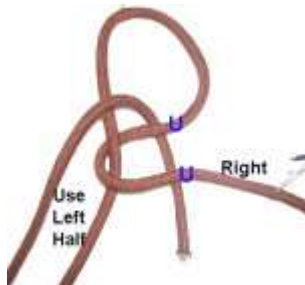
**Step 1:** Fold one cord in half, and secure it to your board. Mentally label the right and left halves.



**Step 2:** Move the **right half** of the cord to the left, **under** the left half.

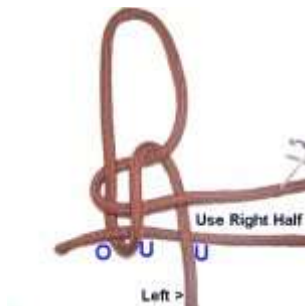
Bring it back to the right, passing **over** the left half.

Secure it to your board, keeping it horizontal.



**Step 3:** Move the **left half** upward, to the loop at the top, rotating clockwise.

Bring it back down, passing **under** both segments of the right half. Secure it to your board.



**Step 4:** Move the **right half** horizontally, to the left.

Pass **under - under - over** the three segments.



Tighten the Cross Knot by pulling on the ends.  
Shorten the loop to the size you need.



## Diamond Stitch





**Description:** The Diamond Stitch is similar to the design on the **back** of the Cross Knot.

It's also similar to a [Lanyard knot](#), but it's constructed so you can use it in rows, rather than stacking the knots on top of one another.

See the [Vintage Basket](#), and the [Diamond Plant Hanger](#), which both feature this unique decorative knot.

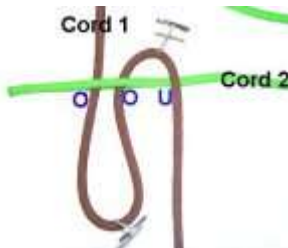


**Step 1:** To practice, secure one end of a cord to your project board, at the top. It should be vertical.

Fold the cord to make two bights.

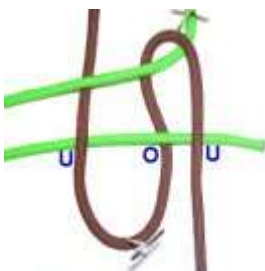
The first one should be downward, and the other upward. Secure both to your board.

**Design Tip:** The left cord is **vertical** and the right one is **always horizontal**. That's an important key to remember when practicing this technique.



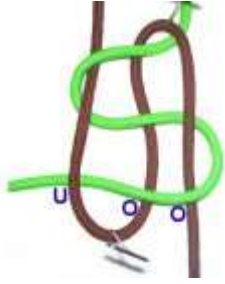
**Step 2:** Secure the second cord to your board, at the top. It should be placed to the right of cord 1.

Move it **right to left**, passing **under - over - over** the three segments.



**Step 3:** Move down slightly, and pass it through the bights from **left to right**.

It should go **under - over - under** the three segments.



**Step 4:** Bring the cord back to the left.

The weaving sequence is **over - over - under**.



Gradually tighten the Diamond Stitch by pulling on the ends.

In a Macrame project, you may not be able to pull on the ends at the top, if they were used to tie other knots.



The nice thing about the Diamond Stitch is that you can create a sennit, like the one shown.

You can also tie the knots in an alternating pattern, similar to [Alternating Square Knots](#).



## Winged Cross Knot

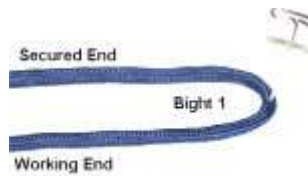


Back -- Cross

Front -- Square

**Description:** The Winged Cross Knot looks great on both the front and the back. One side has a cross shape, and the other a square.

This knot is made differently than the other variations, since there are two loops.



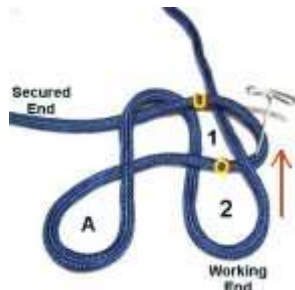
**Step 1:** Fold a 45-inch cord in half to form a bight. Lay it on your work surface horizontally.

The working end will be the segment on the **bottom**, so secure the other end.



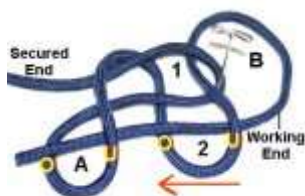
**Step 2:** Bring the working end down and form a **counter-clockwise** loop (A). Direct the end upward, passing **over** the secured end.

Bring it down, passing **under both segments** of Bight 1. The end should rest to the **right** of Loop A when you are finished.



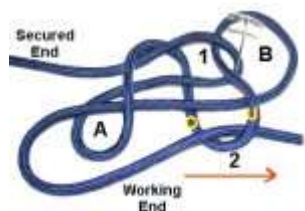
**Step 3:** Bring the working end back up, passing through Bight 1 **from the top (over - under)**.

This creates Bight 2, which is vertical.



**Step 4:** Move the working end to make a **clockwise** loop (B), in the upper right area of the Winged Cross Knot.

Weave it through Bight 2 and Loop A by going **under - over - under - over**, as you bring it to the left.



**Step 5:** Bring the working end back to the right side of the knot, passing through **Bight 2** from the top (**over - under**).

Remove most of the pins, except for those on the **two loops (A and B)**.



Front -- Square

Tighten the center of the Winged Cross Knot by pulling on the ends and loops.

Adjust the size of the loops by following the path of the cord to remove the slack.



Back -- Cross

## Double Connection Knot



The Double Connection Knot is used in combination with other Chinese Macrame knots to form elaborate designs.

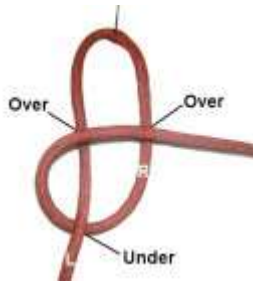
The primary purpose for this decorative knot is to make a **stable** loop, with the two ends dangling below. It's similar to a [Linked Overhand knot](#), but is made with only 1 cord.

This technique could be used in just about any Macrame project where you will be hanging something, such as a plant hanger or wall decoration. You can also use it to secure the hooks in Micro-Macrame earring designs.



**Step 1:** To practice, you need one cord at least 18 inches long. Fold it in half, and secure it to your work surface, so the center is at the top.

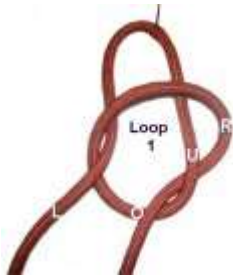
Mentally label the ends right and left.



**Step 2:** Make a **clockwise** loop with the **right** half:

Pass **under** the left half of the cord.

Further up, closer to the fold, pass **over** both segments.



**Step 3:** Direct the **right** end of the cord through the loop **under - over** to complete the first Overhand knot.

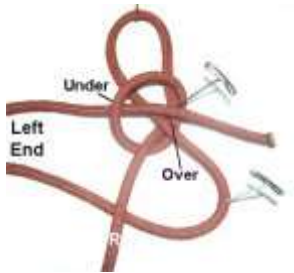
Tighten the knot **slightly** by pulling on the ends.

Adjust the folded area at the top of the knot so it's the size you need for your Macrame project. Secure the **right half** to your board.



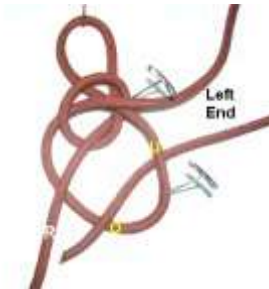
**Step 4:** To make the second loop, pull the **left half** of the cord towards the right as shown, and secure it.

Pass it **under** the right end of the cord, as you bring it towards the left.



**Step 5:** Pass the left end through the first knot, heading left to right.

Bring it through from **below (under - over)**.



**Step 6:** Direct the left end down, passing through the second loop from **below (under - over)**.



To tighten the Double Connection knot, pull both ends **while holding the loop steady**.

Adjust the size of the loop when the knot is still loose, and then tighten it completely.



The completed knot should be crossed in the front and in the back.

## Hanger Knot



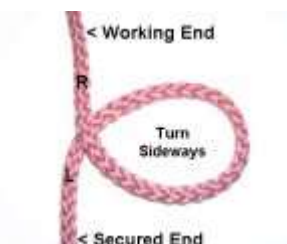
**Description:** The Hanger Knot is a Chinese Macrame technique that is used for decoration, or to form a stable loop. It's similar to the [Linked Overhand Knots](#), but is tied with only one cord.

There are two variations described below. One has a single loop at the top, and the other is winged, with three loops.

This decorative knot is sometimes seen in texts devoted to Chinese knots under the name **True Lover's Knot**.

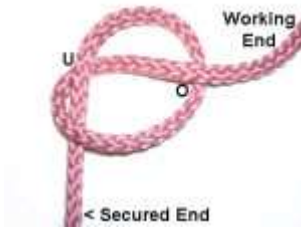
The winged variation is sometimes used when making wind chimes and other items that need to dangle from a strong knot.

In Macrame for Kids, see the [Satin Dragonfly](#), which features this decorative knot.



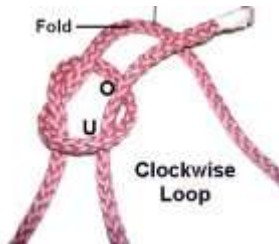
Make a loop in the center of the cord, crossing right over left. Turn the loop **sideways**, as shown.

Secure the **left half**, which should be at the **bottom**. The right half is the working end.



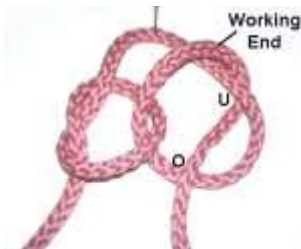
**Step 2:** Bring the working end through the loop, from **below** (under - over).

This is the first Overhand knot. **Don't tighten it yet.**



**Step 3:** Bring the working end up slightly, and then fold it, as you bring it back down. Make a **clockwise** loop with the working end.

As you do so, bring the end through the first Overhand knot, from **below** (under - over).



Complete the second Overhand knot by directing the working end through the second loop from below.



**Step 4:** As you tighten the knot, leave the top loop secured. Reduce the size of each Overhand Knot gradually, adjusting the upper loop as needed.

Make sure the crossing points remain in position and that you don't twist them.



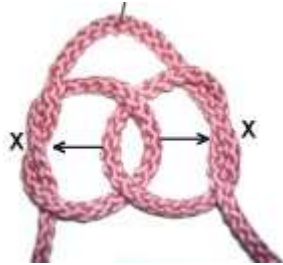
## Winged Hanger Knot

This variation starts off the exact same way as the knot above. So follow the



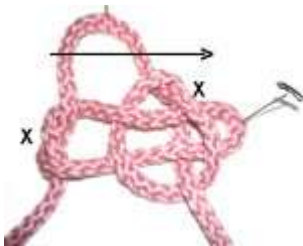
directions for steps 1 - 3.

**Do not tighten the two Overhand knots.** Leave them large and open so you can locate the different areas.



Identify the crossing points, which are marked with an X in this image. Locate the **crook** of both loops, which is the curved area. That's the portion in the center of the knot.

The arrows show the direction the crooks will be pulled in the following steps.



Pull the crook of the **left** Overhand knot **through** the crossed area on the **right**.



This is a closer view. The crook is pulled **under** the segment coming from the top of the Hanger knot.

It goes **over** the segment that's leading to the end of the cord (at the bottom).

Secure the cord once you have pulled it through.



Direct the crook of the **right** Overhand knot through the crossed area at the **left**.



Keep the top loop secured and tighten the Hanger knot by pulling on the ends and wings.

You may need to work out the slack if the loops become too large for your project.

# Plafond Knot



**Description:** The Plafond Knot is an interesting decorative knot used in Chinese Macrame.

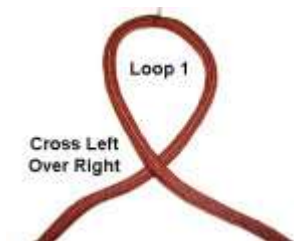
As you tie it, the central section forms a woven square. There are loops surrounding it, much like a frame.

This Macrame knot can be used as a unique way to hang something, since there is a loop at the top.

I've seen it used as a pendant for a necklace with a Chinese design, as well as for Wind Chimes and Key Rings.

You need one piece of cord material at least 60 inches long to practice the Plafond Knot.

Use a **Project Board** and pins to secure the loops.



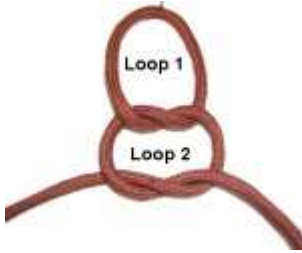
**Step 1:** Fold the cord in half and cross the left half over the right.



Bring the left end into the loop from below (under-over).

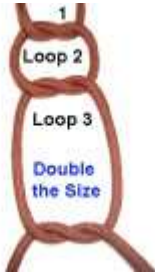
This loop should be **2 inches** from top to bottom.

**Do not tighten it.**



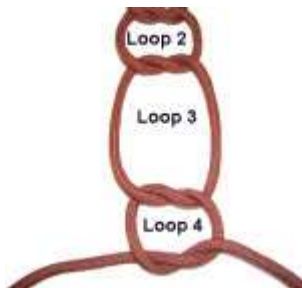
**Step 2:** Make a second loop the same way.

Measure the distance between the crossed areas. It should be **1.5 inches**.

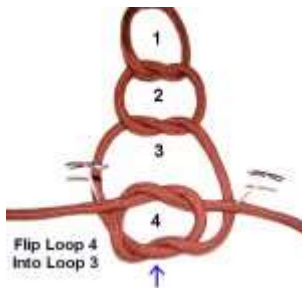


Measure down **3 inches**, and then tie the next knot.

It's important that this loop be double the size of the one above it.



The fourth loop should be **1.5 inches** in size, the same as loop 2.



**Step 3:** Flip **Loop 4** upward, so it rests **inside** Loop 3 (the largest loop).

Secure both ends.



**Step 4:** Take hold of **Loop 1** at the top of the Plafond knot, and fold it down to Loop 4.

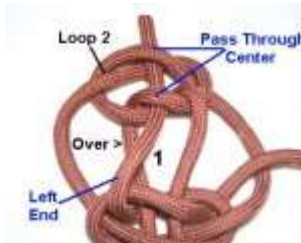
Pass it through the **center** of the first crossed area.

It will rest **over** the segment leading to the left end, and **under** the one leading to the right end.



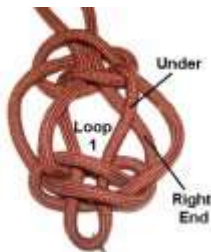
**Step 5:** Pull Loop 1 down a little further, passing through the center of the second crossed area, the same as in step 4.

Make sure **Loop 2** is resting **inside** Loop 3 before moving on to the next step (see photo below).



**Step 6:** Bring the **left end over** the **left** side of Loop 1, and through both crossed areas of Loop 2, at the top.

This is similar to what you did in steps 4 and 5, only you are using the **ends** instead.



**Step 7:** Move the **right end under** the right portion of Loop 1, and through the two crossed areas at the top of the Plafond knot.

The two ends should rest side by side.



**Step 8:** This photo shows the Square area in the center of the knot, which tightens as you pull on the right and left sides of Loop 3.

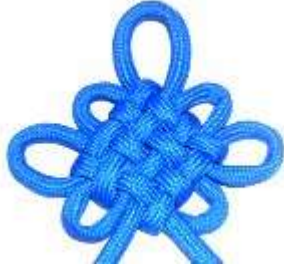
You should tighten that area first.



Tighten the rest of the knot gradually, starting with the loop at the top. Remove the slack a little at a time, until the knot is rectangular in shape.

The loop at the top can be any size. The ends can be fused to the back, or used for other knots.

# Mystic Knot



**Description:** The Chinese Mystic Knot is also known as the **Pan Chang Knot**. It represents the endless cycle of nature.

This decorative knot is one of the most highly used techniques in Chinese Macrame, and is also the most complex.

This interesting design can be used as part of a variety of Macrame projects, from a clasp for a purse, to a pendant in a necklace.

**Click on the images if you need to see the details more clearly.**

I will be using terms you may not be familiar with:

- **Bight** = Narrow Fold
- **Loop** = Circular, and has a crossing point

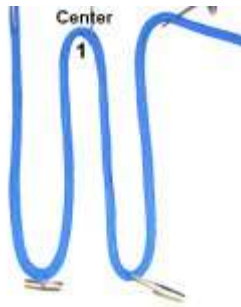
Look them up in the [Macrame Dictionary](#), if you need more information.

You will need a **Project Board** and pins to help you secure the cords.

Secure **every loop and bight** as you progress, because it's easy to get lost if you don't.

The numbers in the images (1 - 7) form the loops around the woven area in the center of the knot.

Make sure you **mark** them in some manner, so you can identify each one easily. Using a different kind of pin for those areas is really helpful.



**Step 1:** Secure the center of a **3-yard cord** to your board. Create one **bight** with each end, heading **downward**.

The center bight (1) will be along the outside edge, so mark it in some way.

I recommend these bights be at least **6 inches** from top to bottom, so you have room to work.

### Step 2

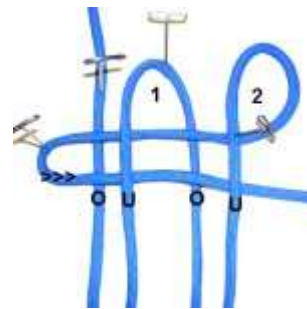
<< Rotate the right end **clockwise**, to make a loop (2). Weave the end from right to left, as follows:



**(Under - over - under - over)**

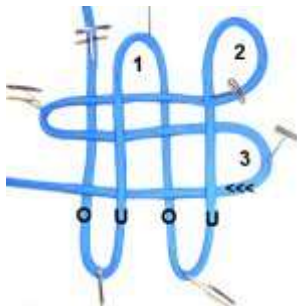
Weave the end to the right >>

**(Over - under - over - under)**



### Step 3

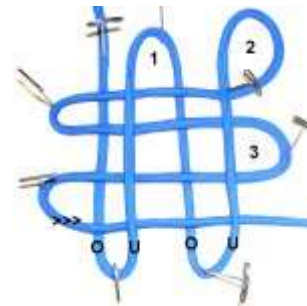
<< To make the next bight, weave the end back to the left.



**(Under - over - under - over)**

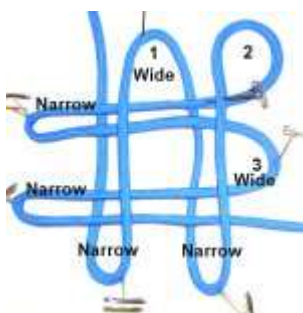
To make the final bight, bring the end back to the right. >>

**(Over - under - over - under)**



The bight with the fold on the right side (3) will be on the **outside** of the knot when it's completed, so mark it.

You will not use the right end for the remainder of the Mystic Knot, so secure it off to the right side.



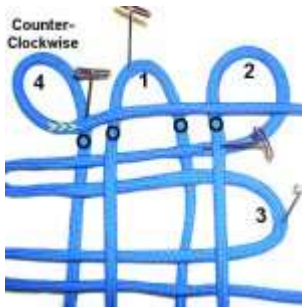
Before you move on, arrange the cord so that the bight at the center (1) is **wider** than the others.

Do the same with the bight that's folded on the right (3).

The other 4 bights should be narrow.



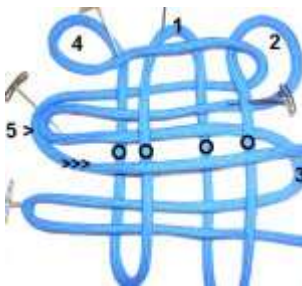
### Step 4



<< Rotate the left end to make a **counter-clockwise** loop (4). Move the end to the right, at the **top** of the Mystic Knot, passing **over** all the vertical segments.

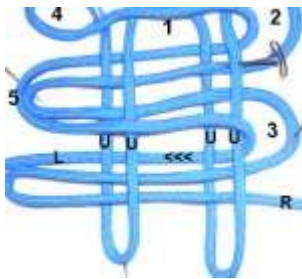


Bring it back to the left, **under** all the vertical segments. >>



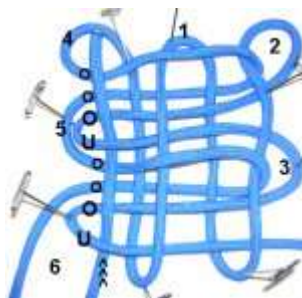
**Step 5:** Move the left end around the **outside** of the horizontal bight closest to the top, and mark it (5).

Bring it to the right, passing **over** all the vertical segments. It should rest **inside** the wide bight (3).



**Step 6:** Move the end back to the left, passing **under** all the vertical segments.

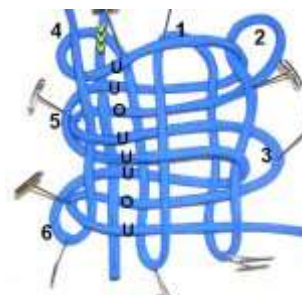
The bight you just made in steps 5 - 6 nestles inside the bight labeled 3.



**Step 7:** Rotate the end **counter-clockwise** to make a loop (6) at the **lower left** area of the Mystic knot. Weave it vertically, towards the top, as follows:

**Under - over x 3 - under - over x 3**

Another way to view this important step is to pass **under - over both narrow bights created in step 3**. Pass **over** the remaining segments.

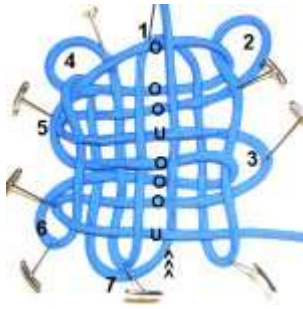


Bring the end down, weaving through the segments as follows:

**Under x 2 - over - under x 3 - over - under**

Another way to view this step is to pass **over - under both narrow bights created in step 3**. Pass **under** the remaining segments.

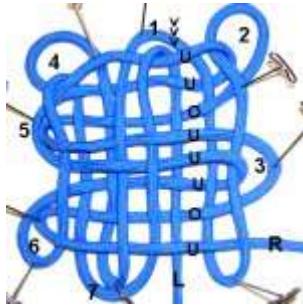




**Step 8:** Move the left end around the **outside** of the bight at the lower left. This is the final loop along the outside of the Mystic Knot, so mark it.

Weave the same as in step 7, inside the wide bight in the center (1), heading to the top.

**Under - over x 3 - under - over x 3**



Bring the end down, weaving through the segments as follows:

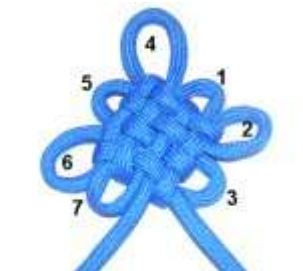
**Under x 2 - over - under x 3 - over - under.**

This is the same as in step 7.



**Step 9:** Rotate your board so loop 4 is at the top. Leave the pins on the **marked areas at all times.**

Start by pulling on each loop (or bight), to tighten the center. The loops will become quite large, so you will need to adjust the pins. (see below)



Reduce the size of the loops **in the order they were made.**

Loop 4 should be 1-inch in size. Loops 2 and 3 should be 1/2-inch. Bights 1, 3, 5, 7 should be 1/4-inch.

These sizes can be changed as needed.

## Pagoda Knot



**Description:** The Pagoda Knot is based on the sacred architectural designs commonly seen in Asian temples and places of worship.

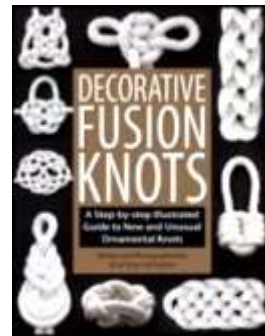
It's a beautiful decorative knot that incorporates elements of the [Celtic Triangle Knot](#) along with woven elements.

This knot makes a great Macrame pendant, since the ends come out at the top. In the image above, I left it a little loose, so you could see the design more clearly.

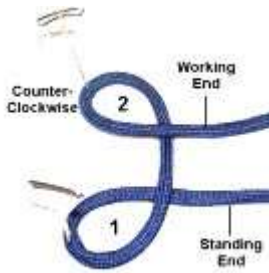
Paracord was used in the example shown. When using this material, melt the ends with a flame to prepare it for knotting.

This knot is in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#), written by JD Lenzen.

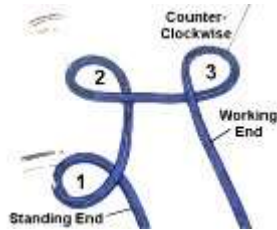
Click on the link or image to visit his website, where you will find video tutorials for many combination knots like this one.



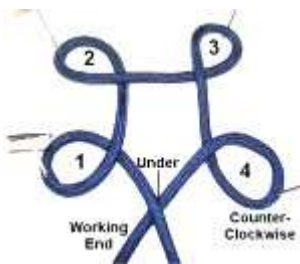
**Step 1:** Create the first **counter-clockwise** loop in the center of a 60-inch cord.



**Step 2:** Make a second **counter-clockwise** loop, so it rests **above** Loop 1 as shown.

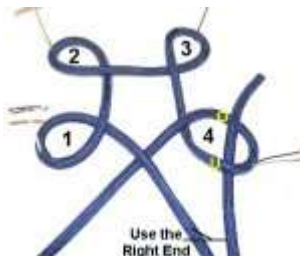


**Step 3:** Make the third **counter-clockwise** loop, positioning it to the **right** of Loop 2.

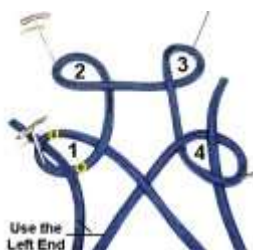


**Step 4:** The fourth **counter-clockwise** loop should be positioned to the **right** of Loop 1, and **below** Loop 3. The design should look like a square.

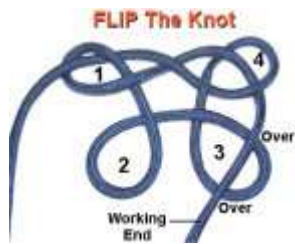
Pass the working end (right) **under** the standing end (left), so they are crossed.



**Step 5:** Pass the end that is now on the **right**, through Loop 4, from **below** (under - over).

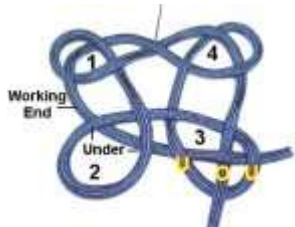


**Step 6:** Pass the end that's resting on the **left**, through Loop 1, from **above** (over - under).



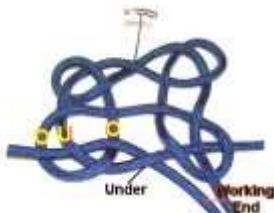
**Step 7: Flip the knot over**, so Loops 1 and 4 are at the top, and the entire design is **upside down**.

Bring the end on the **right** down, so it passes **over** Loop 3.



**Step 8:** Bring the **left end** down to Loop 2, and pass under it.

Weave it through **Loop 3**, **under - over - under** the three segments.



**Step 9:** Move the **right end** again, passing **under** the left end, in the lower central area of the Pagoda knot.

Weave it through **Loop 2**, **over - under - over** the three segments.



**Step 10: Flip the design over**, so the ends are at the top.

Tighten the Pagoda Knot gradually, removing the slack from the loops **in the order they were made**.

## Pipa Knot



**Description:** The Pipa Knot is a unique Chinese Macramé knot that is based on the figure 8 shape.

It's been used frequently on ancient Oriental clothing as a clasp as well as for

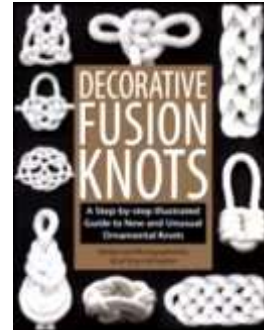
decoration. So this historical knot has been around for a long time.

This decorative knot makes a great pendant for jewelry, and can also be used to make very unique earrings.

I searched the internet for years to find the instructions to make this knot.

I finally found it in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#), written by JD Lenzen

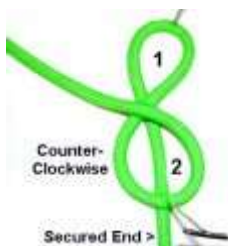
Be sure to click on the link or image to visit his knot gallery, where you can find video tutorials for many unusual knots.



**Step 1:** You will need one cord, at least 36 inches long. Be sure to use a project board and pins the first few times you create the Pipa knot.

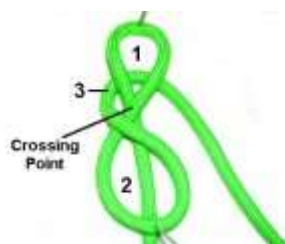


Secure the **right end** of the cord to your board. Move up 6 inches and make a **clockwise** loop (1).



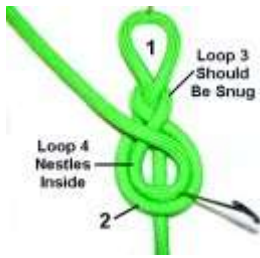
**Step 2:** Make a second loop just below, moving in a **counter-clockwise** direction. It should rest **on top** of the secured end of the cord.

Loop 2 needs to be slightly larger than Loop 1.



**Step 3:** At the top of the Pipa knot, bring the working end **under** Loop 1, moving **clockwise**. Position it just above the crossing point of Loop A.

Mentally label it Loop 3.



**Step 4:** Loop 4 is made in a **counter-clockwise** direction.

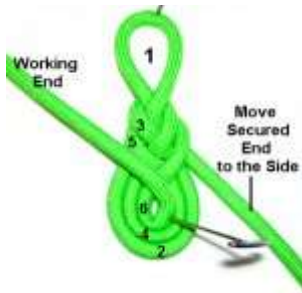
It should nestle **inside** Loop 2 (at the bottom).

Make sure Loop 3 is snugly wrapped around Loop 1 at the top, before moving on.



**Step 5:** Bring the working end up to the top of the knot, and pass it behind Loop 1, heading **clockwise**.

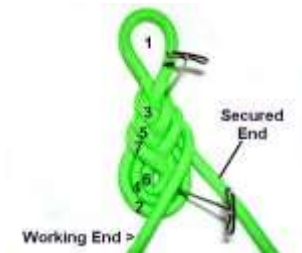
Make sure it rests **below Loop 3** (closer to the loops at the bottom). Mentally label it Loop 5.



**Step 6:** Pull the working end so Loop 5 is snug, and then make another **counter-clockwise** loop at the bottom.

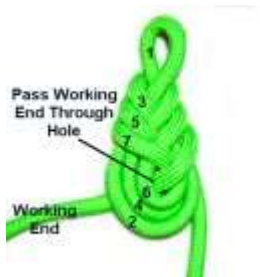
Position it **inside** Loop 4.

Move the secured end to the side before completing the next step.



**Step 7:** Bring the working end to the top, and make the next **clockwise** loop (7).

It should rest **below Loop 5** (closer to the bottom loops).



**Step 8:** As you bring the working end towards the bottom, make sure Loop 7 is snug.

Pass the working end **through the opening inside Loop 6**.

Make sure you hold the Pipa knot as flat as possible, if you need to pick it up to complete this step.



**Step 9:** To tighten the knot, first pull on **all three lower loops**. This will tighten the loops at the top. Make sure you keep them as flat as possible.

The second step is to pull on the **ends** as well as **Loop 1** to tighten the lower loops.



Here's the completed Pipa Knot.

The ends are fused to the back with fabric or craft glue.

When using Paracord, melt the cut areas with a flame.

## Crown Knot



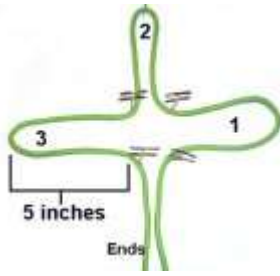
**Description:** The Chinese Crown Knot is sometimes called the **Shamrock Knot**. It has several loops along the outside that resemble flower petals, so has been called the **Chinese Flower** in some books.

This design is very similar to a **Lanyard Knot**, which is a basic Macrame knot. Those are sometimes called Crown knots, too, but don't have the loops.

You can create this beautiful Macrame knot with any number of loops, so I have included two variations of this interesting knot for you to try.

You will need a Project board and pins. To practice, you need one cord at least 72 inches long (2 yards). Using 2mm to 4mm material will make the knot less bulky. In the images, I used **3mm Paracord** material.

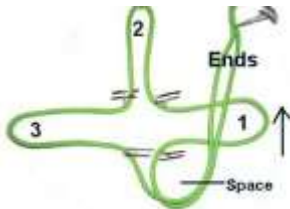




**Step 1:** Fold the cord in half, and secure it to your board, so the ends are at the bottom.

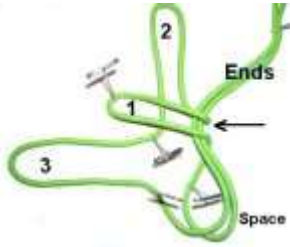
Fold the cord to make bights on the right and left, as shown. The size of each bights should be at least 5 inches.

Mentally label the three areas as shown.



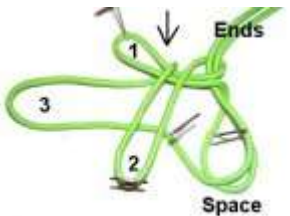
**Step 2:** Move the two **ends counter-clockwise**, so they pass **over bight 1**. They should come to rest to the right of bight 2.

Make sure you leave a **space** as shown.



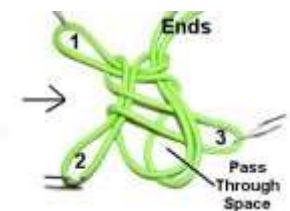
**Step 3:** Move **bight 1** to the left, folding it **over** the 2nd bight. It will automatically pass over the ends.

Secure it on the left.



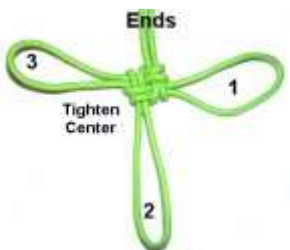
**Step 4:** Move **bight 2 downward**, over bight 3.

Secure it to your board.



**Step 5:** Move **bight 3** towards the **right**.

Pass **through** the space formed back in step 2, from the top (**over - under**).



**Step 6:** Tighten the first half of the Crown knot by pulling on the **bights**. Make sure none of the coils overlap, and the knot is neat.

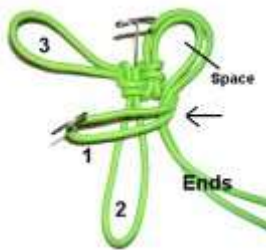
Arrange it on your board, so the ends are at the top. Mentally re-number the bights as shown.



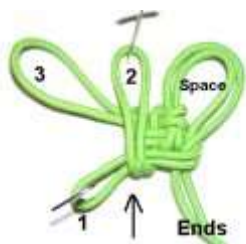
**Step 7:** The second half of the knot is made by rotating **clockwise**.

Move the **ends** downward, passing **over** bight 1.

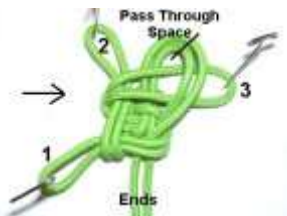
**Remember to leave a small space.**



**Step 8:** Move **bight 1** to the **right**, passing over bight 2.



**Step 9:** Move **bight 2** towards the **top**, passing over bight 3.



**Step 10:** Move **bight 3** to the **right**, and pass it through the space from the top (**over - under**).



**Step 11:** Tighten the knot and reduce the size of the **second** set of loops one at a time.

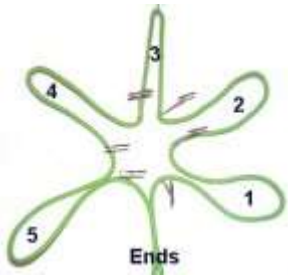
While you do so, pull on the areas made in the first half of the Crown knot. Those four loops should be smaller, and rest between the second set of loops.



## Five Loop Crown Knot



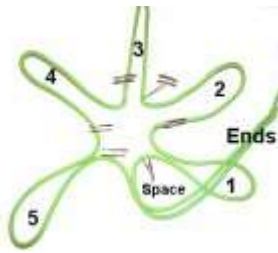
To make the Chinese Crown with 5 outer loops, you'll need one cord at least 90 inches long. Make sure you use a large project board and pins.



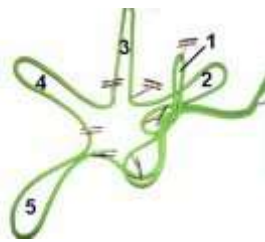
**Step 1:** Set up the bights as you did in the previous instructions. Make five of them, so the **ends** are at the bottom. The first two bights are on the right, and the third is at the top. The final two are on the left.

Mentally number the bights as shown.

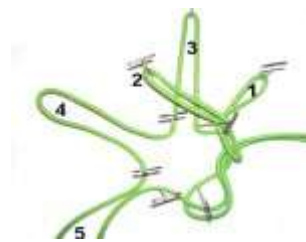
**Steps 2 - 7:** Here is how the bights should be positioned when you fold them over the next one in line:



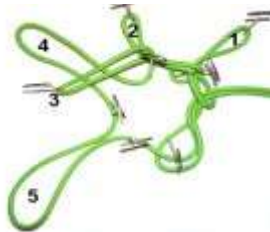
**Ends Over Bight 1**



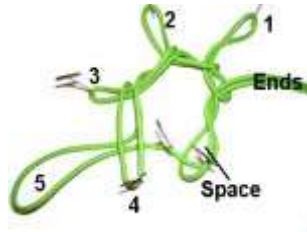
**Bight 1 Over Bight 2**



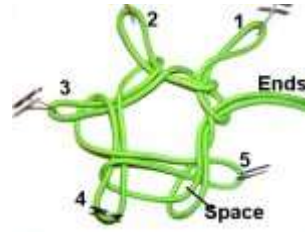
**Bight 2 Over Bight 3**



**Bight 3 Over Bight 4**



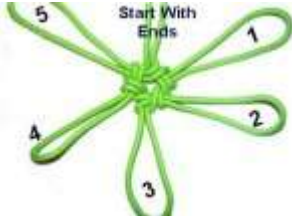
**Bight 4 Over Bight 5**



**Bight 5 Through Space**



Tighten the first half of the Crown knot gradually, one bight at a time.



**Step 8:** Reposition the design, so the ends are at the **top**. Make the second half of the Crown Knot, moving the ends first, and then one bight at a time.

You'll be moving in a **clockwise** direction.



**Step 9:** Tighten the second knot, which results in the five long loops in this image.

As you adjust their size, pull on the segments of the cord **between** them to make the six smaller loops a little larger. So you end up with a total of 11 loops.

## Crown Designs



**Good Luck Spiral**



**Triskelion Knot**

**Description:** These Crown Designs are variations of the [Chinese Crown Knot](#).

The **Triskelion Knot** has three loops arranged in a triangular shape.

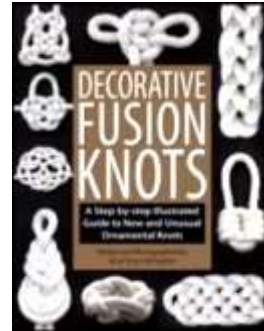
The **Good Luck Spiral** is round or oval shaped, with triangular elements in the center.

Both of these decorative knots make great focal points for jewelry designs and are easy to tie.

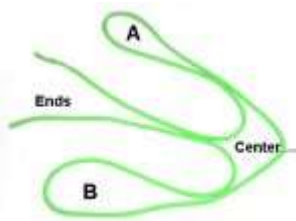
The key to constructing these Crown knots is to make sure you **curve** the segments rather than fold them. Also, keep everything flat when you create the loops and curves. Use a project board and pins to help you control the loops.

These designs were found in a book called [Decorative Fusion Knots](#), written by **J. D. Lenzen**.

Be sure to visit his website, by clicking on the link or image. His knot gallery contains video tutorials for a variety of very unique and appealing designs.

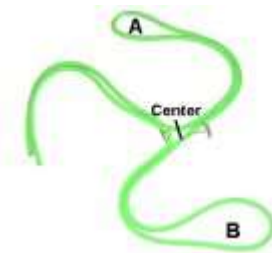


## Good Luck Spiral



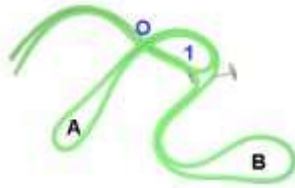
**Step 1:** Secure the center of a 60-inch cord to your board. Place it to your right, with the **ends on the left**.

Pick up the ends and **push** them right, towards the center, forming **two bights**.



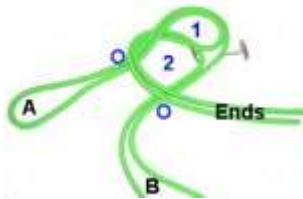
**Step 2:** Position the three segments as shown, with the ends on the left.

Bight A should be at the top, and bight B at the bottom.



**Step 3:** Curve bight A down towards the left, passing **over** the two ends.

The **space** that forms should be labeled #1.



**Step 4:** Curve the **ends** towards the right. They should pass **over** both bights.

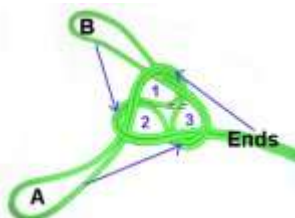
The **space** that is formed should be labeled #2.



**Step 5:** Curve **bight B over** the ends, heading towards the top.

Direct it through **space 1 over - under** (from the top).

This forms space #3.



**Step 5:** Pull on the ends and bights to tighten the center slightly.

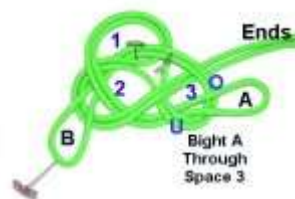
The arrows in this image show you which spaces each segment will be passed through in the next three steps.



**Step 6:** Move **bight B** downward. Pass it through **space 2, under - over** (from below).

**Do not cross bight B over bight A.**

Bight B should rest **beside** it, to the left.



**Step 7:** Move **bight A** through **space 3** (heading right), **from below**.

Bight A should rest **below the ends**, and **should not cross over them**.



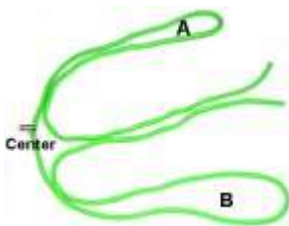


**Step 8:** Move the **ends** through **space 1**, from **below**.

Both Crown Designs on this page need to be tightened **gradually**, by pulling on the ends and bights.

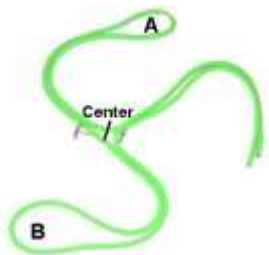


## Triskelion Knot



Crown designs like the Triskelion Knot require long cords, at least 60 inches long.

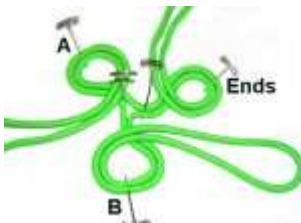
Locate the center and secure it on your **left**. Pick up the ends and **push** them towards the center, forming two bights. Adjust the three segments so they are the same size.



**Step 2:** Position the three segments so they curve as shown.

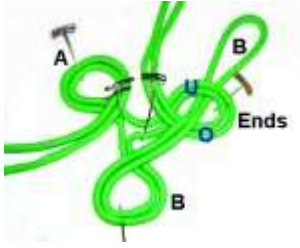
Segment A is at the top, and the ends are on the right. Segment B is at the bottom.

Keep the center secured.



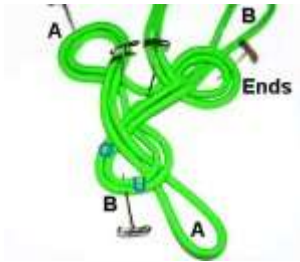
**Step 3:** Make three **clockwise loops** with the two bights and the ends.





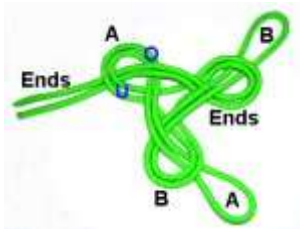
**Step 4:** Move **bight B** through the loop formed by the **ends**, which is on the right.

Make sure it goes in from the **top (over - under)**.



**Step 5:** Move **bight A** through the loop made by **bight B**, which is at the bottom.

Make sure it goes in from the top.



**Step 6:** Pass the **ends** through the loop formed by **bight A**, on the upper left.

Tighten and balance the Triskelion Knot by pulling on the bights and ends.

## Tea Cup Knot

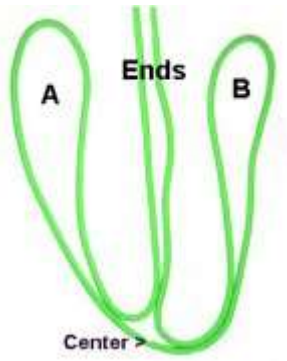


**Description:** The Tea Cup Knot is a 3-D design that can actually hold something small. It stands up above a surface. I left the ends in the image above so you could see that it's not flat, which makes it very unique.

The design starts out similar to the [Good Luck Spiral](#), which is a variation of the [Chinese Crown Knot](#).

This cup-shaped decorative knot is a fun project on it's own, but it can also be used as part of Macrame flower designs. Another option is to use it as a necklace pendant, after you place a **focal bead** or other decoration inside. You can actually make it tight enough to hold a stone.

Make sure you use a project board and pins to help control the loops.



**Step 1:** Fold a 72-inch cord in half and secure it at the center, with the ends heading **upward**. Match the ends and **push** them down, towards the center, forming two bights.

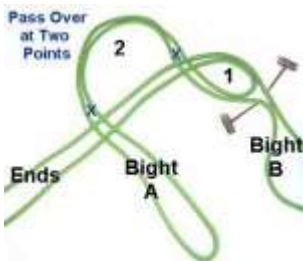
Make sure all three segments are the same size. Mentally label them as shown.

Secure the areas at the center with pins or tape.



**Step 2:** Arrange the segments so the ends are at the top.

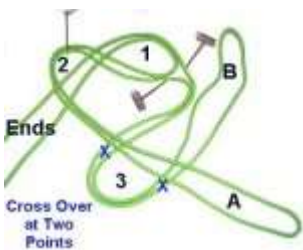
Bight A should be at the lower left, and bight B on the lower right.



**Step 3:** Curve **bight A** and **push it upwards** slightly.

Bring the **ends** down, passing them **over** bight A at **two points (blue X)**.

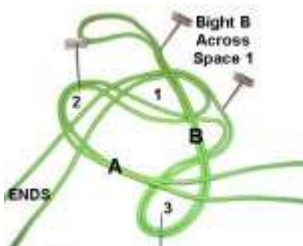
Mentally number the area made by curving the ends as **space 1**. The area at the curve of bight A is **space 2**.



**Step 4:** Move **bight B** backwards slightly and curve it, so it's closer to the ends.

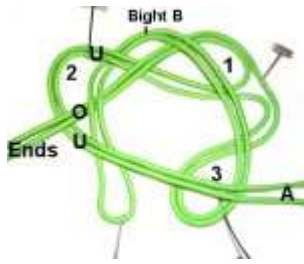
Bring **bight A** across bight B, so it passes **over** at **two points (blue X)**.

Mentally label the area as **space 3**.



**Step 5:** Bring **bight B** to the top of the Tea Cup Knot.

**Move it across space 1 (over).**



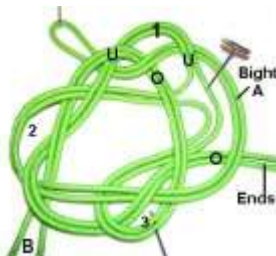
**Step 6:** Move **bight B** down to **space 2** on the left.

Weave **under - over - under** the three segments in that area, which includes a portion of the ends as well as bight A.



**Step 7:** Move the **ends** to the right, passing **over bight B**.

Weave through **space 3**, **under - over - under**.



**Step 8:** Bring **bight A** over the ends, which are on the right. Move it up to **space 1**.

Weave **under - over - under**, moving right to left.

Make sure it does not pass over the segment of bight A in that area; stay above it.



**Step 9:** Tighten the Tea Cup Knot gradually, removing the slack from one area at a time.

As you progress, form the knot into a cup by pushing down on the **inside**.



**Step 10:** Flip the knot so it's upside down. Cross the two **bights**, left over right.



**Step 11:** Move the **ends over** the bight resting on your right.

Pass them **under** the other bight, close to the back of the knot.



**Step 12:** Pull on the bights and ends so the triangular shape is tightened firmly against the bottom of the Tea Cup Knot.



You can now use the ends and bights as attachment points for other cords.

Another option is to finish off the ends/bights by tucking them into the lower part of the Tea Cup Knot. Add glue and cut off any excess material.

## Maedate Knot



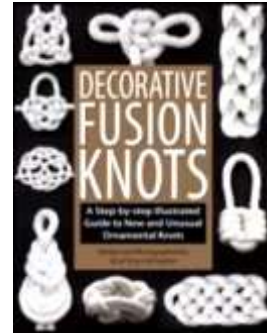
**Description:** This Maedate Knot represents the insignia, or crest, on a Samurai kabuto (helmet). Round forms like this knot represent the sun or moon.

This decorative knot is very unique and makes a unique decoration for Macrame projects. Try using it as it was intended; to adorn the front of a hat design. You could also use it as part of a Micro-Macrame necklace.

In the example shown, I used Paracord (nylon). When using this material be sure to melt the ends to prepare the cord.

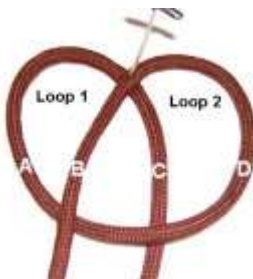
After searching a long time, I finally found this in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#) written by **J. D. Lenzen**.

Be sure to visit his website, by clicking on the link or image. His knot gallery contains tutorials for a variety of very unique designs.



**Step 1:** Start by making a loop in the center of a 36-inch cord.

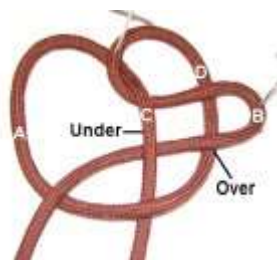
The left end should pass over the right to make the crossing point.



**Step 2:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the end **now on the right**. Arrange it so it's resting on top of the first loop, slightly to the right.

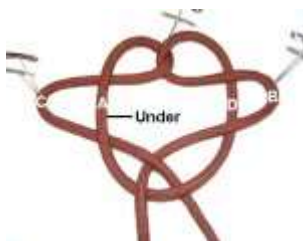
There should be three obvious spaces.

Mentally label the four segments A - D, moving left to right.



**Step 3:** Make a bight with **segment B**, and direct it **under** segment C, heading **right**.

Bring it **over** segment D, and secure it on the right.



**Step 3:** Make a bight with **segment C**, and direct it **left**, passing **under** segment A.



**Step 5:** Tighten the knot by pulling on the bights first.

Once the center is the size you want, pull on each end to reduce the size of the bights.

## Celtic Button Knot



**Celtic Button**



**Sliding Celtic Button**

**Description:** The Celtic Button Knot is a historic decorative knot that is very well known. It's easy to tie, but **tightening** it is the real challenge.

Be sure you have no distractions when you practice. I also recommend you use a project board and pins.

Button Knots can be used for decorations and jewelry. They can also be used as finishing knots to hide the ends of cords.

The **Sliding Celtic Button** is also described below. It's tied around a holding cord, which means it can be positioned where you need it.

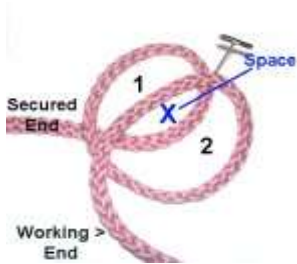
To view a Macrame project featuring this knot, see the [Celtic Button Necklace](#).



**Step 1:** You need one 36-inch cord to practice. Secure the **left end** to your working surface with pins or tape.

Make a **counter-clockwise** loop, passing the working end **over** the secured end, as you bring it towards the right.





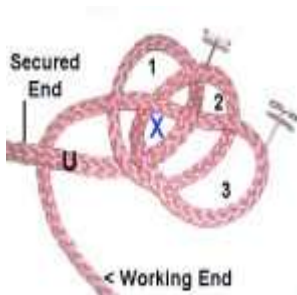
**Step 2:** Make a second **counter-clockwise** loop with the working end. Position it so it rests **on top** of the first loop, and slightly towards the right. There should be three obvious spaces.

**Identify the space in the center, which is marked with an X in the image.**



**Step 3:** Bring the working end around again to make a third loop, moving **counter-clockwise**.

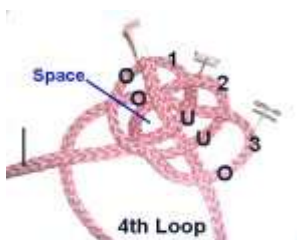
Weave the end through the first two loops, passing **over - under - over - under** the four segments.



**Step 4:** Create Loop 4 by directing the working end **over** the segment of loop 3, on the right. Pass it under the next two segments.

**The end should come out through the space.**

Make sure the end passes **over** the segment of loop 4 at the bottom of the knot.



**Step 5:** Start with **loop 2**, to tighten loop 1. Tighten loop 3, and then 4.

**Each loop you pull will tighten the one before it.**

The final step is to pull on the end, which tightens loop 4.



**Sliding Celtic Button Knot**



The **Sliding Celtic Button** is tied the same way as the standard button. The difference is that there is a **holding cord** running through it.

This allows the knot to be positioned where you need it, since it slides along the holding cord.

**Step1:** To practice this variation of the Celtic Button knot, you need 2 cords. The working cord should be at least 36 inches long. In the images, that's the pink cord. The holding cord is brown.

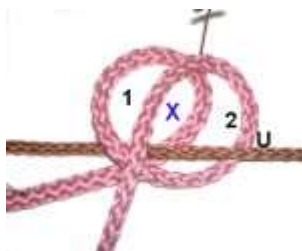
**Secure the holding cord horizontally, with tension.**

Secure the other cord at the left end, also resting horizontally. It should rest **below the holding cord**.



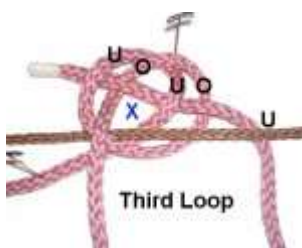
Make the first loop with the working end, rotating **counter-clockwise**.

As you do this, make sure you pass the end **under** the holding cord, and then **over**, to form the loop.



**Step 2:** Rotate **counter-clockwise** to make loop 2, passing the end **under** the holding cord first.

Place it to the right of the first loop, resting on top. You need to have three obvious spaces.



**Step 3:** Start the third loop by passing the working end **under** the holding cord.

Weave the working end through the four segments **over - under - over - under**. Arrange the loops so you can still see the central space clearly (**X**).



**Step 5:** Start the fourth loop by first passing **under** the holding cord.

Move the working end **over** the segment of loop 3 on the right, **under** the next two segments, and out through the central space.

Tighten the Sliding Celtic Button Knot gradually, removing the slack from the

loops, starting with the second one. Remember that each loop you pull on will tighten the one before it. The last step is to pull on the end.

# Josephine Knot



**Description:** The Josephine Knot originated in the Orient, where it is still called the **Double Coin Knot**.

In European countries it was named for Empress Josephine, who was the wife of Napoleon for a time.

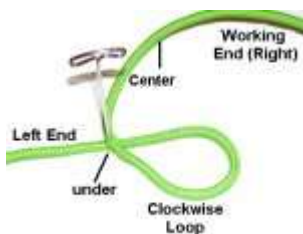
There are two variations on this page. The first set of instructions show you how to tie this decorative knot in the **center** of a cord, with **two ends** free to move after the knot is tied.

The second set of instructions will show you how to tie this Macrame knot with only **one free end**. You will find the method useful when tying it in a series, or combined with other knots.

A third variation is on a separate page and is called the **Sailors Knot**. It's made with two cords and has only two loops.

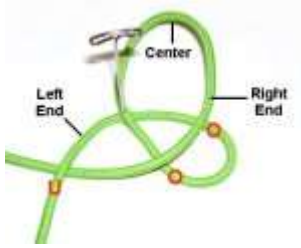
To view two jewelry projects where this knot was used, click on these links:

- [Leather Bracelet](#)
- [Empress Necklace](#)



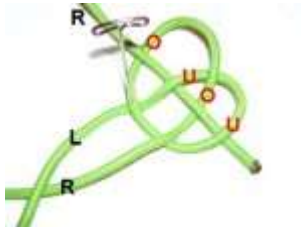
**Step 1:** Cut one piece of material, at least 18 inches long.

Fold the cord in half. Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the **left** end, passing **under** to form the crossing point. Secure the loop to your board.



**Step 2:** Bring the **right** end down in a **clockwise** direction, passing **over** the first loop, and **under** the left end.

This creates **loop 2** in the center, which is larger than the other two.



**Step 3:** To make **loop 3**, continue to move in a **clockwise** direction.

Weave the right end **over - under - over - under** the four segments.

**Step 4:** Tighten **loop 2** first, by pulling on loops 1 and 3.

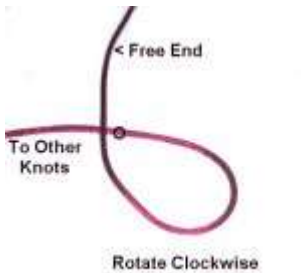
Remove the slack in loops 1 and 3 by pulling on the **ends**.



### Second Variation

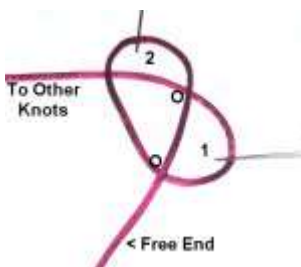
In the previous instructions, you rotated the left half of the cord to make the first loop, which was at the center. Then you used the right half for the rest of the knot.

When other knots are present, you need to be able to make the Josephine knot with only one end free to move.



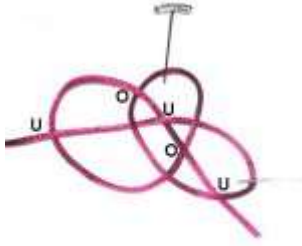
**Step 1:** Secure one end of the cord to your project board, as if there were other knots present (on the left).

Rotate the other end **clockwise** to make **loop 1**.



**Step 2:** Bring the end up to make **loop 2**, still rotating **clockwise**.

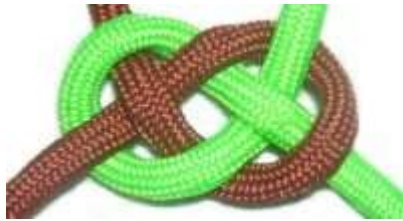
Pass the end **over** the first loop, as you bring it to the bottom again.



**Step 3:** Make the third **clockwise** loop by passing the end **under** the secured portion. Weave it through the other loops **over - under - over - under**.

Tighten the Josephine knot by removing the slack from each loop **in the order they were made**.

## Sailors Knot



**Description:** The Sailors Knot is considered a variation of the [Josephine knot](#), but you use two separate cords. There are also two loops, rather than three.

This decorative knot is a great technique to use when making jewelry projects, particularly with leather, which helps hold the knot's shape. You can also use it to link 2 cords together, or as a mounting knot.

Below the main instructions I have shown you two other ways to use this knot; in a sennit (chain), and with an alternating design.

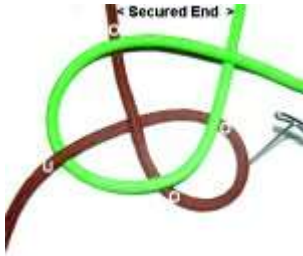
**Step 1:** You need 2 cords to practice, each at least 36 inches long. Using two colors really helps while you are learning.



Secure both cords to your board vertically.

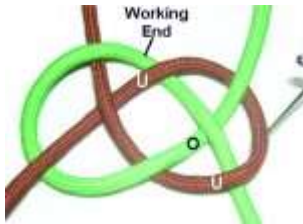
Rotate the cord on the **left counter-clockwise** to make the first loop (brown cord).

Make sure the working end passes **under** the secured end to make the crossing point.



**Step 2:** Move the cord on the **right** (green) **over** the loop, and **under** the working end of the left cord.

Bring it **over** the secured end (at the top), as you rotate it **clockwise**.



**Step 3:** Weave the working end of the **right** cord through the loop made by the left cord, passing **under - over - under** the three segments.



**Step 4:** Tighten the Sailors Knot by pulling on the ends.



## Creating a Sennit



There are two types of patterns that can be tied with the Sailors knot.

The first is a **sennit**, which is tying several knots in a vertical direction. The knots can be close together, or be separated slightly.

A design like this can be used as a bracelet, a belt, or a strap.



**Step 1:** Tie the first Sailors Knot following the instructions above, close to one end of the cords. Secure it to your board. The working cords will be the long ends, at the bottom.

Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the working cord on the **left** (Black). Make sure the end goes **under** to make the crossing point.



**Step 2:** Bring the working cord on the right (green), **over** the loop.

Pass it **under** the working end of the left cord.

Pass it **over** the segment of the left cord coming from the knot above.



**Step 3:** Weave the end through the three segments of the loop, **under - over - under**.

For a design where the knots are **close** to each other, pull on the two loops first, to tighten the area **above** the knot.

Pull on the ends to tighten the loops.

**Step 4:** Repeat steps 1 - 3 to make the remaining knots in the sennit.



## Alternating Pattern



The other way the Sailors Knot can be used is in an alternating pattern, similar to [Alternating Square Knots](#).

Start by securing 3 folded cords to your board, so you have 6 ends to work with.



**Step 1:** Mentally number the cords, moving from left to right.

Make the first row of knots using cords 1 - 2, 3 - 4, and 5 - 6. Tie them as you did in the first set of instructions, near the top of the page.



**Step 2:** For the second row, alternate the cords.

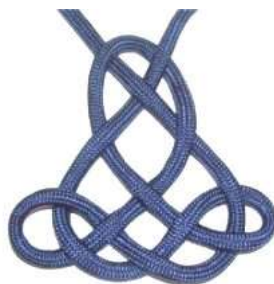
The first knot is tied with cords 2 - 3. The following one is tied with cords 4 - 5. Tie them as you did in the second set of instructions (for the sennit).

**Design Tip:** In the images shown, I left space between the rows to help you see the details. You can either mimic this arrangement when you practice, or place the rows close together.



**Step 5:** Repeat step 2 to make additional rows.

## Celtic Triangle Knot



**Description:** The Celtic Triangle Knot is a historical knot based on the symbol called the **Triquetra**, which is found in many ancient European art designs.

It represents a variety of concepts, such as body, mind and spirit, as well as the elements -- earth, air and water.

This decorative knot is sometimes called the **Trinity Knot**, one of the earliest



designs found in art related to Christianity.

Leather and Satin are good choices if you are using this Celtic knot for jewelry, since you need material that holds its shape.

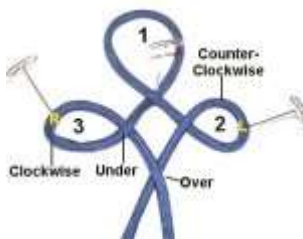
To see a Macrame project where this knot is featured, see the [Triangle Earrings](#).

When using Leather or Satin cord, make sure you use the [Cross Pin Technique](#) to secure the loops.



**Step 1:** Cut one cord, at least 18 inches long. Mentally label the **ends** right and left.

Make the first loop by passing the **left end** of the cord over the right to form the crossing point. Secure the crossed area.



**Step 2:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the **left end**, which is now on the right.

Make a **clockwise** loop with the **right end**, passing the end **under** to form the crossing point.

Bring it **over** the left end before moving on to the next step.



**Step 3:** Pass the **right end** through **Loop 2**, entering it from **below** (under - over).



**Step 4:** Pass the **right end under Loop 1**, as you bring it towards the left upper area of the knot.



**Step 5:** Pass the **left end** through **Loop 3**, entering it from the **top** (over - under).



**Step 6:** Weave the **left end** through the three segments in Loop 1, **over - under - over**.



Tighten the Celtic Triangle Knot gradually. The bottom loops should be small and the top one larger.

I left the knot loose so you could see the design, but you can tighten it to any size.

## Ring Knots



**Celtic Ring Knot**



**Keyhole Knot**

**Description:** These two Ring Knots are fun and easy to make, so they can be used in children's projects. They are both very similar, but the process for tying them is different.

Ring shaped knots can be used to make coasters, rugs and pot holders, if you make them large. You can make rings and pendants if you use fine material to make them small. In the images, I used 4mm Paracord, which resulted in a pendant-size design.

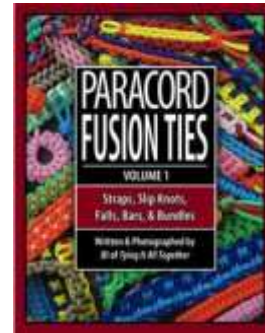
The Keyhole Knot starts with a small variation of a [Panel knot](#), called

a **Postage Stamp**. The bottom is changed to create an opening in the center.

The Celtic Ring Knot is a type of circular braiding. You can use a separate piece of material or the end of the same cord, to thicken the design.

I found the Keyhole Knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

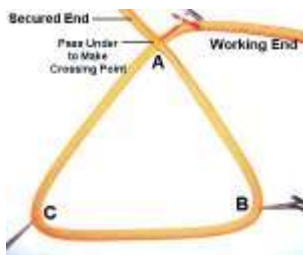
Click on the image or link to visit the site, and be sure to check out the knot gallery. It contains **video tutorials** for a variety of unique knot designs.



## Celtic Ring Knot

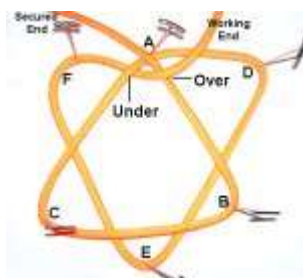
The Celtic Ring knot is made with several angles, rather than curves. Make sure you use a project board, since you need to secure all the angles with pins.

You need one piece of material, at least 36 inches long. To double the knot with the same cord, make sure it's at least 72 inches.



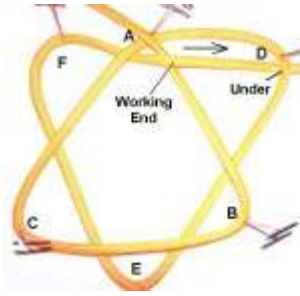
**Step 1:** Secure one end to your board. Use the working end to make a triangle, moving in a **counter-clockwise** direction. Mentally label the three angles A - B - C, as shown.

At the top, pass the working end **under** the secured end to make the crossing point.



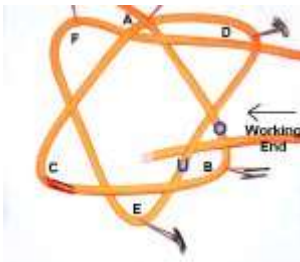
**Step 2:** Use the working end to make an **inverted** triangle, moving **counter-clockwise**. The working end needs to pass **under** angles B and C.

At the top, pass the end **under - over** the two segments at angle A. Mentally label the new angles D - E - F, as shown.



**Step 3:** Direct the working end **under angle D**, located in the **upper right** area of the Celtic Ring Knot.

Pass the end into it heading **left to right**, moving horizontally.



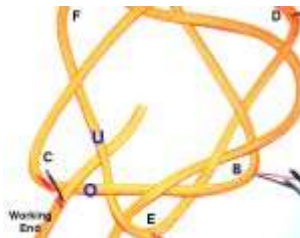
**Step 4:** Bring the working end down to **angle B**, heading **right to left**.

Pass the end **over - under** the two segments in that area.



**Step 5:** Bring the working end down to **angle E** at the very bottom of the knot.

Pass it **over - under** the two segments, moving **right to left** on a downward angle.



**Step 6:** Bring the end to **angle C**, which is on the left.

Pass it **over - under** the two segments, moving **left to right** on an upward angle.



**Step 7:** Bring the end up to **angle F** on the left.

Pass it **over - under** the two segments, heading vertically, and **over** the secured end.



**Step 8:** Tighten the design so it forms a round shape.

For a pendant, you can use the two ends to make a necklace. Or you can weave them through the top of the knot and finish them off, for an item like a coaster.

To double the Celtic Ring knot, use either a separate cord, or the working end. Follow the path of the first knot, **starting at the secured end**.



## Keyhole Knot

This is the most challenging of the two Ring Knots. You'll start off by making a Postage Stamp Panel knot.

Cut one cord, at least 36 inches long. You can double this knot by cutting a second cord.



**Step 1:** Secure the **left** end to your board.

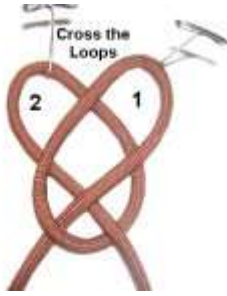
Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the **working** end.

Secure the loop at the crook (rounded portion).



**Step 2:** Make a second loop in the same manner, using the working end. It should rest to the **right** of the first one.

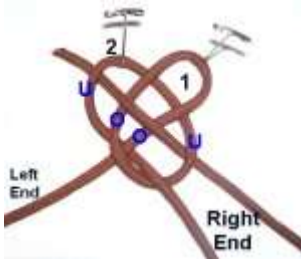
Make sure both loops are long and oval shaped.



**Step 3:** Move **Loop 1** to the right, so it passes **over** Loop 2.

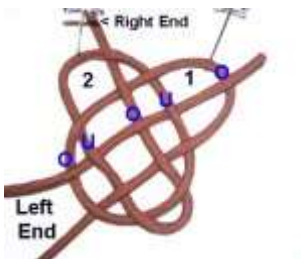
Move **Loop 2** to the **left**, so the area is crossed as shown.

Re-secure both loops, and make sure they are wide and open.



**Step 4:** Weave the **right end** up the middle of **Loop 2**, which is on the left now.

Pass **under** the segment at the bottom, **over** the two segments of Loop 1, and **under** the crook of loop 2 at the top.



**Step 5:** Weave the **left end**, heading up the middle of **Loop 1** (on the right).

Weave **over - under - over - under - over** the segments as shown.



Rotate the knot so the ends are at the bottom.

**Do not flip it upside down.**

Adjust the loops and tighten the knot slightly.

Note the areas outlined at the bottom in the image above. On the **left**, the end comes out of the knot **under - over**.

On the **right**, the end comes out **over - under**.

The next few steps will focus on re-positioning the two ends, changing where they come out at the bottom.



**Step 6:** Pull the **right end** out of the 2 segments at the lower right area of the knot.

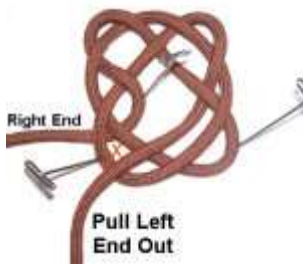
The areas are marked with an X.



**Step 7:** Move the **right end** off to the **left** side of the knot for now.

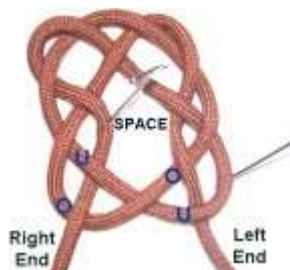
Secure it on the left.

Secure the lower curved area where you are working, to make sure it stays in place.



**Step 8:** Pull the **left end** out from the under the segment on the lower left.

The area is marked with an X.



**Step 9:** Move the **right end**, which is now on the left, **under - over** the two segments at the lower left.

Re-position the **left end** so it goes **over - under** the two segments on the lower right.

Note that both ends have simply switched places.



Tighten the Keyhole knot gradually, starting at one end and removing the slack a little at a time.

Ring Knots can be a challenge to tighten, so take your time to form a round shape.



# Celtic Circle Knot



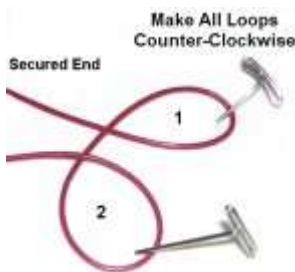
**Description:** The Celtic Circle Knot is based on the ancient symbol that represents eternal life.

The beautiful, interlaced pattern is just perfect for Micro-Macrame earrings and pendants. Tying this unique decorative knot can be a challenge, so be sure you have no distractions.

Use a project board and pins to control the loops, securing each one as you progress. When using Leather, Satin, or very fine cord, **lean** the pins over the cord rather than through the material.

To see a Macrame project that features this knot, see the [Circle Earrings](#).

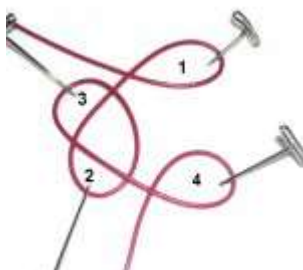
**All the Loops are to be made counter-clockwise.**



**Step 1:** Cut one cord, at least 45 inches long. I recommend you make the Celtic Circle knot large at first, until you are comfortable with tying it.

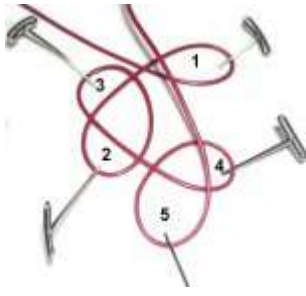
Secure one end of the cord. Create **loop 1** and position it horizontally, with the crossed area on the left.

Make **loop 2**, and place it below the first, slightly to the **left** of loop 1.



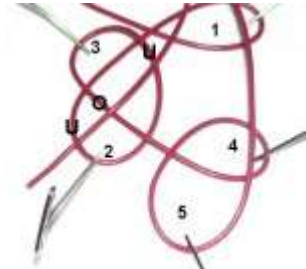
**Step 2:** Make **loop 3**, and position it on top of loop 2. The crook should be slightly to the **left** and on a diagonal slant, as shown.

Make **loop 4** and place it further down and to the **right** of the other loops.



**Step 3:** Make **loop 5**, and place it to the **left** of loop 4.

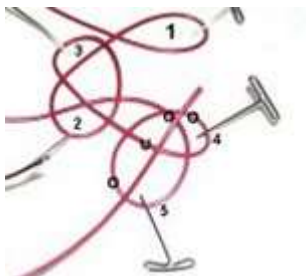
The working end should pass **over** loop 4.



**Step 4:** Bring the working end up to **loops 2 and 3**.

Move it **right to left**, on a diagonal slant.

Weave through the loops **over - under - over**.



**Step 5:** Bring the working cord down to **loops 5 and 4**.

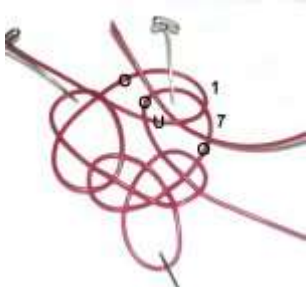
Weave it through the four segments moving **left to right**, **over - under - over - over**.



**Step 6:** Bring the working end up to **loop 1**. Rotate the end to make loop 7. Place it partially over loop 1.

Bring the end down to **loop 4**. Pass it through the three segments **under - over - under**.

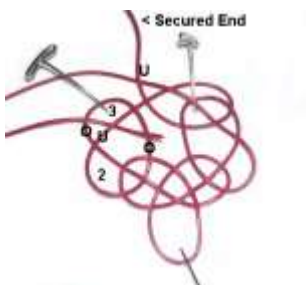
**Make sure the end does not pass through loop 5.** The weaving takes place to the **left** of it.



**Step 7:** Bring the working end up to **loops 7 and 1**. Move it **right to left**, diagonally.

Weave it through the loops **over - under - over - over**.

The working end should be at the top of the Celtic Circle knot when you are finished.



**Step 8:** Pass the working end **under** the secured end.

Move it to the **left** of **loops 2 and 3**.

Weave it through **over - under - over**, heading right.



**Step 9:** Weave the working end through **loop 1**, passing **under - over - under** the three segments.

**Make sure the end does not pass through loop 7.**

The weaving takes place to the **left** of loop 7, at the top of the Celtic Circle knot.

**Step 10:** Tighten the knot gradually, starting at the **secured end**. It can be any size, depending on what you are using it for.

The ends come out at the top of the Celtic Circle knot, and can now be used to tie other knots.

## Celtic Square Knot



**Description:** The Celtic Square Knot is based on a symbol popular with Celtic artists, and represents the creation of the universe. It's also called the **Box Knot**, since it is often carved on the top of handcrafted boxes.

You could use this decorative knot to make Macrame jewelry, and in any pattern that requires a knot made with one piece of cord material.

It can be used in combination with [Celtic Button Knots](#) to make a very attractive clasp, since it has a loop at the top.

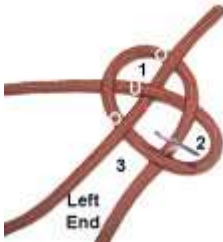
In the image above, I left the design looser than usual, so you could see the details. The material is Paracord, which needs to have the ends melted so the inner fiber can't slip out.



**Step 1:** Make the first loop in the center of a 20-inch cord, crossing **right over left**.



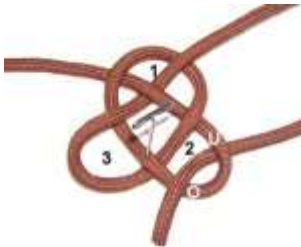
**Step 2:** Move the end that's now on the **right** under the first loop, heading **right to left**.



**Step 3:** Weave the end on the **left** through the first loop, heading **left to right**, on a slight angle.

Pass it **over - under - over** the three segments.

This creates the third loop.



**Step 4:** Spread the three loops so you can see all areas clearly.

Move the end that's now on the **right** down to the second loop, at the lower right.

Pass it through from **below (under - over)**.



**Step 5:** Bring the other end down to loop 3, on the lower left.

Pass it through from the **top (over - under)**.



Tighten the Celtic knot gradually, until it's the size you want.

The loop at the top is usually larger than the others.

# Star Knot



**Description:** The Star Knot is sometimes called the **Daisy Knot** or **Flower Knot**.

It's a very interesting Celtic knot, and is not frequently seen in Macrame projects.

There are two [Lanyard knots](#), tied in opposite directions, as well as several linked loops. It has elements similar to a [Triskelion Knot](#), which is a Crown Knot design.

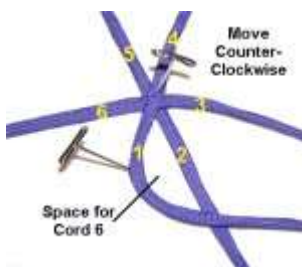
This knot is a good project for beginners and children, since it can be used as a pendant, ornament or hair decoration.

You will need a project board and pins to successfully create this decorative knot.

**Step 1:** To practice the Star Knot, you need 3 cords, each at least 36 inches long.

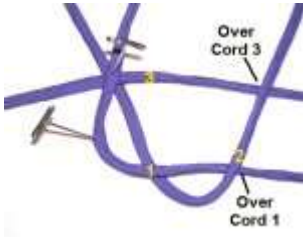
Place 2 of them in an **X shape**, and one horizontally, matching the centers. Secure them to your board at the center.

Mentally number the segments 1 - 6, moving **counter-clockwise**, as in the image below.



Curve **cord 1** to the **right**, passing **over** cord 2.

Secure it at the curve to mark the space that cord 6 will pass through.



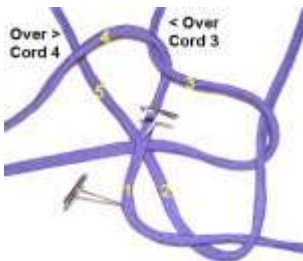
**Step 2:** Curve **cord 2** upward, so it passes **over** cord 3.

It should automatically pass over cord 1.



**Step 3:** Curve **cord 3** towards the **left**, passing **over** cord 4.

It should pass over cord 2 as well.



**Step 4:** Curve **cord 4** so it passes **over** cord 5.

It should also pass over cord 3.



**Step 5:** Curve **cord 5** down, passing it **over** cord 6.

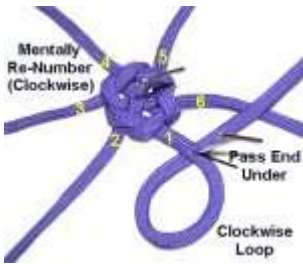


**Step 6:** Bring **cord 6 over** cord 1 and through the space.



Tighten the Lanyard knot by pulling on the ends.

This area will sit in the **center** of the Star Knot, so you can make it any size. The remainder is formed around it.



**Step 7:** Mentally re-number the cords in a **clockwise** direction.

Make a **clockwise** loop with **cord 1**. Pass the end **under** to make the crossing point.



**Step 8:** Make a **clockwise** loop with **cord 2**. Pass the end **under** to make the crossing point.

Pass cord 2 through loop 1 from **below**, which is **under - over**.



**Step 9:** Make the next loop with **cord 3**. Bring the end through **loop 2**, from below.

Continue on in this manner, until there are loops made with all 6 ends. The final step is to pass cord 1 through the loop made by cord 6.



**Step 10:** Now you will make the final area of the Star Knot, which is another Lanyard knot. Only this time, you rotate **clockwise** as you form it.

Start with **cord 2**, which is the end coming out of loop 1. Direct it **left**, passing **over** cord 3. It can lie on top of the loop, or beside it.





**Step 11:** Move **cord 3**, which comes out of loop 2, and pass it **over** cord 4. It's fine to pass it over the loop in that area.

Continue on, passing cord 4 over 5, then 5 over 6, and cord 6 over 1. The final step is to pass cord 1 through the curved area made by cord 2 (arrow).

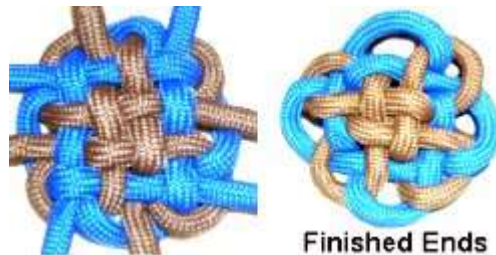


To tighten the Star Knot, begin by pulling on all the **ends** so the second Lanyard knot is slightly smaller.

Next, reduce the size of each **loop**.

Once they surround the inner Lanyard knot, you can then tighten the second one more.

## Celtic Weave



**Description:** The Celtic Weave is a combination knot that has been seen in Celtic artwork, but is not very well known.

It features a **Wall Knot**, which is similar to a **Lanyard Knot**. The weaving in the center is surrounded by the loops created by the Wall Knot. There are 8 ends that can be used for other knots, or they can be finished off.

A decorative knot like this can be used as a focal point in many Macrame projects, including handcrafted jewelry. I like to use knots like this when I need a focal knot with cords coming out in different directions.

In the images, I used two colors to show you the details a little better. The colors can be arranged any way you wish.

Paracord was the material used, which needs to have the tips melted with a flame to prepare the cords for knotting.

## Wall Knot Base

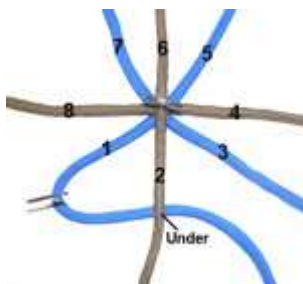
**Preparation:** Cut 4 cords, each at least 20 inches long. Place the first two on your board diagonally, forming a cross.

The other two cords should be arranged so one is horizontal and the other vertical.

This gives you 8 ends to work with, to make the base, which creates the loops along the **outside** of the Celtic Weave.

In the instructions, I will refer to them as separate cords.

Mentally number each cord 1 thru 8, in a **counter-clockwise** direction, starting with the cord on the **lower left**.



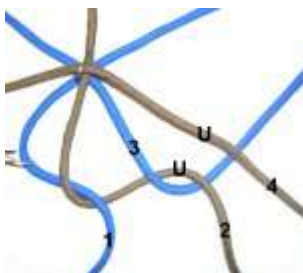
**Step 1:** Move **cord 1 under** cord 2, curving it towards the **right**.

Secure **cord 1** where it bends, so it is easy to recognize.



**Step 2:** Move **cord 2 under** cords **1 and 3**.

This cord passes **under** the previous one moved, which was cord 1, as well as the cord ahead (3).



**Step 3:** Move **cord 3 under** cords **2 and 4**.

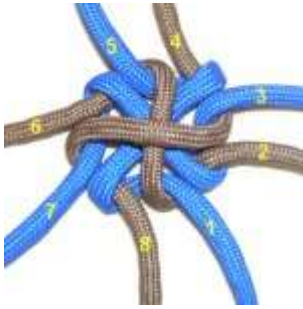
Continue on in this manner, until you reach cord 8.

Be sure that each cord is moved under the previous cord as well as the one ahead.



**Step 4:** **Cord 8** should pass **under** segment 7 and then through the space formed by cord 1.

Be sure to pass the cord into the curved area from **below (under)**.



**Step 5:** Tighten the base by pulling on the ends, **one at a time (slowly)**. Don't tighten it all the way; leave some space for the final steps.

Two cords need to come out in 4 areas, mentally numbered as shown.

**Step 6:** Place a piece of paper on top of the base, and secure it in the center. This way the weaving will be all you focus on when you create the upper part of the Celtic Weave.

Each time you fold or weave a cord, **secure it**. This way you know which ones you have already moved.



<< Fold **cord 5** over the paper, towards the **bottom**. Fold **cord 8** towards the **top**.

Fold **cord 4** down to the **bottom** and **cord 1** up to the **top**. >>



**Step 7:** The cords on the left and right areas of the Celtic Weave are used to create the **horizontal** weaving.

Each cord passes through the vertical cords **under - over - under - over**. The pattern does not change whether they are moving left or right.

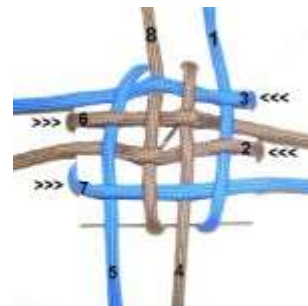


<< Weave **cord 3** right to left.

Weave **cord 6** left to right. >>

Weave **cord 2** right to left. >>

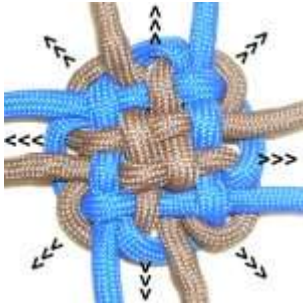
Weave **cord 7** left to right. >>





**Step 8:** Tighten the weaving by pulling on all the ends, after removing the paper and pin.

Try to keep the design square and as small as possible.



**Step 9:** Pull each of the curved areas in the **baseoutward**, while holding the weaving firmly on your board. Pressing down on the center really helps.

The loops should surround the weaving, forming a rounded square shape.

The ends can now be used as attachment points for other cords.



Another finishing option is to tuck each end through a loop which rests next to it.

**Make sure you pass it through a loop of the opposite color.**

This will bring all the ends to the back, where they can be finished off.

## Hole in Your Heart



**Description:** The Hole in Your Heart features the woven elements typical of all Celtic knots. It's designed in such a way that it has an obvious hole in the center.

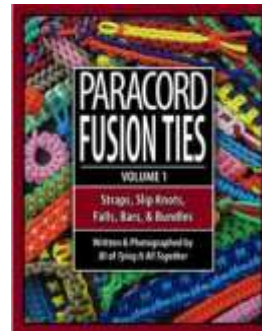
You could use this decorative knot as a pendant, since the ends come out at the top. Adding a second cord to double the knot will produce a larger design, suitable for other Macrame projects.

The decoration shown was made with Paracord, which needs to be prepared and finished by melting the tips with heat.

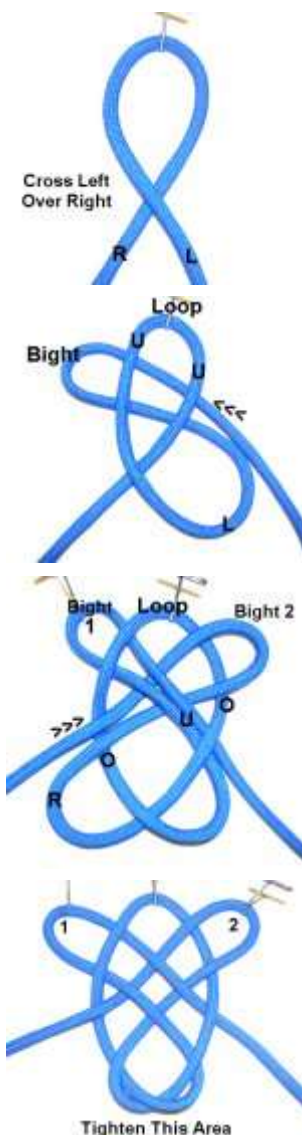
I found this knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

### Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the image or link to visit his site. The knot gallery contains a wide variety of combination knots and techniques, all demonstrated through **video tutorials**.



**Preparation:** Cut one cord, at least 60 inches long, to practice the Hole in Your Heart.



**Step 1:** Make a loop in the center of the cord, crossing left over right.

Secure it to your board.

**Step 2:** Fold the **left end**, which is now on the right, to make bight 1.

Place it **under** the loop, so the fold is resting on the upper left (diagonal).

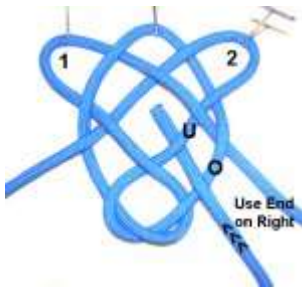
**Step 3:** Make bight 2 with the **right end** (now on the left).

Weave it **over - under - over** the three areas of the loop, moving towards the upper right.

**Step 4:** Tighten the lower area of the Hole in Your Heart knot, by pulling on the two bights.

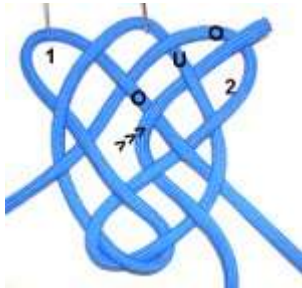
Widen and balance the knot, so you can see all areas clearly, especially the bights.





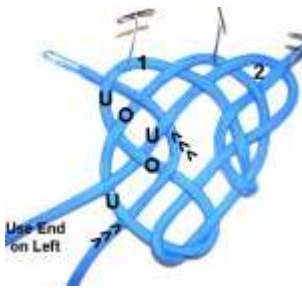
**Step 5:** Rotate the end resting on the **right**, so it's heading towards the **upper left** (bight 1).

Pass it **over - under** the two segments to the **right** of the lower area you tightened in the last step.



**Step 6:** Bend the cord towards the **upper right**, where bight 2 is located.

Weave it **over - under - over** the three segments.



**Step 7:** Move the end on the **left** **under - over** the two segments to the **left** of the tightened area at the bottom (towards bight 2).

Bend the end to the **upper left** and weave it towards the top of bight 1, **under - over - under**.



**Step 8: (Optional)** To double the knot, balance the design but don't tighten it yet.

Use a **second cord** to **follow the path** of the first one all the way through. Tighten each area until it's the shape you like.



For a single Hole in Your Heart, tighten it most of the way, leaving a hole in the center.

## Celtic Mat



**Description:** A Celtic Mat is a specific type of Macrame knot that is flat and rectangular in shape.

Each of the three decorative knots shown on this page have the woven elements and interlaced pattern of all Celtic knots.

The first is called the **Ocean Plait**, followed by the **Basket Weave**. The third design is the **Prosperity Knot**.

Each one is slightly different in appearance and vary in how they are constructed.

Another page you might want to see if you like this type of decorative knot, is the [Mashead Mat Technique](#). It features a round or oval shape, and has similarities to the designs described here.

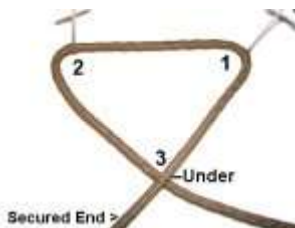
These Celtic knots are perfect for rugs, but can also be used as pendants if made with slender cord (2mm or less). To make a rug, you would simply create any of these designs very large and follow the path of the cord with several others, filling in the knot.



## Ocean Plait Mat

You need one cord, at least 36 inches long, to make the first type of Celtic Mat called the Ocean Plait.

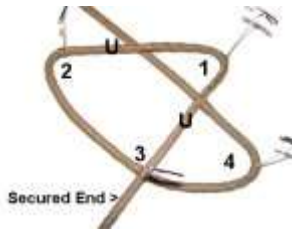
Make sure you use a project board and pins when first learning this technique.



**Step 1:** Secure one end to the board, on your left. Move the working end up and to the right, to make **Area 1**. Move it to the left to make **Area 2**.

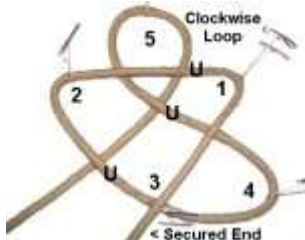
To make **Area 3** at the bottom, pass the working end **under** the secured end. **Secure all 3 areas.**





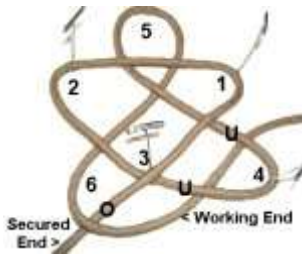
**Step 2:** Move the working end to the **right** and curve it upward, to make **Area 4**.

Bring it **under** both segments near Area 1, moving **right to left** on an angle.



**Step 3:** Make a loop at the top of the design, rotating **clockwise**. That's considered **Area 5**.

Bring the working end down so it rests between areas 2 and 3, passing **under** the three segments, as shown.



**Step 4:** Curve the working end towards the **right** to make **Area 6**.

Pass it **over** the secured end, and then **under** both segments at **Area 4**.



**Step 5:** Spread the design out a little, so you can see all areas clearly. Move the working end towards the top, heading **right to left**.

Weave the end **over-under-over-under** the four segments near **Areas 1 and 5**.



**Step 6:** Bring the working end back to the **lower right** (to Area 4).

Weave it **over - under - over - under - over** the segments in **Areas 2, 3, and 4**.

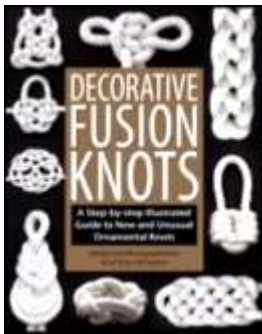


**Step 7:** To thicken this Celtic Mat, use a **second cord** and follow the path of the first all the way through. (optional)

Balance the design by tightening each area. The top loop should be a bit larger and rounder than the others.



This is the Celtic Mat design when it's completed. It's a good idea to leave some space, to see the details.



I found the next two Celtic Mat designs in a book called [Decorative Fusion Knots](#), by JD Lenzen.

Click on the link or image to visit the author's website, which contains **video tutorials** for many other interesting knotting techniques



## Basket Weave



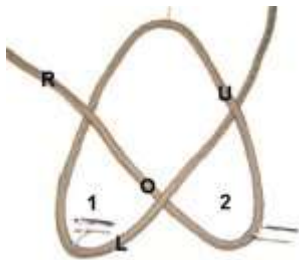
This type of Celtic Mat is called the Basket Weave, and it's very similar to the design shown above, but is constructed in a different manner.

You need one cord at least 36 inches long. Make sure you use a project board and pins to secure the loops.



**Step 1:** Secure the cord at the **center**. Bring the **right end** of the cord down, and secure it 4 inches below the center.

Move it to the upper left, passing **over** the left end of the cord.



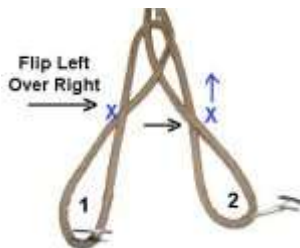
**Step 2:** Move the **left end** down 4 inches, and secure it.

Bring it to the upper right, passing it **over - under** the two segments, as shown.



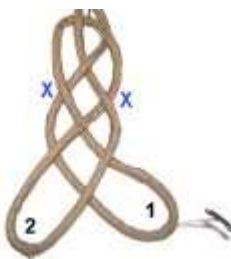
**Step 3:** Bring both ends to the top, and secure them for now.

Pull down on the curved areas at the bottom, to make two long bights. Mentally label them as shown.



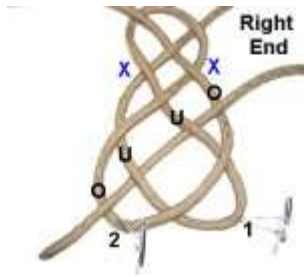
**Step 4:** For each bight, **flip the left side over the right**.

Put your finger below each crossing point, and slide it up (**blue X**). This will make the lower area more open for the next steps.



**Step 5:** Cross the two bights, so that bight 2 is **on top** of bight 1. Secure them to your board.

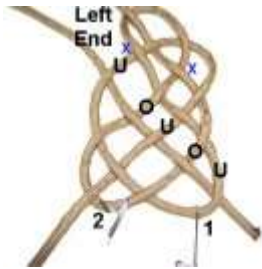
Make the bights slightly wider and curved as shown, before moving on to the next step.



**Step 6:** Weave the end on the **right** down through the middle of **bight 2**, moving right to left.

Weave it **over - under - under - over** the four segments.

Make sure this takes place **below the crossed areas** you moved in step 4.



**Step 7:** Weave the other end (left) down through the middle of **Loop 1**, heading left to right.

Weave **under - over - under - over - under** the five segments.



To double the knot, use a second cord and follow the path of the first one all the way through.

Balance and tighten the Celtic Mat, removing the slack in each area gradually.



## Prosperity Knot

This historical knot has been featured in many Celtic as well as Chinese works of art.

The Chinese name for it is the Prosperity Knot. It represents abundance, long life, and wealth.

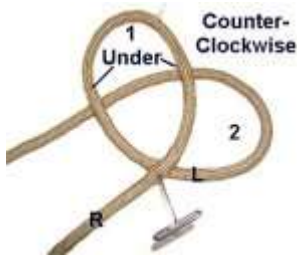
This variation of the Celtic Mat is similar to the others, but is longer and has more woven elements.





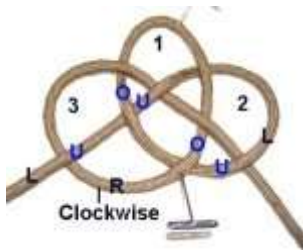
**Step 1:** Make a loop in the center of a 45-inch cord.

The right end should cross over the left.



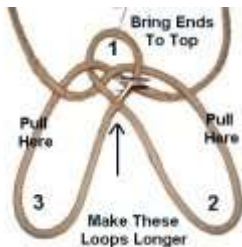
**Step 2:** Move the **left end** (now on the right) to make a **counter-clockwise** loop.

Position it so it passes **under** the first loop, and rests slightly to the right.



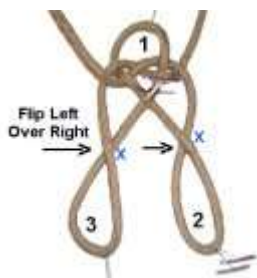
**Step 3:** To make the third loop, move the **right end clockwise**, passing it **under** the left end.

Weave it **over - under - over - under** the four segments of loops 1 and 2.



**Step 4:** Move both ends to the top. Place your finger below the crossing point for **loop 1** (arrow) and slide it up.

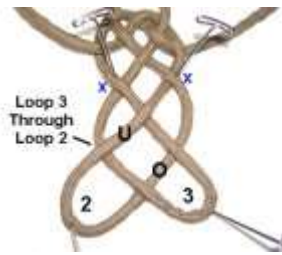
Make **loops 2 and 3** longer, by pulling the **outer portions** downward.



**Step 5:** For both loops, **flip the left side over the right**.

Put your finger below the crossing points and slide them up, so the lower areas are larger and more open.

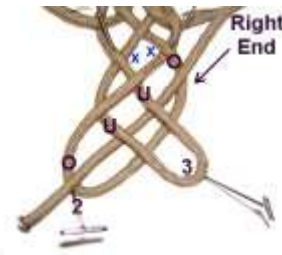
Make sure the following steps take place **below these crossed areas**.



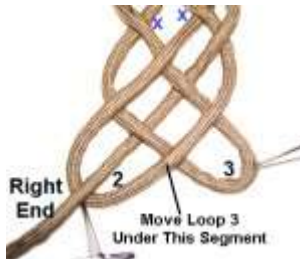
**Step 6:** Move **Loop 2** to the **left**, curving it slightly.

Pass Loop 3 through it, **under - over** (from below).

Make sure you can clearly see each segment and crossing point of the two loops before moving on.

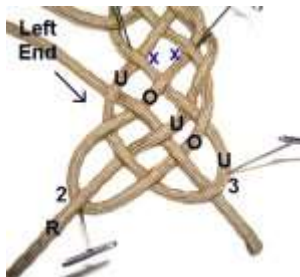


**Step 7:** Weave the right end through the middle of Loop 2, passing **over - under - under - over** the four segments.



**Step 8:** In the previous steps, Loop 3 was resting **over** the **right side** of Loop 2.

Now you need to move **Loop 3**, and bring it **under** the right side of Loop 2.



**Step 9:** Weave the **left end** through the middle of Loop 1, heading left to right.

Weave **under - over - under - over - under**.

The end comes out below the crook of loop 3.



To double this variation of the Celtic Mat, use a second cord. Follow the path of the first cord, starting at one of the ends.

Tighten the loops so they are balanced and neatly arranged.



# Celtic Bar



**Description:** The Celtic Bar is very similar to the [Snake Braid](#), where you cross and weave the cords to create the pattern.

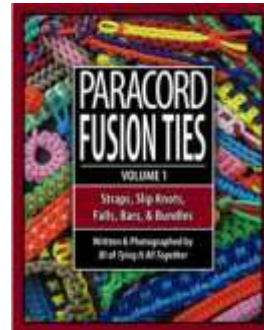
In this decorative knot, two **bights** are crossed as well as the ends, which gives it the woven appearance typical of Celtic knots.

You can use this Macrame design for straps, bracelets, and projects where you need a slender chain of knots.

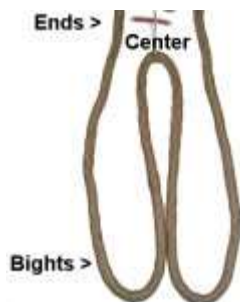
I found this knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website

## Designs by JD Lenzen

Click on the image or link to visit his site. The knot gallery contains a wide variety of combination knots and techniques, all demonstrated through [video tutorials](#).

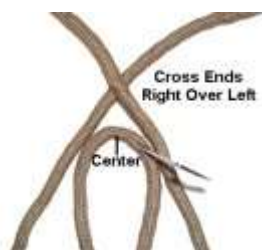


**Preparation:** To practice, you need one cord at least 72 inches long. I used Paracord in the example, which needs to be prepared by melting the tips of the cord.



**Step 1:** Secure the center of the cord to your board.

Fold each end of the cord to form two long, narrow **bights**. Bring the ends to the top.



**Step 2:** Cross the ends **right over left**, just above the center of the cord.





**Step 3:** Move the end now on the **right**, **over** the bight on that side.

Move the end on the **left** **under** the bight on that side.



**Step 4:** Cross the two **ends left over right**.

The crossing point should be between the two bights.



**Step 5:** Move the end now on the **left** **over** the bight on the left side.

Move the end on the **right** **under** the bight on the right side.



**Step 6:** Cross the two **bights, left over right**.



**Step 7:** Tighten the two bights, so the crossed area rests just below the crossing point for the two ends.

It's better to tighten the Celtic Bar as you progress.

Mentally re-label the ends and bights where they are now.



**Step 8:** Repeat steps 3 - 7 several more times, until you cannot cross the ends any more. Make sure you end on **step 7**.

Pass the end on the **right** through what remains of the bight resting on the right side of the Celtic Bar.



**Step 9:** Pass the end on the **left** through the left bight, entering it from **below**.



**Step 10:** Tighten and adjust the weave as needed.

## Turks Head Knot



**Description:** The Turks Head Knot is a historical knot based on the ancient symbol for eternity, the never-ending circle. The woven design is typical of the flowing patterns favored by Celtic craftsmen.

This decorative knot is a type of braiding that makes a **continuous loop**. So it's sometimes called the Turks Head Braid.

It is perfect for Macrame bracelets, headbands and other projects where you need a circular ring.

I've included instructions for the Small Turks Head, since it is a related technique. It can be used to make items like Paracord rings. By tightening it completely you can make a button knot as well.

Please be sure to visit the [Bangle Bracelet](#), which features another variation of this knot.

## Turks Head Braid

**Preparation:** You need an item you can use as a support, such as a glass or a thick dowel. The size of the Turks Head knot will be the same as the thickness of the support.

So if you want to make a ring for your finger, for example, a dowel should be used as the base (the size of your finger). I used a glass in the example, since I wanted to make a bracelet.

Cut one cord, at least 60 inches long. Cut the cord **double** the length if you plan to widen the Turks Head with the **same cord**.

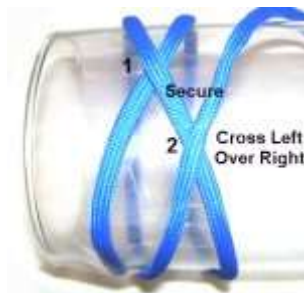
You can cut a second cord to double the Turks Head Knot, to add a contrasting color.

Make sure you have tape available. Secure the support so it cannot roll unless you deliberately move it.



**Step 1:** Secure one end of the cord to the **lower left** area of the support. Wrap the cord around, from the front to the back.

Bring the end to the front again, crossing **over right to left**. This is considered **cross 1**.



**Step 2:** Wrap the working end around the support again. Bring it to the front, passing **between** the secured tail and the segment on the right.

Cross **over** the right segment, heading left to right. This second crossing point should be **below** cross 1.

**Important:** Secure this crossed area with tape.



**Step 3:** Move the working end up to **cross 1**. Roll the support slightly if necessary.

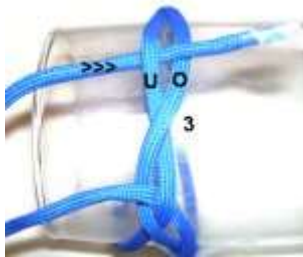
Pass it through the area **above** the cross, **under - over** the two segments. It should be heading **right to left**.



**Step 4:** Just above the point where you ended in the last step, **move the left segment** over the right, with your finger..

**Do not flip the cord upside down.**

This gives you two new crossing points (3 and 4).



**Step 5:** Direct the working end through the area **above Cross 3**.

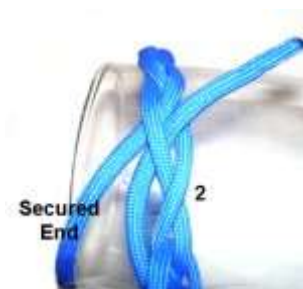
Pass **under- over**, heading **left to right**.



**Step 6:** Just above the 4th crossed area, pass the working end through from **right to left, under - over**.

**Step 7:** Repeat Steps 4 thru 6, making new crossed areas for the rest of the Turks Head knot.

Try to get as much weaving done as possible, pushing everything close together as you progress. Stop when you reach the starting point, near the secured tail.



**Step 8:** Locate Cross 2, which was secured, and remove the tape. Put your finger just above it, and **slide it down**.

Just above, pass the end through **under - over**, heading **left to right**. Both ends are now in the same area.

**Design Tip:** To finish the Turks Head knot, you have three options:

**1.** Direct the ends to the **inside**, and then trim them to 1-inch. Apply glue to hold them in place. For Paracord, **melt the tips** to seal the inner fibers.

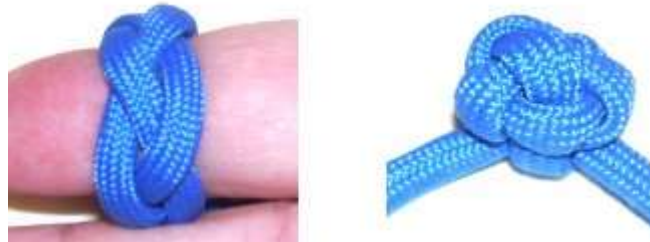
**2.** You can use the working end of the **same cord** to double the knot and make it wider. Just **follow the path** all the way through. You will go around more than once, since there are several rows.

Slide the ends under one segment on the **inside**, to hold them in place. You still need to trim the ends and apply glue.

3. You could use a **separate cord** to double the knot. Make sure you start at the secured end. Slide the ends under one segment (on the **inside**), to hold them in place. Trim the ends and apply glue.



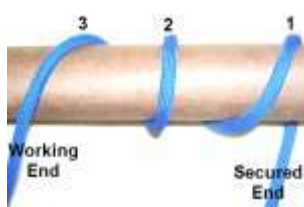
## Small Turks Head



This variation of the Turks Head knot is actually a shortcut, and is the best technique to use when making Macrame rings and other small items.

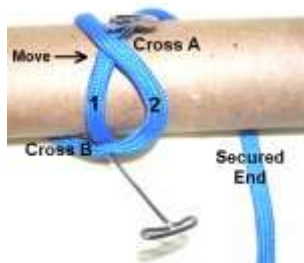
You need 1 cord, at least 36 inches long, to practice.

You also need rolled up piece of heavy paper or cardboard tube, slightly larger than the size of your finger. Consider this to be the equivalent of a project board, since you will be securing the cords to it with pins or tape.



**Step 1:** Secure one end of the cord **under the tube**, on your right.

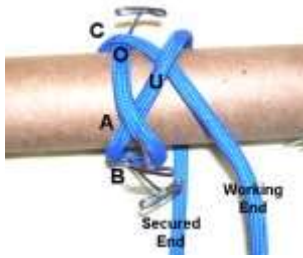
Wrap the working end around 3 times, moving towards the left. Make sure the end is in the **front** when you finish. Mentally number the three segments.



**Step 2:** Move segment 2 over segment 1 (left to right).

This will form two crossed areas, one at the front (A) and the second at the bottom of the tube (B).

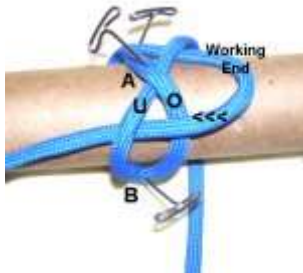
Secure both crossed areas to the **paper tube**.



**Step 3:** Move the working end (segment 3) to the **right**, passing **over - under** the two segments **above crossing point A**.

The portion the end passes **under** leads to the secured end.

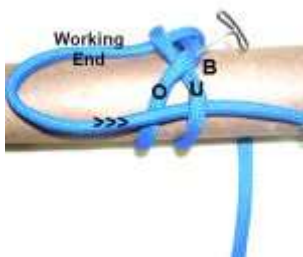
This creates the third crossed area (C).



**Step 4:** Roll the tube slightly, so you can see the area just **below crossing point A**.

Move the working end **right to left**, **over - under** the two segments.

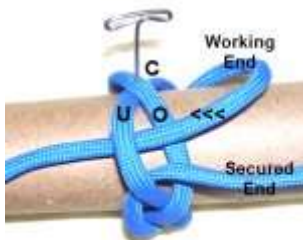
You can now remove the pin on **cross A**.



**Step 5:** Roll the tube away from you so you can see the area **below crossing point B**.

Pass the working end **over - under** the two segments, moving **left to right**.

Remove the pin on **cross B**.



**Step 6:** Move the tube again and find the area **below crossing point C**. The secured end rests in that same area.

Pass the working end through, **over - under**, moving **right to left**.



**Step 7:** Tighten the Turks Head knot to the size you want.

For a ring, you will need to trim the ends and attach them on the **inside** with glue.





To make a Button knot, tighten it slowly and carefully, until the design is round and firm.

## Celtic Heart Knot



**Description:** The Celtic Heart Knot is a historical design seen in various Celtic art forms, including ceramic pottery. But it's rarely seen as a decorative knot made with cord material.

This is a great knot for a pendant, since the ends come out at the top. You can tie the Heart first, and use the ends to make the necklace.

You can create this Celtic knot with any size material, but try to use waxed or stiffened cord if using material less than 2mm diameter.

In the example shown, I used 4mm Paracord. This material needs to be prepared by melting the ends with a flame.

I found the Heart knot in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#) written by J. D. Lenzen.

Be sure to click on the link or image to visit his website. The knot gallery contains video tutorials for many interesting knotting techniques and designs.

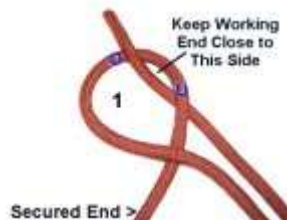






**Step 1:** You need one cord, at least 20 inches long. Secure one end to your board.

Make a **counter-clockwise** loop near the **center** of the cord.



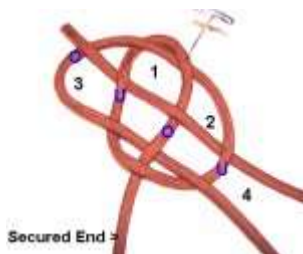
**Step 2:** To make the second loop, bring the working end through the first loop from **below(under - over)**.

Make sure the working end rests close to the **right side of loop 1**.



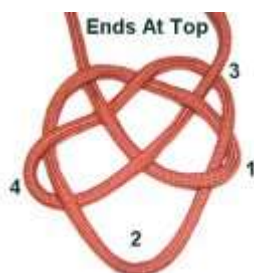
**Step 3:** To make loop 3, bring the working end through Loops 1 and 2, weaving through the three segments, **over - under - over**.

Make sure you keep the end close to the **left side of loop 1**.



**Step 4:** Move the working end slightly to the **right**, so it runs through the **center** of the loops.

Weave it **under - over - under - over** the four segments, heading to the upper left.



**Step 5:** Rotate the knot (or your board) so the ends are at the top.

The end that was secured should be on the **left**, with the working cord on the **right**.

**Loop 2 should be at the bottom.**



**Step 6:** Tighten and adjust the Celtic Heart knot so the design is the shape of a heart, and is the size you need.

You can tighten it completely, or keep it somewhat loose, as I did in the images.

## Bumblebee Knot



**Description:** The Bumblebee Knot features the interlaced weaving common to all Celtic knots.

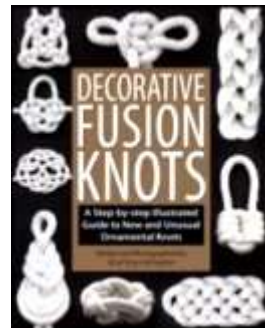
This decorative knot is easy to tie and can be used as a focal decoration for a Macrame bracelet or belt design.

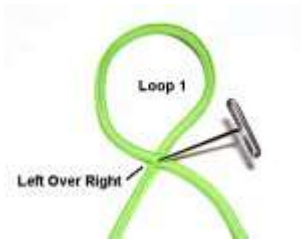
The ends come out from the sides, and can be attachment points for other cords.

In the example shown, I used Paracord, which needs to be prepared and finished by melting the tips with a flame.

I found this knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website **Designs by J. D. Lenzen.**

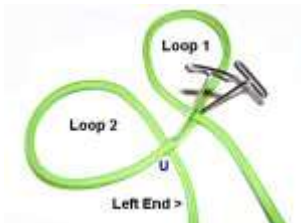
Be sure to visit his website, by clicking on the link or image. The knot gallery contains **video tutorials** for a variety of very unique and appealing designs.





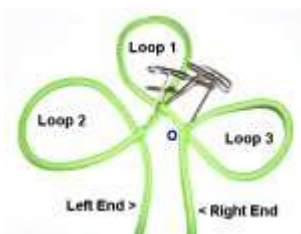
**Step 1:** Cut one cord, at least 36 inches long.

Make the first loop at the center, crossing **left over** right. Secure the loop to your board.



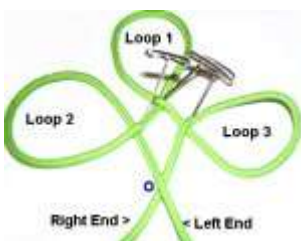
**Step 2:** Make loop 2 using the end now on the **left**, rotating in a **clockwise** direction.

Pass the end **under** to make the crossing point, as you complete the loop.

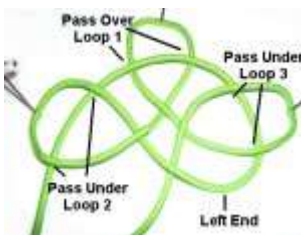


**Step 3:** Use the end now on the **right** to make the third loop, in a **counter-clockwise** direction.

Pass **over** to make the crossing point.



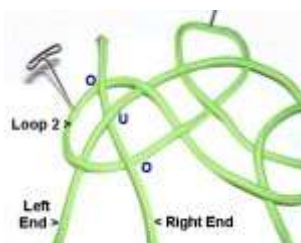
**Step 4:** Cross the two ends **left over right**.



**Step 5:** Move the **left end** (now on the right) up the right side, passing **under** loop 3.

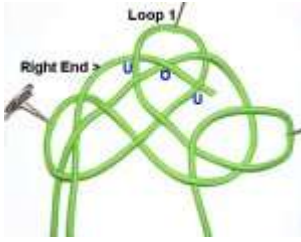
Pass it **over** loop 1, heading right to left.

Pass it **under** loop 2, as you bring it down to the lower left. Secure the end to your board.

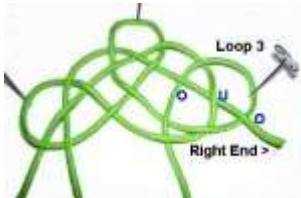


**Step 6:** Move the **right end** (now on the left) up to **loop 2**.

Weave it **over - under - over**, as you bring it towards the top of the Bumblebee knot.



**Step 7:** Move the right end up to **loop 1**, and then weave it **under - over - under** the three segments.



**Step 8:** Bring the right end down to **loop 3**.

Weave it **over - under - over**, as you bring it towards the lower right.



**Step 9:** Tighten the Bumblebee Knot by removing the slack and reducing the size of each loop. You can tighten it completely, or leave some space so the design is more obvious.

## Round Knots



**Cloud Knot**



**Seal of Solomon**

**Description:** Round Knots can be used as pendants, or for items like pot holders and coasters.

On this page are two interesting decorative knots that are round and have the woven elements that are common in Celtic designs.

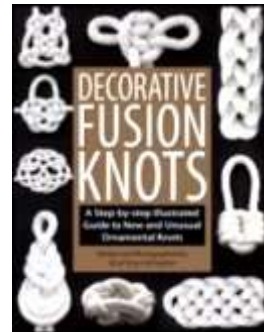
The Cloud knot starts with a [Josephine knot](#). There are two additional loops at the bottom.

The Seal of Solomon is sometimes called the **Flat Turks Head** knot. It is a vintage historical knot known by many Celtic artists. It also begins with a

Josephine knot.

I found the Cloud Knot on the [Fusion Knots](#) website **Designs by J. D. Lenzen.**

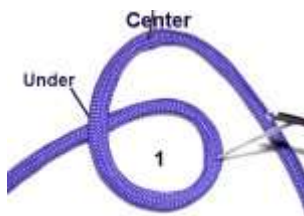
Be sure to visit his website, by clicking on the image or link. His knot gallery contains **video tutorials** for a variety of very unique and appealing designs.



## Cloud Knot

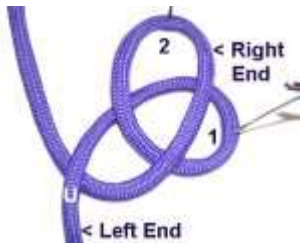
The Cloud Knot is the easiest of the two round knots shown on this page.

The first 3 steps below describe the process for making the Josephine knot.



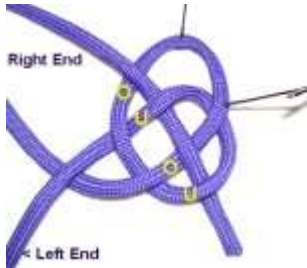
**Step 1:** Fold a 36-inch cord in half and secure it at the center.

Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the **left half**. The end should pass **under** to make the crossing point.



**Step 2:** Bring the **right end** down, across the center of the first loop, so it rests on top of it. This creates a second loop.

Before moving on to the next step, pass the right end **under** the left.



**Step 3:** To create the third loop, bring the **right end** to the top of the knot.

Weave it **over - under - over - under** the four segments of loops 1 and 2.

**Design Tip:** Both of these Round Knots feature changes at the **bottom**.

Make sure you follow the instructions for the bottom areas closely.



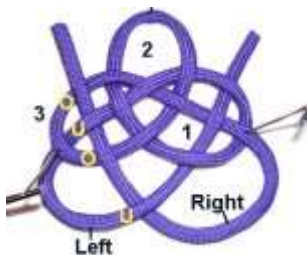
**Step 4:** **Pull out** the end that is on your **right**, so it rests **over** the lower portion of **Loop 1**, rather than under it.

**Pull out** the end on the **left**, so it rests **under Loop 3**, rather than over it.



**Step 5:** Move the end on your **left** to Loop 1.

Weave it **under - over - under** the 3 segments.



**Step 6:** Move the end on your **right** towards Loop 3.

Pass it **under** the left end.

Weave it **over - under - over** the three segments at Loop 3.





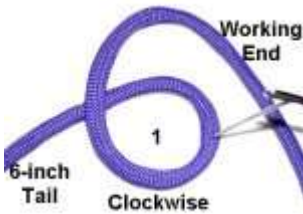
Round knots need to be balanced, so take your time as you tighten this knot.

I left it loose, to show the details.



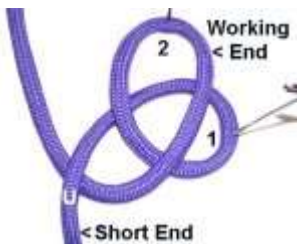
## Seal of Solomon

The Seal of Solomon represents fire, water, and balance.



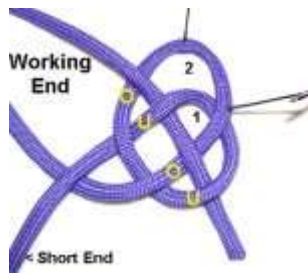
**Step 1:** Secure one end of a 60-inch cord to your board. Make a **clockwise** loop **6 inches** from the end.

Bring the working end up in an arch above the loop and secure it.



**Step 2:** Bring the working end down, passing **over** the middle of the first loop. This creates **Loop 2**.

Bring the working end **under** the secured end.

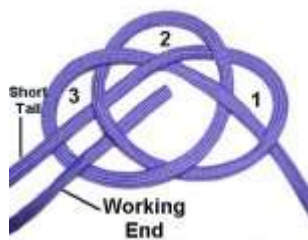


**Step 3:** Bring the working end through loops 1 and 2, weaving **over - under - over - under**.

This creates the third loop on the left, and completes the Josephine Knot.

**Step 4:** Tighten and balance the knot so all three loops are the **same size**.

When you are first learning to make round knots like this one, enlarge the loops so they are around 2 inches in size, to give you room to work.



**Step 5:** Move the working end (right) around to the left (**clockwise**) so it's next to the short end, and Loop 3.

This will make a 4th loop at the bottom, which is shown in the image below.



**Step 6:** Use the working end to **follow the path** of the knot, all the way through.

This image shows the doubling in only a portion of the knot. The image below shows the completed process.

Make sure the working end stays on the same side, so it remains neat and flat.



Round knots can be a challenge to tighten and balance, since cord material is so flexible.

The best approach is to start at one end and remove the slack one area at a time, as you move to the other end.

# Panel Knot



**Description:** The Panel Knot is a historic knot that resembles many of the Celtic designs. It's a type of continuous weaving that can be made any size. It's similar in appearance to a [Celtic Mat](#).

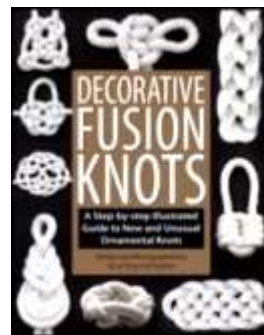
The ends come out at the top, so they can be used as part of a Macrame necklace, with this knot as the pendant.

Another way to use this decorative knot is to make items like place mats and rugs, which require a flat knot. All you need to do is make it much larger and thicken it with additional cords, like the image on the right at the top of the page.

The material I used was Paracord, which needs to be prepared by melting the ends of the cord with a flame.

I found this knot in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#), written by J. D. Lenzen.

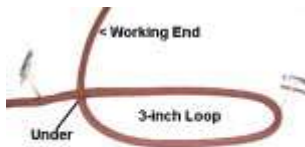
To see his website, click on the link or image. There are a large number of unique knots in the knot gallery, and most of them have **video tutorials**.



**Step 1:** You need a long cord, at least 2 yards long to **practice** the Panel Knot.

To make large items like place mats and rugs, use the material still wrapped on the roll, without cutting. This way you can do as many rows of weaving as you wish, without worrying that the cord is too short.

Secure one end to your project board, on your left.



Make a long **clockwise** loop, about 3 inches in size for small items like pendants. The crook of the loop should be on the right.

Pass the working end **under** the secured end to form the crossing point on the left.

To make this knot larger, start off with a longer loop, at least **double** the size you want to end up with.

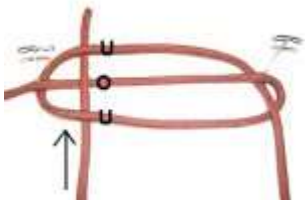
The size of the loop from **right to left** is considered the **length**, since you will turn it later.

You will need to do additional rows of weaving to fill in a large loop.



**Step 2:** Move the working end to the **right**, next to the crook of the first loop.

Pass it through the loop, weaving **under - over** the two segments. The end should be heading towards the bottom.

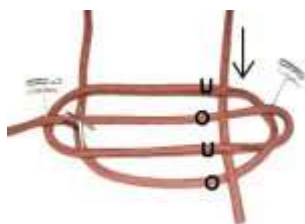


**Step 3:** Bring the working end back to the left side of the Panel knot.

Weave through **under - over - under**, as you bring the end to the top.

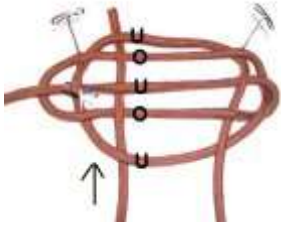
**Important:** Start the weaving for each loop of the Panel Knot by passing **under** the first segment.

Each row of weaving is placed so you progress gradually **towards the center** of the Panel knot.



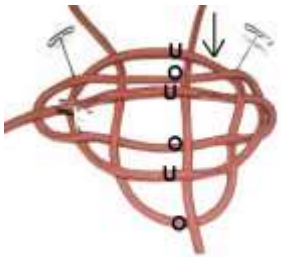
**Step 4:** Bring the end over to the right.

Weave through **under - over - under - over**, as you bring the end to the bottom.



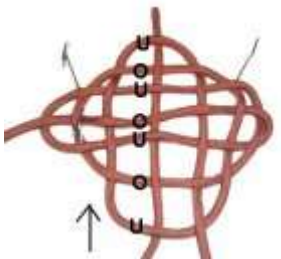
**Step 5:** The next row of weaving takes place at the left again.

Weave **under - over - under - over - under** the five segments, bringing the end to the top.



**Step 6:** Weave through at the right, alternating under and over the six segments.

To make a larger knot, you would repeat the weaving several more times, progressing towards the center.



**Step 7:** The final row of weaving takes place at the center.

Alternate over and under the seven segments, as you bring the end to the top.



**Step 8:** Turn the knot so the ends are at the top.

Tighten the knot gradually, removing the slack starting from the **working end**.

You can tighten it to form any shape, but a rectangle or square is how it's usually arranged.

Here are two additional images of the Panel knot:



<< Rectangular design that's tightened loosely.

A second cord was added to thicken the design, following the path of the first. >>



## Pendant Knot



**Description:** The Pendant Knot features both small and large loops, along with weaving and crossed sections, similar to the flowing design of many Celtic knots.

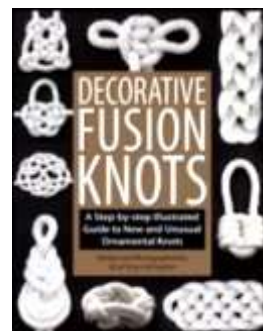
The ends come out at the top, making it a great decorative knot for Macrame necklace designs.

In the example shown, I used Paracord material, which needs to be prepared by melting the ends with a flame.

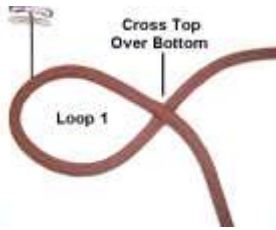
[Decorative Fusion Knots](#) is a great book written by **J. D. Lenzen**.

This knot is found on his website, which you can visit by clicking on the link or image.

His knot gallery contains **video tutorials** for a variety of very interesting decorative knots.

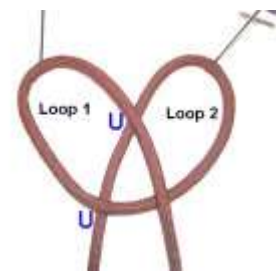






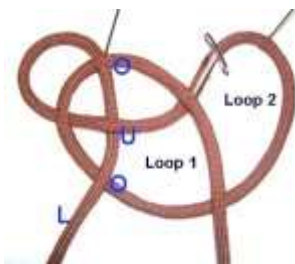
**Step 1:** Fold a 36-inch cord in half to create the first loop, which is arranged **sideways**.

The top portion should pass over the bottom to make the crossing point, which should be on the right.



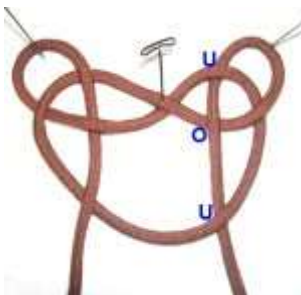
**Step 2:** Bring the end at the **top** around in a **counter-clockwise** direction, to make the second loop.

It should be arranged so it rests **under** the first loop, forming a pretzel shape.



**Step 3:** Use the end on the **left** to make a small loop in a **clockwise** direction.

The end should pass **over - under - over** the three segments in Loop 1 as you bring it down.

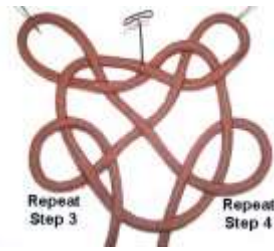


**Step 4:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the end on the **right**.

The end should go **under - over - under** as you bring it down to the bottom of the Pendant knot.



**Step 5:** Cross the ends left over right, **inside** the knot, near the center.



**Step 6:** Repeat steps 3 and 4, placing two more small loops on the right and left side of the knot.

You can cross the ends one more time (step 5) if you wish. You can also create a third set of loops (step 6).



**Step 7:** Tighten the knot by removing the slack from the **large loop** first. Then reduce the size of the small loops.

The ends should be at the top, and they can now be used to make the necklace design.

## Tree of Life



**Description:** The Tree of Life is a popular historical symbol that represents strength and wisdom. It also refers to the connection of all forms of life.

Health, longevity, and eternal life are often associated with this unique design.

You can use this decorative knot as a pendant, or a focal point for a Macrame bracelet.

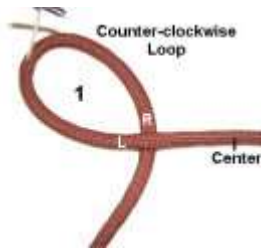
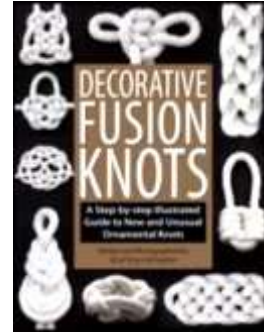
Making it large, and using a second cord to double it, will allow you to make a nice set of coasters or a table decoration.

In the example shown, nylon Paracord was used. It needs to be melted with a flame at the tips, to seal in the fibers forming the core.

I found this knot in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#)

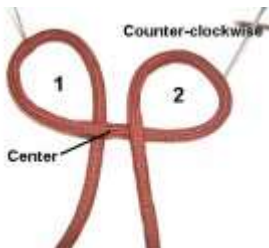
Written by JD Lenzen

Click on the link or image to see his other innovative **Fusion knots**, which are a combination of different knotting elements and techniques.

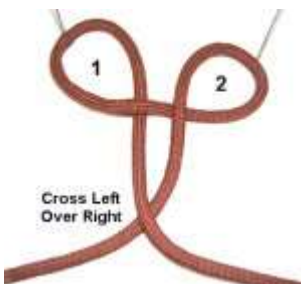


**Step 1:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop near the center of a 45-inch cord.

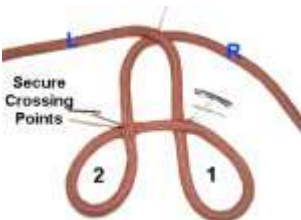
The left portion should be **horizontal**, and pass **over** the right to make the crossing point.



**Step 2:** Create the second **counter-clockwise** loop, positioning it to the **right** of the first.

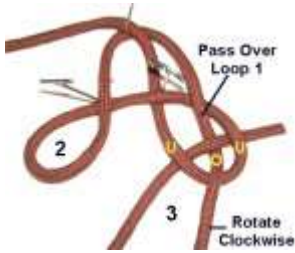


**Step 3:** Cross the left end over the right, **below** the two loops.



**Step 4:** **Turn the knot around**, so the ends are at the **top**.

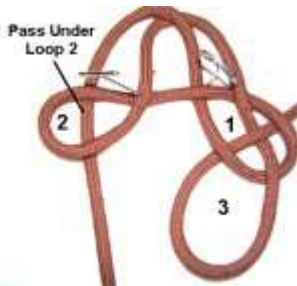
Secure the crossing points of the two loops as well as the ends.



**Step 5:** Use the end that is now on the **right**, and bring it straight down, passing **over** Loop 1.

Rotate it **clockwise**, to form the third loop.

Weave it through **Loop 1**, **under - over - under** the three segments.



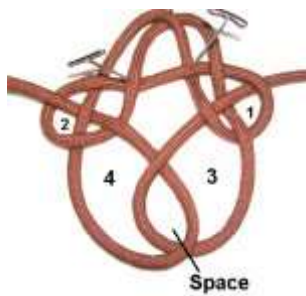
**Step 6:** Use the end on the **left**, and bring it straight down, passing **under** Loop 2.

Make **Loop 3** slightly larger than the other two loops, since you will now be creating the lower portion of the Tree of Life.



**Step 7:** Bring the **left end** to the **right**, and pass it through **Loop 3** from the top (over - under).

Bring it back to the **left**, and weave it through **Loop 2**. Pass it **over - under - over** the three segments, to make Loop 4.

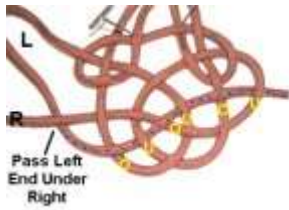


Move **Loops 3 and 4** towards the center, so there is a third space.



**Step 8:** Pass the **right end** through Loops 3 and 4, moving horizontally (right to left).

Weave it **under - over - over - under** the four segments.



**Step 9:** Pass the **left end under** the right end.

Weave **over - under - over - under - over - under** the 6 segments.

I've marked the cord with **small blue dots** so you can see it better.



**Step 10:** **Stretch the knot** so Loops 1 and 2 are near the top, and there is space between the bottom and top areas.

Start at one end and remove the slack as you go through the entire knot. The ends will be at the bottom of the Tree of Life when you are done.

## River Knot



**Description:** The River Knot represents the sun rising over a rippling river.

It starts out with the **Josephine knot**, which is a historical knot often used to form other types of decorative knots.

You could use this design as the focal point for a Macrame bracelet or belt, since the ends come out at the sides.

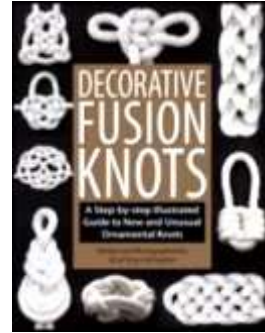
A wide pendant can also be made with this knot. You would finish off the ends and then add a new cord for the necklace (at the top).

The material used in the example is Paracord, which needs to be prepared and finished by melting the tips with a flame.

This knot is in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#)

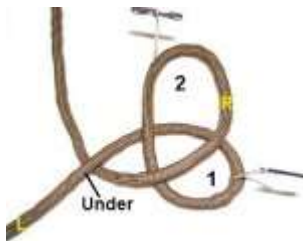
written by **J.D. Lenzen**.

Be sure to click on the link or image to visit his website, which has a large knot gallery featuring many interesting knots, with **video tutorials**.



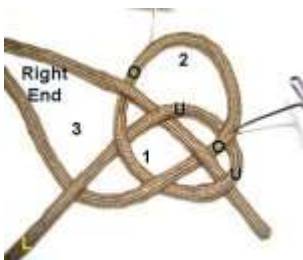
**Step 1:** Secure the center of a 60-inch cord to your board.

Use the **left half** to make a **counter-clockwise** loop, passing **under** to form the crossing point.



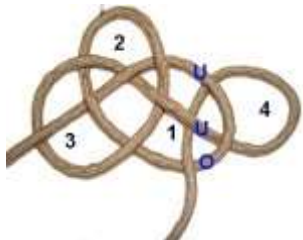
Bring the **right half** down, **over** the middle of the first loop.

Bring it back up, passing **under** the left end, to complete **loop 2**.



Weave the **right end** through loops 1 and 2, passing **over - under - over - under**.

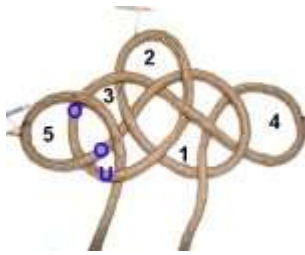
This creates **loop 3**, which is **clockwise**.



**Step 2:** Move the end on the **right** near **loop 1**, to make **loop 4**.

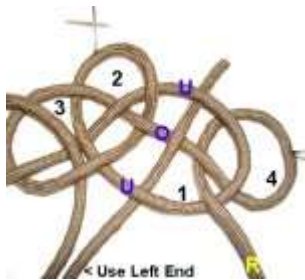
Weave **under - under - over** the three segments, rotating **counter-clockwise**.





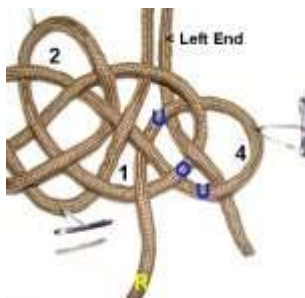
**Step 3:** Make loop 5 using the end on the **left**, next to **loop 3**.

Pass it **over - over - under** the three segments, rotating **clockwise**.



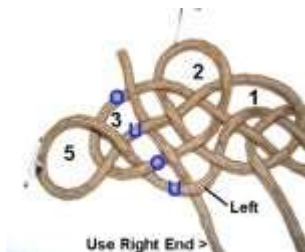
**Step 4:** Push **loop 4** to the **right**, so there is space between it and loop 2.

Weave the **left** end through the space (**loop 1**), **under - over - under** the three segments.



**Step 5:** Bring the **left end** back down and to the right.

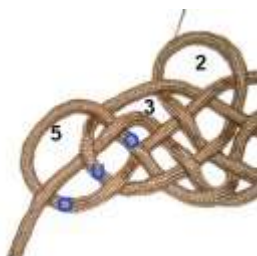
Weave it through loop 4, **under - over - under** the three segments.



**Step 6:** Push **loop 5** to the **left** to create a space between it and loop 2.

Pass the **right** end **under** the left at the **bottom** of the River knot.

Weave it **over - under - over** the three segments (Loop 3), through the space.



**Step 7:** Bring the **right end** back down and to the left.

Weave it **over - under - over** the three segments at Loop 5.



**Step 8:** Tighten the River Knot gradually, removing the slack from the loops in the order they were made.

Secure the ends to the back or use them to make other knots.

## Woven Triangles



**Triangular Knot**



**Longhorn Knot**

**Description:** These two Woven Triangles feature the weaving common to all Celtic knots. Both can be used as a focal point for a Macrame bracelet or choker design.

The **Triangular knot** features three sides that are fairly straight, and has rounded angles.

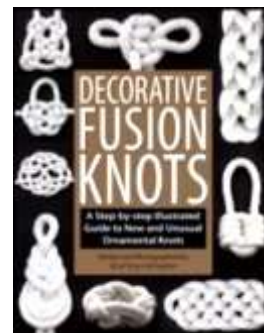
The **Longhorn Knot** has wider profile and sharper angles.

Make sure you know the difference between a **loop**, which is circular, and **abight**, which made by folding the cord.

The material used in the examples is Paracord, which needs to be prepared and finished by melting the tips with a flame.

I found these two woven triangles on the website called [Fusion Knots](#), designs by J. D. Lenzen.

Be sure to visit his website, by clicking on the image. His knot library contains tutorials for a variety of very unique and appealing designs. You can also find information about his new book.





## Triangular Knot

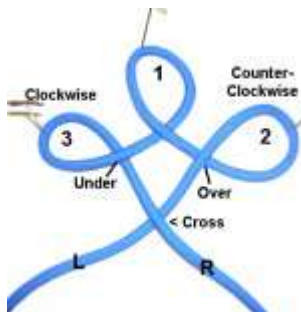
**Important:** The key to making both woven triangles is to keep track of the ends, so you don't confuse them.

I recommend you label the two ends with different colored tape.



**Step 1:** Cut one cord, 60 inches long, to practice the Triangular knot.

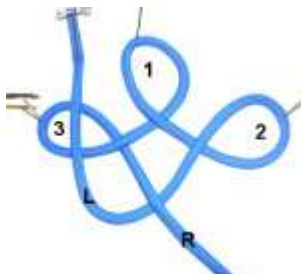
Make **loop 1** in the **center** of the cord, crossing the left half over the right.



**Step 2:** Make loop 2 with the **left half** of the cord, (now on the right). Rotate **counter-clockwise**, passing the end **over** to make the crossing point.

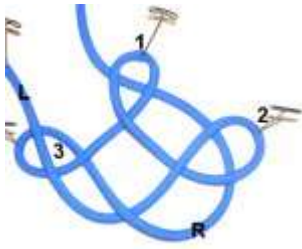
Make loop 3 with the **right half** of the cord, in a **clockwise** direction. Pass the end **under** to form the crossing point.

Cross the ends **right over left**, below the loops.

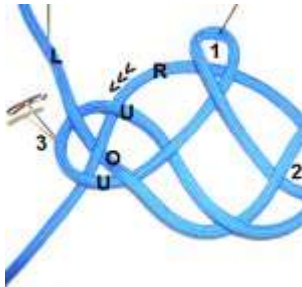


**Step 3:** Bring the **left end** up, passing **over** the middle of Loop 3.

Secure it to your board, since you won't be using it again.



**Step 4:** Move the **right end under** loops 2 and 1, as you bring it to the upper left.



**Step 5:** Weave the right end **through Loop 3**, on the left.

Pass **under - over - under** the three segments.



**Step 6:** Move the right end in a **clockwise** direction, passing **over** the left end.

Move it **under** the segment of the cord resting **between** loops 1 and 3.

Weave it through loop 1, **over - under - over** the three segments.



**Step 7:** Pass the right end **under** the segment **between** loops 1 and 2.

Weave it through loop 2, **over - under - over** the three segments.



It's important to tighten and adjust both woven triangles on this page **slowly**, until they are the shape and size you want.

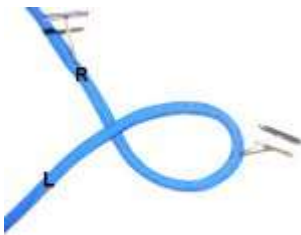
The loops form the three points, with loop 1 at the bottom.



## Longhorn Knot

The Longhorn Knot is the most unique of the two woven triangles on this page. Pay close attention to the placement of the bights and ends.

Cut one cord, at least 60 inches long. Place different types of tape on the two ends, to tell them apart.



**Step 1:** Make a loop at the center of the cord, crossing **left over right**.

Turn the loop **sideways**, so the curved portion (crook) is on the right, with the crossing point on the left.



**Step 2:** Rotate the **left** end **counter-clockwise**.

Pass it through the loop **under - over** (from below).

Adjust the loop so it's the same size as the first.



**Step 3:** Fold the the **right end** to form **bight 1**, on the upper left.

Bring it straight down, passing it through the loop on the **left, under - over** (from below).

Secure the bight to your board.



Fold the **left end** to make **bight 2**, on the upper right.

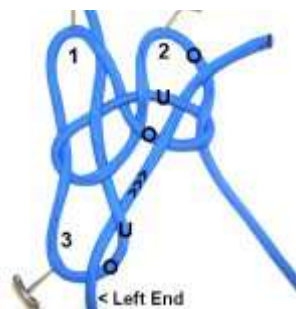
Bring it straight down, passing it through the loop on the **right, over - under** (from the top).

Secure it to your board.



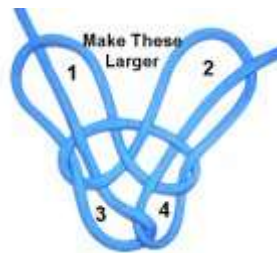
**Step 4:** Fold the **right end** to form **bight 3** at the lower left.

Pass it through the loop on the left, and bight 1, **under - over - under** (towards the top).



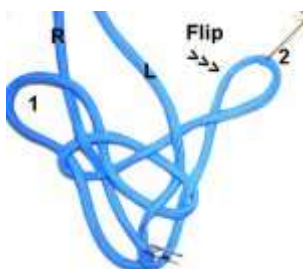
Move the **left end clockwise**, passing through bight 3 from the **top (over - under)**.

Weave the end through the right loop and bight 2, **over - under - over** the three segments.



**Step 5:** Pull on the **bights 1 and 2** at the top, to make them larger.

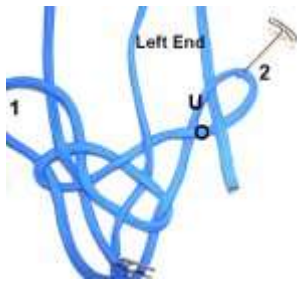
Bights 3 and 4 will become a bit tighter.



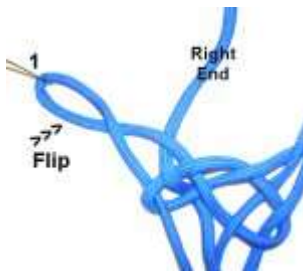
**Step 6:** Move the **left end** closer to **bight 1**.

Flip the top portion of **bight 2** over the bottom, to form a loop.



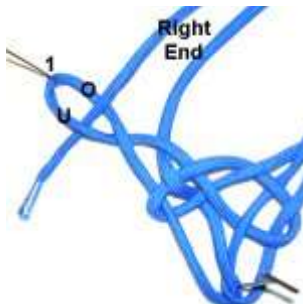


Pass the **left end** through the loop you just made, **under - over** (from below).



**Step 7:** Move the **right end** closer to the center.

Flip the lower portion of **bight 1** over the top, to form a loop.



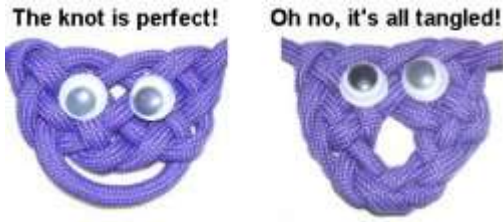
Pass the **right end** through the new loop from the top, which is **over - under**.



**Step 8:** Woven triangles need to be tightened a little at a time, keeping the cord flat.

The goal for this design is to form a wide triangular shape, with bights 3 and 4 at the bottom.

## Double Coin Patterns



**Description:** These Double Coin Patterns both start out with the [Josephine knot](#), also called the Double Coin Knot.

This decorative can be used as a starting point to form other shapes and knot designs like the two shown on this page.

I had a little fun while I was tying the knots, as you can see in the image above. Children can make a project of tying decorative knots to make interesting shapes, so encourage them to practice.

The [Wide Lanyard knot](#) has a rectangular shape, with a wide loop at the top.

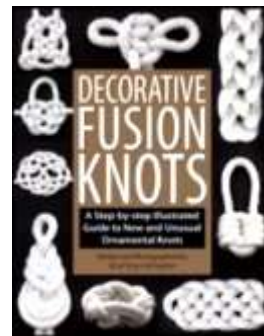
The [Mayan temple knot](#) has a rounded triangular shape, with an opening near the center.

Both of these knot designs are suitable for pendants or focal points for Macrame bracelets.

The material used in the example is Paracord, which needs to be prepared and finished by melting the ends with a flame. It helps if you [label the ends](#) with different types of tape, so you can tell them apart.

I found these designs in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#), written by J.D. Lenzen.

Be sure to click on the link or image to visit his website, which has a large gallery of interesting knots, along with **video tutorials**.



---

## Double Coin Knot Instructions

**Step 1:** Secure the center of the cord to your board. Make loop 1 with the **left end**, in a **counter-clockwise** direction. Pass the end **under** to form the crossing point on the left.

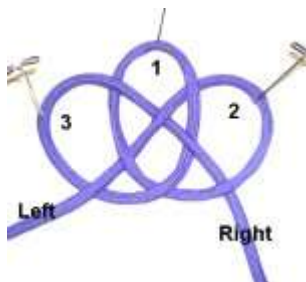
**Step 2:** Move the **right end over** loop 1. Moving **clockwise**, bring it **under** the left end, as you bring it towards the top.

**Step 3:** Weave the **right end** through loops 2 and 1, heading down and to the right, **over - under - over - under**.

Arrange the three loops as shown in the instructions for the Double Coin Patterns described below.



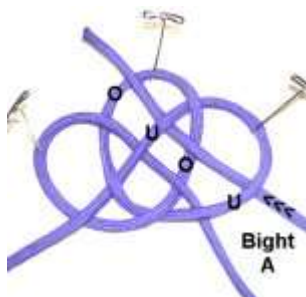
## Wide Lanyard Knot



**Step 1:** Tie a **large** Double Coin Knot in the center of a 60-inch cord.

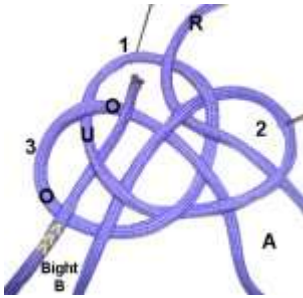
Mentally label the loops as shown, and the ends where they are resting now.

**Design Tip:** The weaving sequences in each step of both Double Coin Patterns is very important, so be sure to look at the images closely. You can click on each one to see a larger view.



**Step 2:** Fold the **right end** to form **Bight A**, moving **counter-clockwise**.

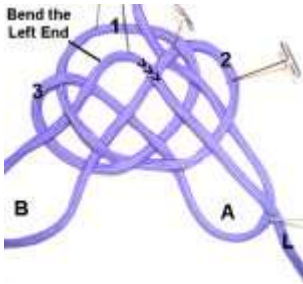
Weave **under - over - under - over** the segments, as you bring it to the upper left.



**Step 3:** Fold the **left end** to create **Bight B**, moving **clockwise**.

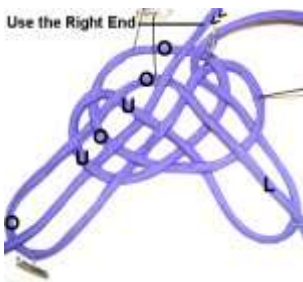
Weave **over - under - over** the three segments.

Before you move on, spread everything out, so the **bights** are as wide as possible.



**Step 4:** **Bend the left end** down and to the right, through the middle of bight A. It should just rest on top for now.

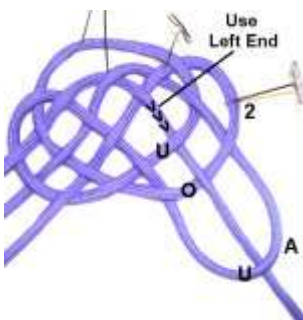
Secure the end to your board.



**Step 5:** Weave the **right end** down through the middle of **Bight B**.

Start by passing **over** loop 1 at the top of the knot, and **over** the left end, where it bends.

Bring it **under - over - under - over** the next four segments.



**Step 6:** Use the left end again, which is resting on top of Bight A at the moment.

Weave it **under - over - under** the three segments closest to the bottom of the bight.



**Step 7:** Tighten and balance the knot, but leave some space.

You can now use a second cord to double the knot and make it thicker (optional).

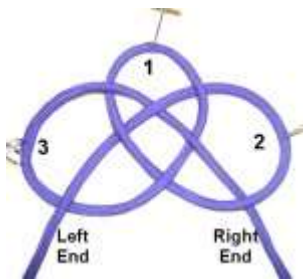


**Step 8:** Tighten the knot further, progressing **slowly** from one end to the other.

Double Coin Patterns should be tightened firmly to form the desired shape.

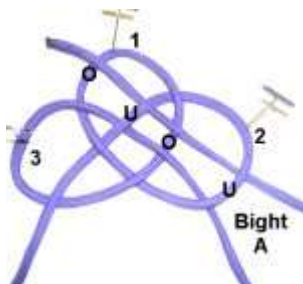


## Mayan Temple Knot



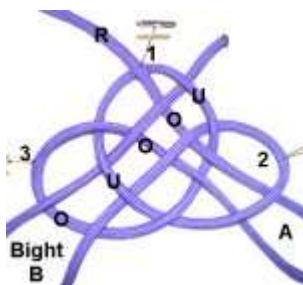
**Step 1:** Both Double Coin Patterns start the same way, with a Josephine/Double Coin knot. Use the instructions further up on the page.

Mentally label the three loops as shown, and the ends where they are resting now.



**Step 2:** Create **bight A** with the **right** end, moving **counter-clockwise**.

Weave **under - over - under - over** the four segments, as you bring the end to the **upper left**.

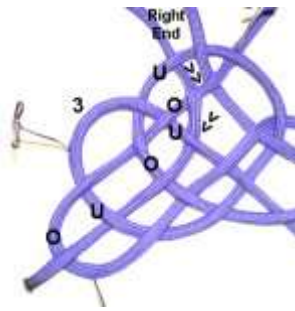


**Step 3:** Create **bight B** using the left end, moving **clockwise**. Pass **over - under - over** the segments of Loop 3.

Bring it **over** the right end, and **under** the upper portion of Loop 1.

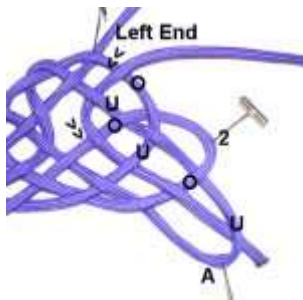
**Design Tip:** Double Coin Patterns have very specific weaving styles, so pay close attention to the following details. Spread the loops and bights so you have

plenty of room to work.



**Step 4:** Bring the **right end** (now on the upper left) **under** the top of Loop 1.

Weave **over - under - over - under - over** the remaining segments, **curving** it so it goes down through the middle of **bight B**.



**Step 5:** Bring the left end **over** the top of Loop 1, on the right side of the knot.

Weave it **under - over - under - over - under** the remaining segments, as you **curve** it so it goes down through the middle of **bight A**.



**Step 6:** Tighten the Mayan Temple knot **carefully**, removing the slack from the loops from one end to the other.

## Ring of Coins





**Description:** The Ring of Coins is a historical knot based on the [Josephine Knot](#), which is also called the **Double Coin Knot**.

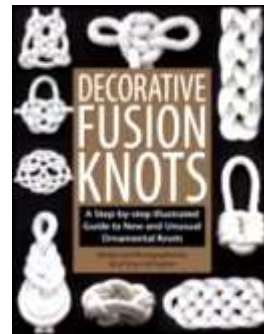
It's similar in appearance to the [Celtic Circle knot](#), but is easier to tie.

This is a round decorative knot, and it has a space in the center. You can use it as a pendant for a Macrame necklace, or anywhere you need a compact knot with the ends at the top. You can add a second cord to double the knot, or make it very large and fill it in with several cords.

The material used in the example is Paracord, which must be prepared by melting the ends with a flame.

The Ring of Coins is in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#) by **JD Lenzen**.

Be sure to click on the link or image to visit his website, which contains video tutorials for a large number of unique decorative knots.



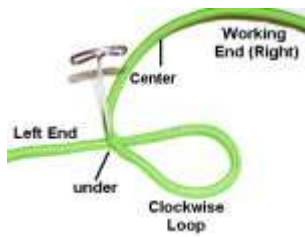
**Step 1:** Secure a 72-inch cord to your board at the center.

The instructions for the first [Josephine Knot](#) are as follows:

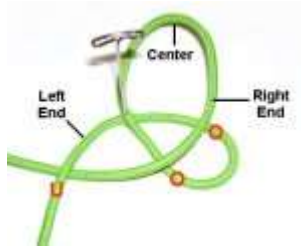
**Right Loop:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the **left** half of the cord. The end should pass **under** to make the crossing point on the left.

**Center Loop:** Bring the **right** end down, so it rests **over** the first loop. Pass it **under** the left half of the cord, and up to the top of the knot rotating **clockwise**.

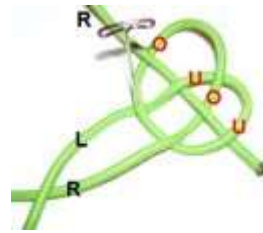
**Left Loop:** Weave the **right** end through Loops 1 and 2, moving towards the lower right. Pass it **over - under - over - under** the four segments.



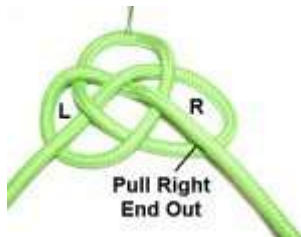
**Right Loop**



**Center Loop**

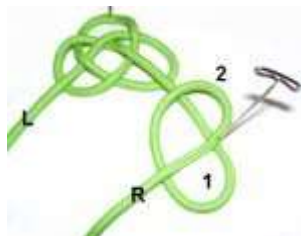


**Left Loop**



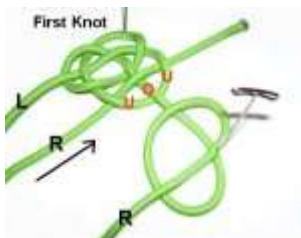
Tighten the Josephine knot slightly, and balance the three loops. Mentally label the ends where they are now.

**Step 2:** Pull the **right** end out of the bottom of the right loop, so it rests **on top** of it.



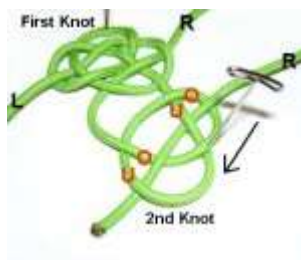
**Step 3:** Make two **clockwise** loops with the **right end**.

The second loop should rest **on top** of the first loop, positioned below and to the right of the Josephine knot above.



Rotate the **right** end up to the Josephine knot, moving **clockwise**.

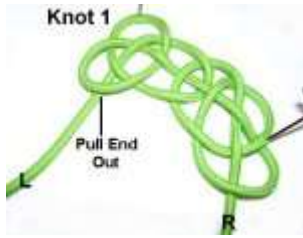
Weave through the three segments of the **right loop, under - over - under**.



**Step 4:** Bring the **right** end down to the two loops you made in the previous step.

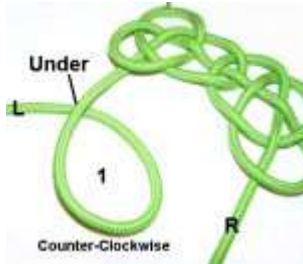
Weave through **over - under - over - under** the four segments, towards the bottom.

You now have **two** linked Josephine knots for your Ring of Coins.



**Step 5:** Move to the left side of the first Josephine knot.

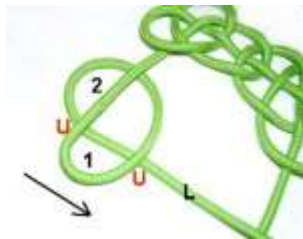
Pull the **left end** out of the left loop, so it rests **under** it.



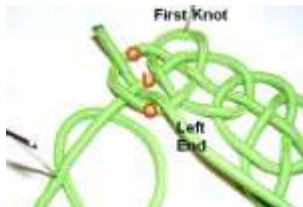
**Step 6:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the **left** end.

It should be placed across from the second Josephine knot on the right, and below the first knot.

Pass the end **under** to form the crossing point.

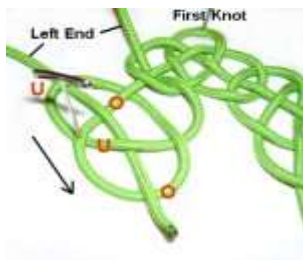


Make a second **counter-clockwise** loop by passing the **left** end **under** the first one.



**Step 7:** Bring the **left** end up to the first Josephine knot, rotating **counter-clockwise**.

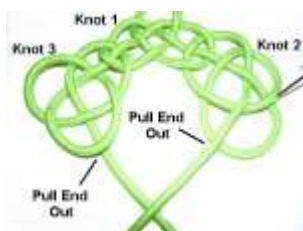
Weave it **over - under - over** the three segments of the **left loop**.



**Step 8:** Bring the **left** end down to the set of loops you made in step 6.

Weave **under - over - under - over** the four segments.

This completes the **third** Josephine knot for your Ring of Coins.

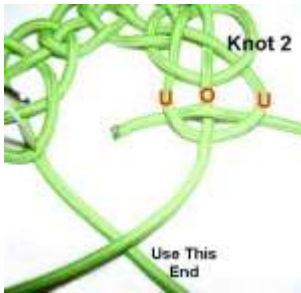


**Step 9:** Pull the ends out of the **lower** loops in knots **2** and **3**.

On the left, the end should rest **under** the loop. On the right, it should rest **over** it.



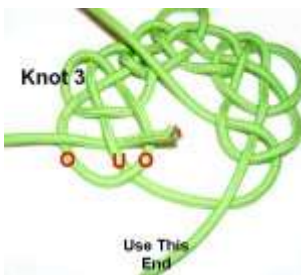
**Step 10:** Cross the right end over the left.



**Step 11:** Rotate the end that's now on the **right** in a **counter-clockwise** direction. Bring it up to the second Josephine Knot, which is on the right.

Locate the lower loop, where you pulled the end out in step 9.

Weave it through **under - over - under**, moving **right to left**.



**Step 12:** Move the end now on the **left** up to the third Josephine Knot, rotating **clockwise**.

Locate the lower loop where you pulled the end out.

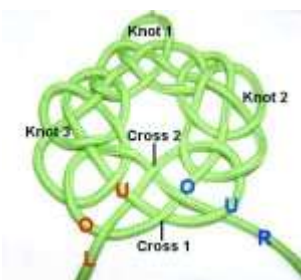
Weave it through **over - under - over**, heading **left to right**.



**Step 13:** Locate the first crossed area you made in step 10.

Cross the ends again, right over left, so it's above the first cross.

This prepares the area for the 4th Josephine Knot for your Ring of Coins.



**Step 14:** Move the end now on the **left**, which is marked in **red**, **under - over** the two segments just below it, also on the left.

Move the end now on the **right**, which is marked in **blue**, **over - under** the two segments below it, on the right.



**Step 15:** Tighten the Ring of Coins slowly and carefully, removing the slack from the knots from one end to the other.

Leave some space, so you can see the overall design clearly.

## Kinky Lovers Knot



The Kinky Lovers Knot is a unique historical knot rarely seen in Macrame patterns.

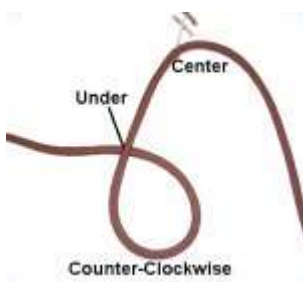
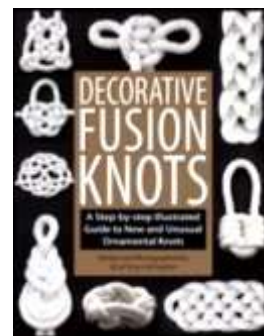
It's sometimes called the Double Figure Eight knot.

You can use this decorative knot to make a simple necklace, by adjusting the loop at the top so it's large enough to fit over your head.

This knot makes a nice clasp as well.

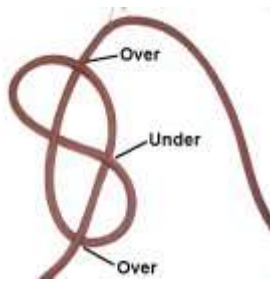
I found this knot in [Decorative Fusion Knots](#) written by **J. D. Lenzen**.

Be sure to visit his website, by clicking on the link or image. His knot gallery contains tutorials for a variety of very unique and appealing designs.



**Step 1:** Fold a cord in half and secure it at the center. Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the **left** half.

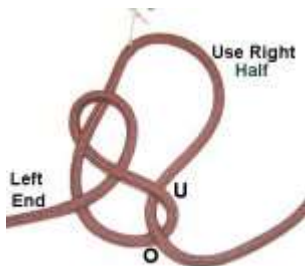
Pass the end **under** the vertical portion to make the crossing point on the left.



**Step 2:** Direct the **left** end around in a **clockwise** direction, passing **over** the vertical segment, above the first loop.

Bring it down to the first loop, and pass it through from **below** (under - over). Secure the end on the left.

**Design Tip:** This is the first figure eight design for the Kinky Lovers Knot. In the next few steps I will describe it in terms of the two loops, which are **upper and lower**. The lower loop is the one you made in step 1.



**Step 3:** Bring the **right** end of the cord down to the **first loop** you made in step 1.

Pass it through from **below** (under - over).

**Important:** This is the time to make adjustments to the size of the loop at the top center area of the knot. That's the loop resting above the tightened portion in the image at the top of the page.

Secure it in **two areas**, so when you complete the next two steps, the size won't change.



**Step 4:** Rotate the **right** end **counter-clockwise**, to form the lower loop of the second figure eight.

Pass it through the **upper** loop of the first knot, from the **top** (over - under). Bring it **under** the vertical segment to the right.



**Step 5:** To complete the second figure eight, bring the **right** end down to the **lower** loop of the first figure eight.

Pass through it from the **top** (over - under).





**Step 6:** Gradually remove the slack to tighten the knot.

## Figure Eight Patterns



**Description:** Figure Eight Patterns are often used to create appealing Macrame designs, especially jewelry. This historical Celtic symbol represents the concepts of eternity, unity and love.

A sennit (chain) of these decorative knots will have the weaving common to all Celtic knots. Single knots are used in the finishing steps of Macrame projects, and you can use them for linking cords to one another.

**Five Figure Eight Patterns are described below:**

- The Single Knot
- Figure Eight Tuck
- Fisherman's Knot
- Vertical Chain
- Horizontal Chain

On a separate page is the [Kinky Lover's Knot](#), which is two figure eights linked together in a unique manner.



## Single Figure Eight Knot

The single Figure 8 can be used as a finishing knot, near the ends of cords, by tightening it firmly.

It does have a tendency to loosen, so using another type of knot on either side really helps.



**Step 1:** Secure one end of a cord to your board.

Make a **counter-clockwise** loop with the working end.

This loop is at the **bottom** of the figure eight.

Bring the working end **over** the secured end to make the crossing point.



**Step 2:** Create the upper loop by passing the working end **under** the secured end, moving from left to right (**clockwise**).

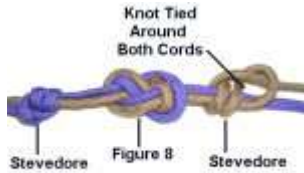


**Step 3:** Bring the working end down, and direct it through the lower loop from the **top** (over - under).



Tighten the Figure Eight knot by pulling on the ends.

Use the ends to tie other knots, or add glue while tightening if you plan to use it as a finishing knot.



This shows how the [Stevedore Knot](#) is used to secure the ends of a **doubled** Figure Eight knot, to prevent it from coming out.

For more information, visit that page by clicking on the link.



## Figure Eight Tuck

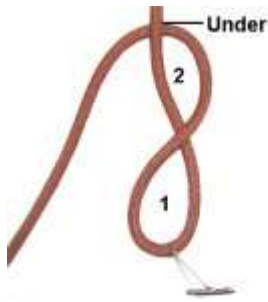
**Description:** The Figure Eight Patterns on this page are variations of the single knot, even though they might seem a lot different than the first design.

This knot is made in **reverse**, and two tucks are added, which is where the name comes from. This is a much tighter knot, so it's a really good choice for finishing the ends of cords.



**Step 1:** Make a loop in the center of a cord. Cross **left over right** to make the crossing point.

Secure it to your board as shown, with the ends at the top. This is the **lower loop** of the figure eight.

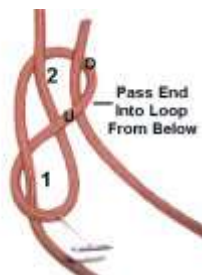


**Step 2:** Move the end that's now on your **right** **under** the secured portion, to form the **upper loop** of the Figure 8.

The working end should be on the left when you are through.



**Step 3:** Move the working end down and through the **lower loop** (1), passing **over - under** the two segments.



**Step 4:** Bring the working end to the top, and through the **upper loop** from **below (under - over)**.



**Step 5:** Locate the **secured end**. Bring it down to the **lower loop** at the bottom of the design.

Pass it through from the **top (over - under)**.



Slowly tighten the Figure Eight Tuck, until it's small and firm.



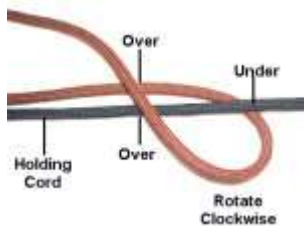


## Fisherman's Knot

**Description:** Figure Eight Patterns are used in other crafts. This one is often chosen by fishermen to link cords and lines to each other.

It serves the same purpose in Macrame, so it's considered a "connection knot", similar to a [Linked Overhand knot](#).

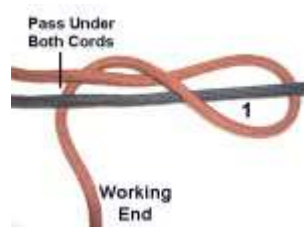
**Step 1:** Secure a holding cord to your board, horizontally (black in images). Place the one you will be using to tie the knot **above** it, secured on the left (brown).



Make the first loop of the figure 8 with the working cord, in a **clockwise** direction.

Pass it **under** the holding cord, and then **over** it.

Move it **over** the working cord to form the crossing point.



**Step 2:** Direct the working end down and **under** both cords, to the **left** of the first loop.



**Step 3:** Bring the working end upward, passing **over** the **center** of the knot, **between** the two loops.



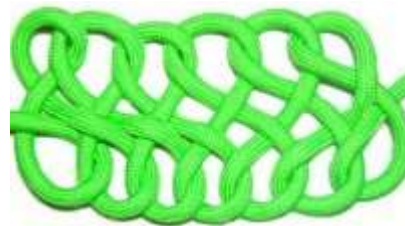
**Step 4:** Bring the working end through the loop on the **right**.

Pass it **under** the upper segment, **over** the holding cord, and **over** the lower segment.



Tighten the knot by pulling on one or both ends, depending on how it's used.

Figure Eight Patterns usually look best when loosely tied, but this one is an exception; it should be tightened **firmly**.



## Vertical Chain

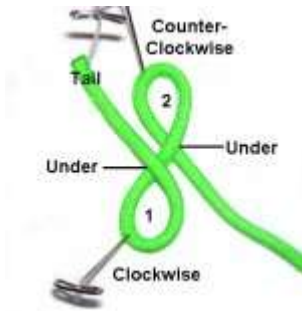
**Description:** Figure Eight Patterns can be used to create chains, also called sennits.

This one is designed by **linking** the knots so they rest side by side. The knots themselves are arranged up and down (vertical).

To view jewelry projects where this knot is featured, see the [Celtic Bracelet](#) and the [Figure Eight Choker](#).

**Step 1:** You need a long piece of material at least 50 inches long. Secure the **left** end to a Project Board or table. In the images below that's called the **tail**.





**Step 2:** Make the first loop at the bottom of the design, in a **clockwise** direction. Cross the working end **under** the secured tail to form the crossing point.

Make the second loop at the top, moving **counter-clockwise**. Pass the working end **under** to make the crossing point, as you bring the end back down to the lower right.

**Tip:** When creating Figure Eight Patterns like this one, it's important to make the loops the **same size** and fairly small.

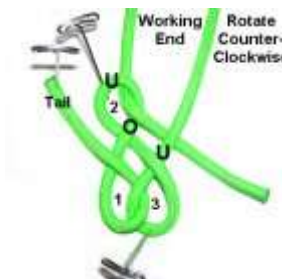
Otherwise you will have to tighten the entire chain later on, and that's harder than it looks. I usually make the loops around 1/2-inch in size.



**Step 3:** Make the next loop by moving the working end in a **clockwise** direction.

Pass it through the first loop from **below (under - over)**.

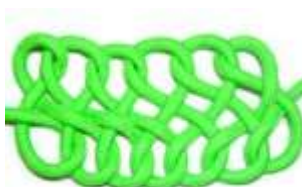
Make sure you pass **under** the segment on the right to form the crossing point.



**Step 4:** Make the next loop at the **top** in a **counter-clockwise** direction.

Pass the working end through loop 2 from **below (under - over)**.

Make sure you pass the end **under** the segment on the right, as you bring it back to the lower area.



**Step 5:** Repeat steps 2 - 4 several more times, until the sennit is the size you need.

Start at the secured end to tighten the design if necessary.



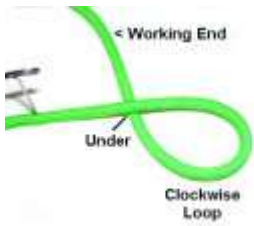


## Horizontal Chain

**Description:** Figure Eight Patterns like this one can be used to make belts, necklaces and items that require long chains. This design is made by placing the knots horizontally, and linking them to one another.

To view a jewelry project featuring this variation of Figure Eight patterns, see the [Ripple Necklace](#).

**Step 1:** You need a long cord, at least 45 inches in length. Secure the **left end** to your work surface or Project Board, arranged horizontally.

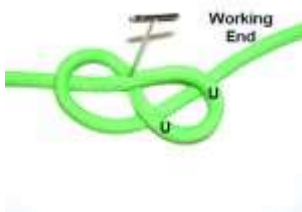


**Step 1:** Make the first **clockwise** loop a few inches to the right of the secured end.

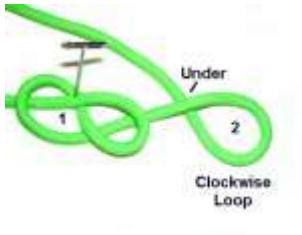
Direct the working end **under** the secured end to make the crossing point.



**Step 2:** The second loop is made to the **left** of the first. Bring the working end **over** the secured end, heading **counter-clockwise**.



**Step 3:** Bring the working end **under** the first loop, rather than going through it.



**Step 4:** Make a **clockwise** loop to the **right** of the first Figure Eight, to start the second knot.

The end should pass **under** to make the crossing point, just like in step 1.

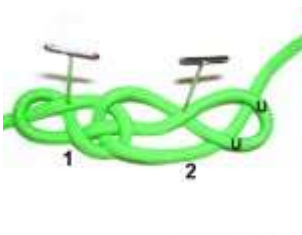


**Step 5:** Direct the working end through the **right** loop of the **first** Figure 8.

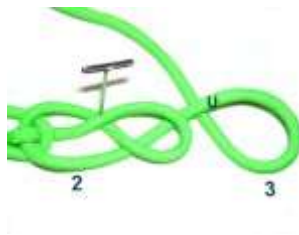
Weave **over - under - over** the three segments.

This links the two knots together.

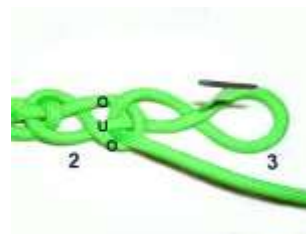
**Step 6:** Now you repeat the process to form the second Figure Eight knot, and to start the third:



**Repeat Step 3**



**Repeat Step 4**



**Repeat Step 5**



**Step 7:** When the Figure Eight Pattern is as long as you want, stop after repeating step 5 -- linking the knots.

Pass the end **through** the loop furthest to the **right**, from **below (under - over)**.



Tightening as you progress is the best way to complete the knot, but you can also do it when the sennit is finished.

Leave enough space so you can clearly see the Figure Eight shapes.

# Globe Knot

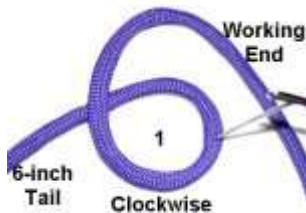


**Description:** The Globe Knot is a type of Celtic knot called the Seal of Solomon, which is also described on the page called [Round Knots](#).

Instead of creating a flat design, the knot is tightened to form a round, finished ball. Both ends can be tucked inside the sphere, or the knot can dangle from one portion of the cord.

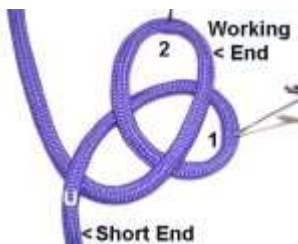
This interesting decorative knot can be used as a finishing knot, as a head for Macrame animals, or even as part of jewelry designs.

The material used in the example is Paracord, which requires you to melt the tips to seal in the inner fibers.



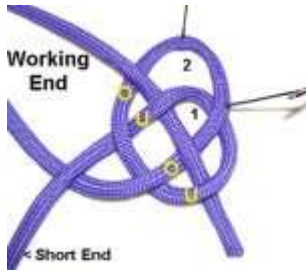
**Step 1:** Secure one end of a 36-inch cord to your project board. Make a **clockwise** loop 6 inches from the end.

Bring the working end up above the loop and secure it.



**Step 2:** Bring the working end down, passing **over** the first loop. This creates a second loop, at the top.

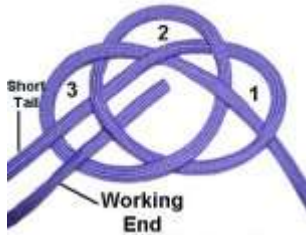
Bring the working end **under** the secured end.



**Step 3:** Bring the working end through both loops, moving **clockwise**.

Weave **over - under - over - under** the four segments.

This creates the third loop on the left.



**Step 5:** To make the fourth loop, bring the working end around (clockwise), so it's next to the secured end.

When you complete the next step, you will be able to clearly see the fourth loop.



**Step 6:** Move the working end through the knot, **following the path** of the first portion, all the way around the Globe Knot design.

Stop when you reach the secured tail. **Make sure the end passes through Loop 3 before moving on to the next step.**



**Step 7:** Tighten the knot slightly, so there is only a small amount of space showing between the segments.

It's best if you start at the tail and work through the first knot, and then tighten the doubled portion.



**Step 9:** Tie an **Overhand knot** in the short tail, close to the tip.

Push the Globe knot into a ball shape, with the Overhand Knot inside.

Tighten it further, forming a tight sphere.

# Micro-Macrame



**Micro-Macrame** differs from regular Macrame only because the size of the materials used is much smaller. This includes the beads, pendants, and other decorations. The delicate cords used in Micro-Macrame are usually between 0.5mm and 2mm thick.

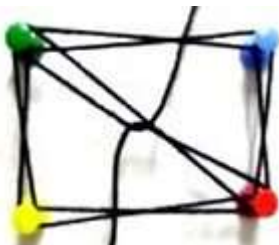
The first time I tried to make handcrafted jewelry, I did not think using fine materials would be challenging, but it is. You're basically working with threads instead of cords. This requires you to have more control, along with skill and knowledge.

You will need a **project board, pins and tape** to create all of the Micro-Macrame designs listed.

Be very sure you know how to tie all the Macrame Knots in the pattern, **BEFORE** trying to make the projects in this section.

I recommend you go to the [Learn Macrame](#) section, and practice the decorative knots until you are completely comfortable with them. Each pattern will also have a link to those pages.

Don't know what types of cord materials are suitable? Go to [Macrame Cord](#) for specific information about the types of fiber that can be used for your jewelry projects. Silk, Satin, Leather, Flax, and several others are described in more detail.



**Need strategies about using the delicate materials used in Micro-Macrame?**

[Knotting Tips](#) deals with several topics related to making jewelry with knots. **Recently updated.**

**NEW!**





[Jewelry Clasps](#)



[Zip Clasp](#)



[Sliding Clasps](#)

Here's a fun little project to get you started learning Micro-Macrame.

It's called a [Gemstone Pouch](#).

You can put stones, shells, beads, or other small items inside. Attach it to a necklace, belt, or other items with the ends at the top.



**Are you ready to make handcrafted jewelry?** Click on the small images (or the links), to go to the page described. The instructions, along with images, will come up. There will be a list of supplies, and links to each knot used in the pattern.

**You can PRINT any of these pages. Visit the home page for instructions on how to convert the pages to PDF prior to printing.**

The patterns are rated based on how challenging they are to make. **Here's the key to the symbols on the images below:**

- **E = Easy (Suitable for Beginners)**
- **M = Moderate (Requires some experience)**
- **A = Advanced (Challenging, not for beginners)**
- **TC = Time Consuming**
- **NEW! Projects Recently Added**

## Pendants



ZigZag Pendant



Stone Pendant



Pendant Setting



Flower Pendant



Celtic Cross



Sea Turtle Pendant



Stone Cradle

**I'm Back!**



Owl Pendant



Cross Pendant



Beaded Cross



Heart Pendant

**Chinese Butterfly**

moved to  
**Advanced  
Section**



Star Pendant



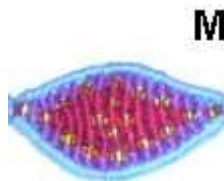
## Bracelet Patterns



Loop Weave Bracelet



Woven Cross Bracelet



Beaded Eye Bracelet



Spiral Bracelet



Pandora Bracelet



Charm Bracelet



Sun Bracelet



Triangle Knot Bracelet



Double Bead Bracelet



Leather Bracelet



Celtic Bracelet



Bangle Bracelet



Hemp Bracelet



Double Hitch Bracelet



Fashion Bracelet



Round Bracelet



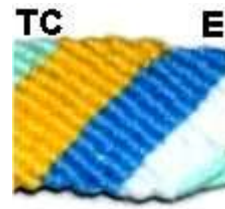
Rainbow Bracelet



Oval Bracelet



Natural Bracelet



Friendship Bracelet



Watchband Design



Rainbow Wave Bracelet



Beaded Hitch Bracelet



Vintage Bracelet



## Necklace Patterns



Badge Holder



Glow Owl Necklace



Hemp Owl Necklace



Owl Necklace



Ripple Necklace



Empress Necklace



Vintage Necklace



Satin Rosary



Celtic Button Necklace



Eternity Necklace



Figure Eight Choker



Button Necklace

---

## Earrings and Rings



[Triangle Earrings](#)



[Charm Earrings](#)



[Circle Earrings](#)



[Button Ring](#)



[Butterfly Earrings](#)



[Dream Earrings](#)



[Beaded Teardrops](#)



[Larks Head Earrings](#)

## Knotting Tips



These Knotting Tips are suggestions that will help you learn how to deal with the thin, flexible cords commonly used in Micro-Macrame and handcrafted jewelry designs.

**Click on the images to see either larger photos or to go to the link described.**

## Essential Supplies



### **Knotting Tips #1: ALWAYS use a project board.**

The use of a project board is absolutely essential if you plan to make jewelry with fine materials. If you don't know where to purchase one, make one yourself. You cannot control the tiny, thread-like cords, without using tape and pins.



You can use a bulletin board made of cork, cardboard, or even a firm, flat pillow. For slippery materials, cover the project board with fabric.

Make sure you have tape, T-pins, and bulletin board pins handy as well. See [Macrame Supplies](#) for more details.



### **Tip #2: Use soft, comfortable materials for jewelry projects.**

Satin, Leather and Cotton are the best, but good quality Hemp and Nylon are other good options.

See [Macrame Cord](#) for more information.



## **Cutting and Preparing Cords**

### **Knotting Tips #3: Measure each cord separately when cutting.**

Do not be tempted to use one cord to measure out a new one. They get tangled too easily, and the measurement will not be accurate.

**Preparation Tips:** Prepare the cords immediately after you cut them, by applying **wax or glue** to the ends, especially if you intend to use beads. Leather cord is the exception to this; it needs no preparation.



Nylon Paracord is a very popular material for jewelry. To prepare the cords, you need to apply heat to the ends to melt the fibers. Otherwise, the inner core material comes out.

Just light a candle and put the end into the flame for a few seconds. You can coat the end by dipping it into the wax as well. See [Cord Preparation](#) for more information.



Condition the material by rubbing Beeswax along the length of each cord.





# Stay Organized



**Knotting Tips #4: Keep your cords organized at all times.**

Arrange them into small groups prior to knotting. So if a knot requires 4 cords, break them up into groups of four.

**Tip #5: Roll up the cords if they are longer than 60 inches, so they don't get tangled.**

Here is one method:

Wrap the cord around your hand several times, **moving towards the end.**

Stop when you have about 12 inches left.

Remove the bundle from your hand.

Wrap the end around the center several times.

If you wrap **firmly** and pull the end tightly, you'll have a sturdy bundle that's easy to handle.

Tuck the end under the loop closest to it, and pull tightly to secure it the end. As you progress, pull to get more material from the bundle.

Make sure you tug on the end to tighten the wraps around the center, since the roll gets smaller as you remove cord from it.

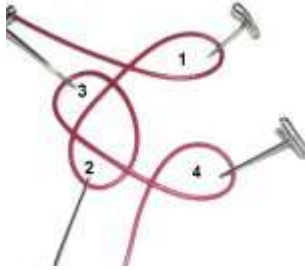


# Controlling Fine Cords

**Knotting Tips #5: Secure the loops as you progress.**

Get in the habit of securing every loop and fold with tape or pins, so controlling them will not become a problem for you.

When you use tape, put it on the cord **lengthwise**, rather than across it. The strand won't slip out of the tape as easily.



One of the best methods for securing loops and folds is to **LEAN** the pins over the portion you want to hold steady.



Another good method for securing fine materials is to wrap the cord **around** the pin several times.

Secure it with a piece of tape to the board, or to the pin itself.

### **Knotting Tips #6: NEVER put pins through Leather, Satin or Silk material.**

Pins can damage the fibers of several types of material. It's better to use tape, or the technique shown below.

### **Cross-Pin Technique**

Make a loop with a piece of scrap cord. Put the first pin to the right of the crossing point.

Push it to the **left**, so it leans over the crossed area.



Take a second pin and place it on the left side.

Tilt it so it leans to the **right**, over the crossing point of the loop.

The two pins cross, which holds the cord in place.



## **Practice the Knots**

### **Knotting Tips #7: Learn the knots before you make the project.**

Before trying to tie the knots with small, dainty threads, I highly recommend you

practice ALL the basic and vintage knots in [Learn Macrame](#), using heavy cord.

Micro-Macrame projects are often made with several of the basic knots, such as the [Double Half Hitch](#) and the [Square Knot](#).

I recommend you practice each of the knots used in the pattern several times, so you can tie them easily. Then practice making the knots very small, which is what the term "micro" means.



Practice **unusual or complex** knots before starting a project, just to be sure you know what to expect.

This is the [Chinese Mystic Knot](#), which is a challenge to tie, no matter what type of cord you use. **Practicing will lead to success!**



## Applying Beads

**Knitting Tip #8: Don't add too many beads.**



Beads are often used in Micro-Macrame, but you can easily put in too many.

In this pair of [Beaded Teardrops](#), the beads were separated by enough knots to avoid overloading the earrings.

**Knitting Tip #9: Use light weight beads.**



Pendants, charms and beads can deform the knots if they are too heavy. Choose the smallest beads possible, while making sure the hole size is adequate for the number of cords that will pass through them.

See [Macrame Beads](#) for specific details about the different types and shapes you can choose.

**Knitting Tip #10: Know how to thread the cords through the beads.**

There is nothing so frustrating as placing small beads onto delicate, flexible cords. The tips of the strands easily become frayed and difficult to work with. So here are two methods you can use to apply beads:



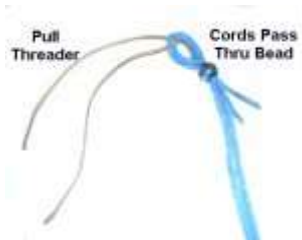
**Method 1:** Apply glue to the tips of any cords where beads will be applied. Roll the ends between your fingers as the glue is drying, so the tips are as narrow as possible.

The glue helps the fibers stay together, and will stiffen the ends slightly.



**Method 2:** Use a threader cord or wire. Fold it in half, and direct the ends through the bead, leaving a loop.

Direct one cord through the area where the threader is folded.



Pull the ends of the threader all the way out of the bead. The cord will be pulled through the bead, too.

**Make sure you thread one cord at a time.**

## Jewelry Clasps



**Description:** There are several ways to make Jewelry Clasps, using buttons, beads, and/or decorative knots. On this page are a few techniques frequently used in Macrame as well as Micro-Macrame designs.

The image above shows a simple loop/button knot closure. The loop is formed as you begin to tie the knots for the jewelry item. The button knot is tied in the last step.

Click on the links or images for more information (or larger photos).



## Buttonhole Clasp

The Buttonhole Clasp is a vintage design that can be used to form a sturdy loop.

A button, bead, or round knot is used at the other end of the jewelry item.

**Step 1:** A Macrame pattern will usually tell you the length to cut the two cords. Since you are just practicing, cut 1 holding cord, 20 inches long. Cut a working cord, 36 inches long.

Secure the two cords to your project board vertically, in the center. The working cord should be on the right, so these instructions make sense.



Tie the **first half** of a [Vertical Larks Head](#) knot as follows:

Bring the working cord **over - under** the holding cord, rotating **clockwise**.

As you pull the end to the right, **cross over** the working cord.



Tie the **second half** of the Vertical Larks Head knot:

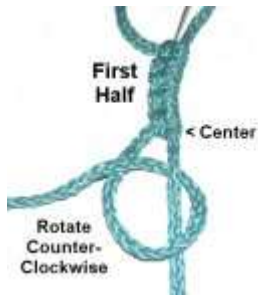
Pass the working cord **under - over** the **holding cord**. As you pull it right, cross **under** the working cord.

**Steps 2 + 3 = one Larks Head knot.**



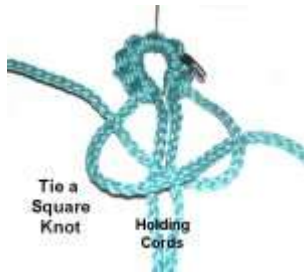
**Step 2:** Tie 3 or more knots, depending on the size you need (**1.5 times button size**).

**For example:** You have a 1/2-inch button, so tie enough knots to measure 1.5 times that size, which is 3/4-inch.



**Step 3:** Turn the first half of the design around, and go back to the center of the Buttonhole Clasp.

Tie the same number of knots for the second half. The process is the same, but you rotate **counter-clockwise** to make each loop.



**Step 4:** Bend the clasp to create a circle. The ends should be together below it. Use the same working cords to tie a tight Square Knot around the two holding cords. You can use a different knot if you wish.

On the other end of the item, attach a button, bead or tie a decorative knot to pass through the clasp.



## Sliding Clasps

Sliding jewelry clasps are very popular, so I have written a **separate page** devoted entirely to this type of necklace or bracelet closure. Be sure to read through it, since there are a number of knots that can be used.

**(Click on the link or image)**

The decorative knots are tied with a separate cord, around the ends used to make the necklace or bracelet. The ends slide through the knots, so the size can be adjusted.



## Zip Clasp

I recently added a new page for this unique sliding clasp. It's constructed so you only need to pull one end to close the bracelet. This can be used for necklace and belt designs as well. (Click on the image or link)



## **Sliding Bead Clasp**



A quick and easy way to make jewelry clasps is to use a **bead** instead of a knot. A **button** can also be used in this same manner.

You need a bead with a hole large enough for **all the cords** to pass through.

In the example shown, I used 1mm material, and had a total of 4 ends. So I used a bead with an opening 4mm in size.

For designs where several cords are used, you can **finish off** most of the ends, so only 2 - 4 pass through the bead.



After you have created the jewelry item or belt, pass **half** of the ends through the bead from **right to left**.

The other half should be passed through the bead from **left to right**.



When you pull on the ends, they will slide through the bead to tighten the necklace, bracelet, or belt.

Close the bead clasp by pulling on the ends. Tie tight **Overhand** or **Barrel** knots to prevent the cords from sliding out of it. Beads can also be used.



## Loop + Button Clasps

Jewelry clasps should look like part of the overall design, if at all possible. You can tie the first knots so there is a small loop at one end. When you get to the opposite end, simply attach a button to the cords.

There are many knots that can be used to make these types of jewelry clasps.



This **Celtic Button knot**, for example, can be tied with one cord. Once it's tightened, just pull up a segment of the material to make a loop.

At the other end, use a bead or button. You could even tie another Celtic Button, to pass through the loop.

In many cases, you will have two ends to use to create these jewelry clasps. So you need to choose a knot that starts out by folding the cord at the center, like this [Kinky Lover's Knot](#).



Look through [Learn Macrame](#) for more ideas.



## Simple Overhand Clasp

Tie an [Overhand Knot](#), right where you want the clasp to begin. Leave enough space for the button or bead to pass through. Tie another Overhand knot. Apply glue and cut off the remaining material.

Simple jewelry clasps like this one work great when using buttons or large beads on the other end. They are also also nice when working with leather cord.



## O-Ring Clasp

Most jewelry clasps are easy to create, like this one called the O-Ring Clasp.

I found it in a book called ["Decorative Fusion Knots"](#) by **J. D. Lenzen**.

It's essentially a wrapped Overhand knot, which can be made any size. You would create it on one end of the bracelet or necklace. At the other end, use a bead, regular button, or a button knot.

It's best to make the clasp **first**, and then create the necklace or bracelet with the two ends.



**Step 1:** Tie an [Overhand knot](#) the size you want to clasp to be. Make sure the right end passes over the left to make the crossing point, which should be at the bottom.



**Step 2:** Wrap the right end of the cord around the right portion of the loop several times, until you reach the top central area of the loop.



**Step 3:** Wrap the left half of the loop with the left end of the cord.



**Step 4:** Push the coils together, so there are no gaps. You may need to add a few more wraps as you tighten the design.

Tie an Overhand or Square Knot to secure the clasp.

Note that I flipped the jewelry clasp so the final knot is at the bottom.

## Zip Clasp



**Description:** The Zip Clasp is a unique way to form a Micro-Macrame jewelry closure. It's a great clasp for Macrame bracelets, and can be used for a necklace or belt as well.

In the example shown, I used nylon Paracord, which is a good material for practicing this technique.

When actually making something, I recommend you use 2mm size Nylon, Satin, or Hemp. Materials easily compressed and flexible, such as cotton, are not the best choices.

In the example I used Square Knots for the entire bracelet. The **first** knot should be a Square Knot, but the rest can be changed to a different type of knot.

Here are some options, if you want to experiment with other knots:

- [Half Hitch Patterns](#)
- [Larks Head Sennits](#) (design 1, 3, or 4)
- [Spiral Stitch](#)

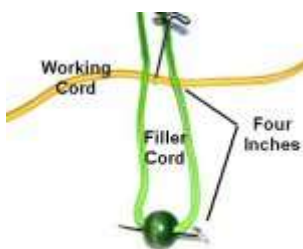
**Make sure the knot you choose is the type with fillers or holding cords, since they are an important part of this clasp design.**

The credit for this Macrame pattern goes to Christine, who plans to make free bracelets for the elderly.

## Preparation

- Determine your **wrist size** and **multiply it by 2**. **Add 16 inches**. Cut one **filler** cord to this length.
- Cut one **working** cord, **your wrist size x 12**.

Prepare the ends to prevent unraveling, using tape, glue or wax. For Paracord, heat the ends to seal the outer material, and then apply tape to the tips.

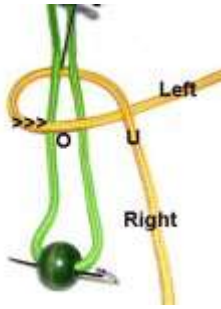


**Step 1:** Place a bead, or tie an [Overhand knot](#), in the center of the filler cord. Secure it to your board.

Place the working cord under the filler, horizontally. It should rest **4 inches** above the bead or knot. Match the ends so it's centered, and then secure it to the board.

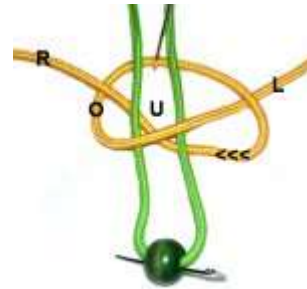
**Step 2:** Below are the four steps to make a Square Knot.

**Important:** Tighten the knot completely, but **be careful** not to make it too tight, or the Zip Clasp won't be able to open and close easily. The fillers need to be able to slide through the knots with very little effort.

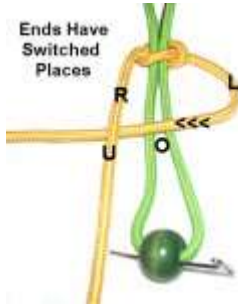


<< Move the **left** half of the working cord to the **right**, over the fillers and under the right half.

Move the **right** half to the **left**, under the fillers and over the left half of the working cord. >>



The ends of the working cord have **switched places**. So the second half of the Square knot is tied in reverse:



<< Move the **left** half over the fillers and under the right half, heading **left**.

Move the **right** half to the right, under the fillers and over the left half of the working cord. >>



**Step 3:** Make a **clockwise** circle with the **filler cord**, so it's your **wrist size + 2 inches**.

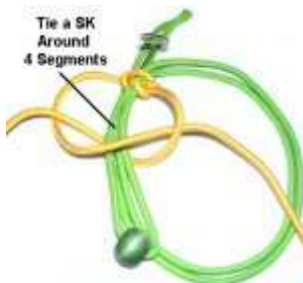
Measure from just above the Square knot, all the way around to the area below the knot.

Make sure there is at least two inches in the portion sticking out above the SK, to tie the finishing knots.

Near the Square knot, the ends should rest **under** the portion coming from the bead.

Secure the loop well, so it doesn't change size as you tie the knots for the bracelet.

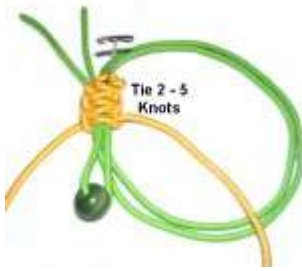
From here, you can switch to using other types of knots. Since I made the bracelet with Square Knots, that's what is shown in the images below.



**Step 4:** Tie the next knot with the working cord, just below the first one.

The knot should be tied around **all 4 segments** of the filler cord in that area.

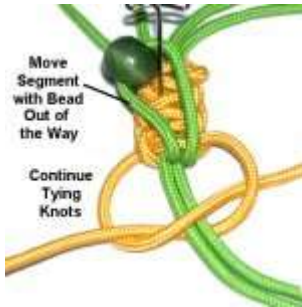
Tighten completely, but gently, so it's not too tight.



**Step 5:** Tie 2 to 5 knots, repeating step 4.

You can tie more knots in this area of the Zip Clasp, depending on the thickness of the material you use.

**Just make sure you stop 1-inch above the bead.**



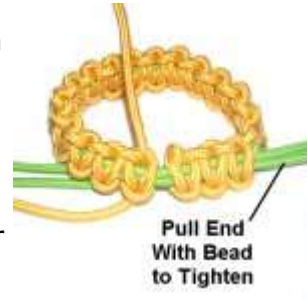
**Step 6:** Move the folded segment (with the bead) out of the way, by pulling it backwards, towards the knots.

Continue tying knots to make the rest of the bracelet, around the two filler cords that are left. Stop when you reach the size you want. There may be some space between the first and last knots.

**Step 7:** Before finishing off the ends, make sure the Zip Clasp works and the bracelet is the right size. Add or remove knots as needed.



<< To **open** the Zip Clasp, pull on the portion of the fillers between the first and last knots.



Pull on the the bead to **close** the clasp, after you put your hand through the bracelet. >>



**Step 8:** Finish off the ends by tying Overhand knots with the fillers and working cords. Make sure the knots are in the back, and you apply glue.

When the glue is dry, cut off the excess material.

## Sliding Clasps



Sliding clasps are very popular closures for bracelets and necklaces. First you



must understand the general concept of how these designs are constructed. I have provided you with tips and images to show you the basics.

Below those instructions are examples of different knots that can be used to make adjustable clasps for Macrame jewelry items.

Once you have practiced, try experimenting with your favorite decorative knots to create your own unique jewelry clasps.

**Note that I used heavier cord than is normally used for jewelry. So the clasps will appear larger than usual.**

**You can click on the small icons to see a larger view.**

## General Design Tips



**Tip 1:** The decorative knot used to form the clasp needs to be the type that can be attached to one or more cords. The knot is tied around the ends that were used to make the necklace or bracelet.

For example, [Square Knots](#) are suitable because they are usually attached to other cords (fillers).

Any time you see the term "hitch" in the name, that knot will likely work, too. Flat knots with open spaces can be used, simply by passing the cords through them, and then tightening.

I recommend you look through the list of knots in the [Learn Macrame](#) section, and experiment with several types to come up with your own unique sliding clasps.

**Tip 2: IMPORTANT** -- When using this type of clasp in any jewelry project, make sure you **add more material** when you cut the cords. I usually add at least 8 to 12 inches.

In order to use this type of closure for a necklace, it has to be passed over the head. So you need extra material to make the circle large enough for your head to pass through. This applies to bracelets as well.

**Tip 3:** You should start the bracelet or necklace design in the **center**, and work towards the ends. This way the knots are balanced, and you are left with ends that are close to the same length.

**Tip 4:** Once the bracelet or necklace design is finished, start the sliding clasp by making a circle with the ends crossed. Then you add a **separate cord** to make the clasp.



## Basic Instructions

Here are some general instructions to show you the basic concept of sliding clasp designs. These images are for bracelets, but the instructions are the same for necklace designs as well.

Arrange the necklace or bracelet in a circle, so the ends are crossed.



Cut 1 strand of material for the clasp. Place this cord under the crossing area.

Tie 1 or more knots around ALL the bracelet cords, which act as fillers.



In this example, I used Square Knots.

Be sure the knots are loose enough for the cords to be able to slide through easily.

**Tip 5 - IMPORTANT:** The two ends of the **cord used to make the clasp** need to be finished off somehow.



Turn the design over, so you are working in the **back** of the clasp.

Tie the two ends together to make an Overhand knot. Make sure the knot is tight. You can apply glue under the knot so it adheres to the clasp.

**Tip 6:** Once the sliding clasp is finished, you must do something with the ends of the bracelet or necklace, so they can't slide out.

You should first open and close the bracelet by pulling on the ends, to make sure they slide through easily.

Pull the ends so the jewelry item is in the **closed position**, with the clasp between the last knots tied in each half.



When everything is balanced, tie tight **finishing knots** with the ends. You can keep the ends together in groups, or tie the finishing knots with each cord.

**Barrel Knots** work the best, but other knots can be used to keep the ends from sliding out of the clasp.

Another option is to apply beads to the ends, followed by a Barrel knot. You can add the beads to each strand, or onto groups of cords.

**Tip 7:** Practice making sliding clasps with scrap cord **before** you try using them in necklace or bracelets.

If you plan to use fine material for the necklace, use **thicker cord** to practice. Does the design look good with thick cord? Then it should be fine with delicate material.

## Examples of Sliding Clasps

Here are a few designs I came up with to help show you how to create these types of decorative clasps.

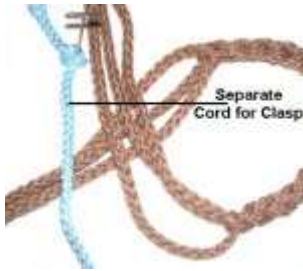
I used a different color material for the clasps, so you can see the details better.



## Wrapped Knot Clasp

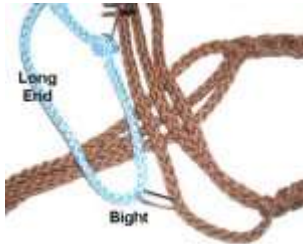


The **Wrapped Knot** sliding clasp is by far the best one for jewelry, which is why I am describing it first. The advantage to using this knot is that the ends can be cut off completely, once the knot is tightened. So it has a more finished appearance than other knots.



Tie an Overhand knot to mark the short end of the cord used to make the Wrapped knot.

Secure it next to the ends of the bracelet, which should be arranged in a circle, with the ends crossed.



Bend the cord for the clasp to form a bight, arranging it so the long portion is on the **outside**.



Wrap the long portion around all of the other strands, including the short portion of the cord you are using. Wrap several times, working **toward the loop**. Make sure the wraps are snug, but not tight.



When you have wrapped around 4 to 6 times, pass the working end through the area near the fold.



Pull on the end with the Overhand Knot to tighten the Wrapped knot.

The working end and the loop will be pulled inside the wrapped area, which will secure it.



Jewelry clasps like this are adjusted by sliding the cords through the knot. So test it to make sure the knot isn't too tight.

Once you know the clasp works, you can cut off the excess material **from the cord used to make the Wrapped Knot.** **Finish the ends (see Tip 6).**



## Square Knot Clasp



Sliding clasps can be made using **Square Knots**. Set up the bracelet or necklace in a circle, as you did in the examples shown above. Place the new cord for the clasp underneath the crossed area, and center it by matching the ends.



**Part 1:** Tie the first half of the **Square Knot**. **The bracelet or necklace cords act as the fillers.**

**If you don't know how to tie a SK, click on the link.**



**Part 2:** To tie the second half of the Square knot.



Repeat parts 1 and 2 at least 2 more times.



## Half Hitch Clasp



The **Half Hitch** sliding clasp takes advantage of the **BACK** of the knots. So you need to turn the bracelet or necklace **upside down** to get started.



Place the cord for the clasp under the crossing point of the ends used to make the bracelet.

Bring the lower portion **over** the ends, **under** them, and **over** the segment of the clasp cord at the bottom.



Tie at least 3 more Half Hitches to complete the design.

When you turn the bracelet and the clasp over, you will see the design shown in this image.

Finish the off the ends (**see Tips 5 - 6**).

**Design Tip:** You can also use an [Alternating Half Hitch Pattern](#) to make the clasp. You would tie a Half Hitch with each end around the bracelet or necklace



cords, alternating back and forth between the two ends.

This type of clasp is easier to make if you turn the bracelet or necklace sideways, so the sennit is made vertically (up and down).



## Larks Head Clasp



The [Larks Head](#) design is another knot that can be used for sliding clasps. If you used Larks Head knots to make the bracelet or necklace, this clasp will match the overall design.



Cross the ends of the cords used to make the bracelet or necklace.

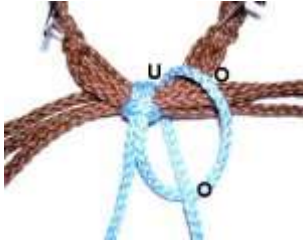
Fold a separate cord for the clasp in half. Slide it under the ends, so the fold is at the bottom.



Direct the ends under the folded portion.

Pull on the ends to tighten the first Larks Head knot.

**Design Tip:** The knot you just tied is a typical Larks Head used as a mounting knot. The next two need to be tied in two parts, just like a Vertical Larks Head:



**Part A:** Direct the right half of the cord **over** the ends and **under** them.

Make sure you pass it **over** the clasp cord as you bring it down.



**Part B:** Direct the right half of the cord **under** the ends, over them, and then **under** the clasp cord.



Use the left half of the clasp cord to make another Larks Head knot (parts A and B).

Finish the ends of the clasp cord, as well as the bracelet or necklace cords (**see Tips 5 and 6**).

## ZigZag Pendant



**Description:** This ZigZag Pendant forms a great focal point for any type of Micro-Macrame necklace. You can also use this design to make a pair of casual earrings.

The decorative knot used is called the [Zipper Sennit](#).

It is a variation of the [Chain Sennit](#), which you can also use to make a pendant. See [Learn Macrame](#) for more ideas.

### Supplies Needed:

- 2mm to 3mm Paracord or other material (3 yards)

- Project Board and Pins

**Step 1:** Cut one cord, 2 yards long (for just the pendant). To make a necklace after the pendant is finished, you will need 4 to 5 yards instead, depending on the knots used.

Fuse the ends with heat if using **Paracord**, or with glue if using another material.



**Step 1:** Make a loop at the center of the cord, crossing left over right.



**Step 2:** Make a bight (fold) with the portion of cord that's now on your right.

Pass it into the loop from BELOW.



**Step 3:** Pull on the **left** half to tighten the loop around the bight.

Leave a **small** loop at the bottom, and secure it to your board.



**Step 4:** Use the **left** half to make the 2nd bight. Pass it through the first bight, making sure it goes in from the TOP.

Pull on the **right** half to tighten Bight 1 around the new one.

**Design Tip:** The bights will have a tendency to get too large. To reduce the size, simply pull on the end you made the bight with, **AFTER the previous bight is tightened.**

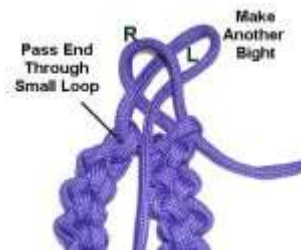


**Step 5:** The next bight is made with the **right** half of the cord. Pass it through the second bight, from the top. Pull the opposite end to tighten.

**Step 6:** Repeat steps 4 and 5, until the ZigZag Pendant measures 4 - 6 inches.

**It will be folded in half, so the pendant will end up 2 to 3 inches in size.**

**Make sure the last bight made is with the **right half** of the cord.**



Direct the **left END** through the small loop at the top of the sennit (step 3).

Then use the left half of the cord to make the next bight, passing it through the right one. Pull on the right end to tighten.



**Step 7:** Pass the **right END** through the bight you just made.

Pull on the **left** end to tighten, making sure you leave a loop for the next step.



**Step 8:** Pass the **left END** through the loop and pull firmly on the right end.



The ZigZag Pendant is finished, and you would now use the two ends at the top to make the necklace.

# Stone Pendant



**Description:** The Stone Pendant is a decorative knot that is designed to wrap around a stone or marble, or similar item. It surrounds the stone snugly, like a frame, so it's not a flat design. It's best to add glue if you want the stone to be permanently attached. Without the glue, you have the opportunity to change the stone as needed.

Try to choose a stone that is round or oval in shape, rather than irregular. I used Paracord in the example shown. The material is somewhat slippery, so may not provide the best hold if the stone is highly polished or an odd shape. Hemp also works really well.

This project is somewhat challenging for beginners, so you should have some experience tying Macrame knots in general before you try to create it.

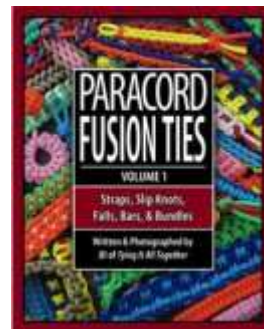
**IMPORTANT: This Micro-Macrame design is NOT suitable for cabochons, since they are too thin and will slide out of the knot.**

For a design where you **can** use flat stones and cabochons, see the [Pendant Setting](#).

The Stone Pendant design is on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, under the name "**Marble Lantern**".

I constructed it flat on a board, which is different from the video describing this technique.

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, and to view the tutorials for other interesting knotting techniques and designs.

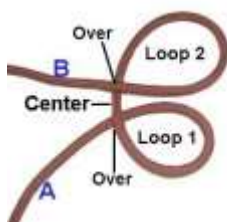


## Supplies Needed:

- 2mm to 4mm cord material (Paracord was used in the example shown)
- Project Board and pins

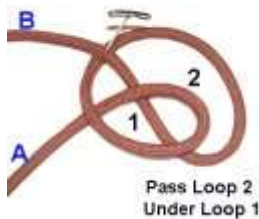
**Step 1:** Cut one cord, 60 inches long. Prepare the ends with **tape**, and actually label them A and B (write on the tape, or use different types of tape).

If you use **Paracord** to make your Stone Pendant, **heat and melt** the ends so the inner fibers cannot slide out.



Secure the end labeled "A" to your board. Move to the **center** of the cord, and make the first loop in a clockwise direction.

Just above, make a second loop, which should be larger than the first. Make sure the end passes **over** to make both crossing points.



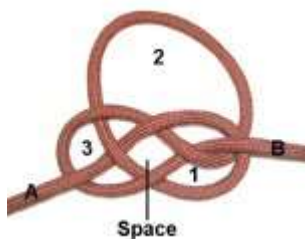
**Step 2:** Move loop 2 downward, so it rests **under** loop 1 as shown.

The left edge of the second loop should run through the **middle** of loop 1, on an angle.



**Step 3:** Pass the end labeled "B" under the secured end (A), on the left.

Bring it to the right, passing through the two loops, **over, under, over, over** the four segments. This creates the third loop.



This shows the design you just made, which is called the **base**.

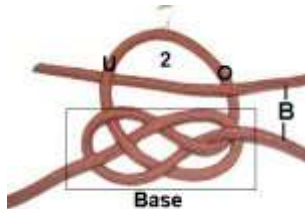
Loop 2 should be enlarged as you tighten the base slightly.

Note the diamond shaped space between loops 3 and 1. As you work on the rest



of the Stone Pendant, make sure you can identify that space, since it's important in steps 8 and 9.

**In the photos, I outlined the base in each step, so you can identify it more easily.**

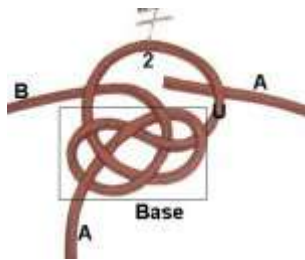


**Step 4:** Direct the end on the right (B) to the left, horizontally.

Pass it through the large loop (2), **over - under** the two segments (above the base).

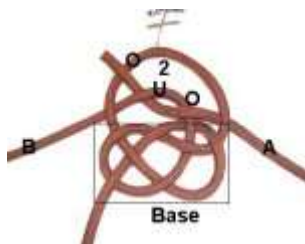
**Design Tip:** You will be working in the areas ABOVE of BELOW the base for the remainder of the Stone Pendant.

So try to identify the base before you complete each step. Also, keep track of the diamond shape area as you progress.



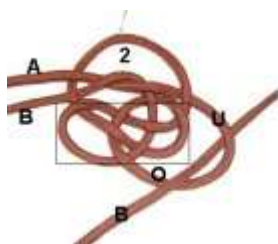
**Step 5:** Direct the other end (A) in a counter-clockwise direction.

Bring it into Loop 2, going **under** the right portion of it.



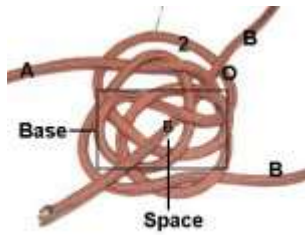
**Step 6:** Bring the same end **over** the curved area made by end B, in step 4. Pass **under** it, and **over** Loop 2, as you bring it left.

This creates a loop at the bottom of the knot. The two ends will be near each other on the left (see next image).



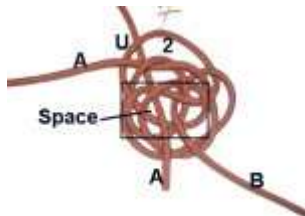
**Step 7:** Take end B, and pass it through the loop you just made, below the base. Pass **over** and **under** the two segments, as you bring it right.

Make sure you can clearly identify the base and the diamond shaped space, before you work on the next step.



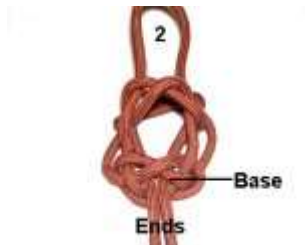
**Step 8:** Bring end B up to loop 2, and pass **over** it, at the right. Pass the end **under** the coils, as you bring it down to the diamond shaped space.

Bring it out through the space, pulling it towards you. It will rest over the coils at the bottom of the knot. Push it to the right before moving on.



**Step 9:** Direct the other end (A) up to Loop 2, passing **under** the left area of it.

Bring it out through the space, pulling it towards you. Push it to the left before you start tightening.



Secure the top of Loop 2 to your board. Locate the base and the ends, pulling them downward.

There will be two crossed areas at the top (front and back).

**Design Tip:** Remember that the Stone Pendant is not a flat design.

The base is at the bottom, and the area at the top has a similar shape when fully tightened. The segments at sides are straight up and down. It helps if you hold the knot so it dangles, placing your finger inside while tightening.

If the loop at the top gets too large, you'll need to remove the slack all the way through the knot. **Be careful not to change anything.**



Tighten and shorten the knot gradually, until the pendant is **slightly smaller** than the stone.

Place the stone inside, **stretching** the knot to fit. Pull on the ends and the loop **FIRMLY**.

# Pendant Setting



**Description:** The Pendant Setting is a popular Macrame technique used to wrap the edges of cabochons, flat stones, or coins. It features the decorative knot called the [Vertical Larks Head](#), along with crossed elements.

After the setting is tightened, the ends can be used to make the necklace, or to form a loop (see image above). You need to decide **ahead of time** which variation you prefer to use.

I've included cutting instructions for **both variations** (see Preparation).

This Micro-Macrame decoration is easy to tie, but you will be working with very fine material, which makes it a bit more challenging.

I used Hemp material in the images, but nylon, waxed cotton or waxed polyester are good choices, too.

Special thanks goes to **Victoria de Freitas** for helping me learn this technique.

**Beckinka** was another source of inspiration and help. Please visit her website and watch her **You Tube** video:

- <http://Beckinka.artfire.com>
- <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=voAjRrA5x0M>

## Supplies Needed:

- Fine Cord Material (1mm or less)
- Cabochon, Coin or Stone
- Project Board, pins, and tape



## Preparation

### **Cutting Instructions for Pendant Setting with Loop:**

Measure the diameter of the **widest** area of the stone or coin you are wrapping.

Multiply the **diameter x 4** to get the **coin size**.

**Working Cords:** Multiply the **coin size** by 14. Cut 2 cords to that length.

**Holding Cords:** Cut two cords, each at least 18 inches long.

### **Cutting Instructions for Pendant Setting + Necklace:**

**Neck Size:** Measure from your chest (where the pendant rests) around to the back of your neck, and to the front again.

- **Step A:** Cut 2 **holding cords**, your **neck size x 2**.
- **Step B:** Measure the diameter of the **widest** area of the stone or coin you are wrapping. Multiply the **diameter x 4** to get the **coin size**.
- **Step C:** Cut 2 **working cords**, your **neck size x 4 + coin size (step B)**.

Prepare the ends of the four cords with glue, to prevent unraveling. I recommend you also coat the cords with beeswax, to make knotting easier.

## **Larks Head Design**

**Step 1:** Place a piece of masking tape on your work surface **horizontally**, with the **sticky side facing up**.

Place the **center** of the two working cords on the middle of the tape, arranged vertically.

Do the same with the holding cords, placing one to the right and left of the working cords.

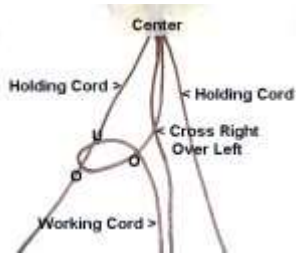


As you arrange the two holding cords, place them slightly wider than the **depth** of the coin or stone.

**(The depth is the thickness from front to back).**

Turn the tape over and stick it to your project board. Secure the top portion of the cords, since you will work with the bottom half first.

**Design Tip:** I separated the cords more than usual in the images below, so you could see the details of the Pendant Setting as I constructed it. You can secure the holding cords lower down, so they remain the same distance apart as you progress.



**Step 2:** Cross the two **working cords**, right over left. Make a loop with the working cord that is now on the **left**, onto the left **holding cord**.

Rotate **clockwise, over - under - over**. Tighten the loop **gently**, so it's against the tape.

**Important:** Tighten the **first half** of the Lark's Head knots **carefully**, to maintain the proper spacing. The second half of the knot can be tightened firmly, but for the first half, be gentle.



**Step 3:** For the second half of the knot, direct the same working cord **under - over - under** to make the loop.

**Steps 2 + 3 = one Vertical Lark's Head knot.**



**Step 4:** Use the working cord now on the **right** to make a Lark's Head knot onto the right **holding cord**.

Rotate **counter-clockwise, over - under - over**.



**Step 5:** Tie the second half **under - over - under**.

**Cross the working cords again**, right over left.

Then repeat steps 2 - 5.



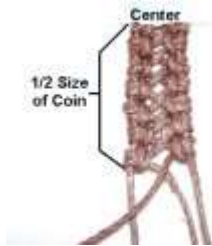
Here's a closer view of the crossed areas you should have for the entire Pendant Setting.

Make sure you always **cross the cords** before you tie the two knots. It's best to cross right over left each time, but not absolutely necessary.



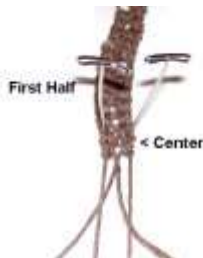
After you tie a few more knots, check to see that the knots are separated appropriately for the stone or coin.

The edge of it should fit **between** the two rows of knots, as it sits on the crossed areas.



Continue tying knots until the sennit is **half** the coin measurement (**see preparation**).

**Push the knots close together before you measure the sennit.**



**Step 6:** Turn the design around, so you work with the other half of the cords. Secure the sennit to your board to hold it steady.

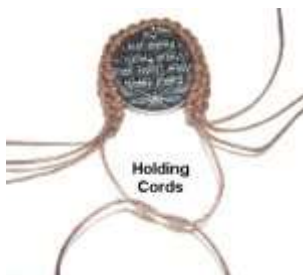
**Repeat steps 2 - 5.**



**Step 7:** To check the size, pull on the ends of the **holding cords**, so the Pendant Setting fits around the coin or stone.

The last knots tied at each end should meet when you pull the cords **firmly**. **Add or remove knots as needed.**

**Important:** Make sure the knotted design is balanced **before** you move on to the next step. So if the coin or stone has an obvious top and bottom, make sure the ends are at the top.



**Step 8:** Locate the ends of **one holding cord**.

Tie the two ends together with a **tight Overhand knot**. Make sure you pull the ends **firmly** before tightening the knot.

Flip the coin or stone over, and repeat this process with the ends of the **second holding cord**.

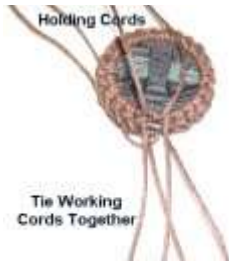




## Finishing Method 1: No Loop

The following steps describe one method for finishing the Pendant Setting. This variation is used when you plan to go straight into a necklace design.

The advantage to this option is that you have 8 cords available, and can easily add more if necessary.



Move the holding cords aside, since you have already tied them together.

Tie the ends of the **working cords** together with Overhand knots (two cords per knot).



Once the Pendant Setting is completed, the ends are used to make the necklace itself. You'll have four on the right as well as the left.

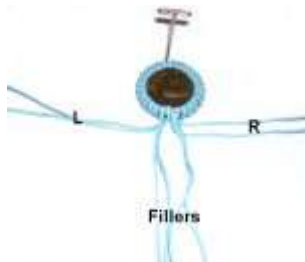
**Important:** If you decide to cut off any of the ends, make sure you only cut the **working cords**, and apply glue to the knots before you do so.



## Finishing Method 2: Loop

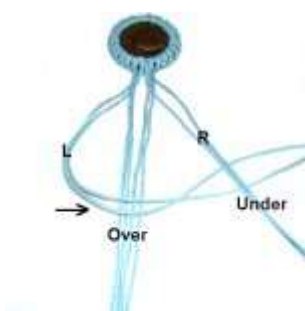
The second method for finishing the Pendant Setting is to make a loop at the top. The instructions below show you how to make one with a Square Knot design. You can use other types of knots the same way.

The advantage for this option is that you can make the necklace with an entirely different color or material. The necklace cords just slide through the loop.



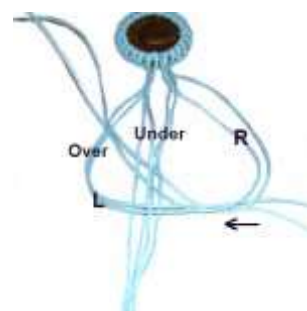
Organize the cords so that there are two working cords on the right and left, and 4 fillers in the center.

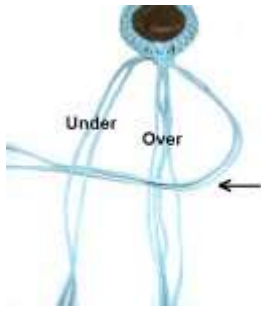
You'll be tying Square Knots using 4 cords instead of two, following the instructions below:



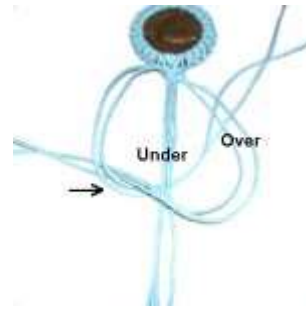
<< Move the **left** working cords to the right, **over** the fillers and **under** the right working cords.

Move the **right** working cords **under** the fillers and **over** the left working cords, as you pull them to the left. >>

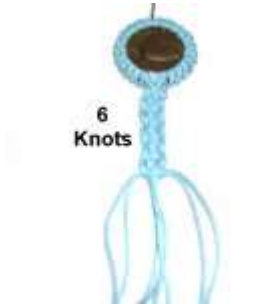




<< Move the working cords now on the **right** to the **left**, **over** the fillers and **under** the other set of working cords.

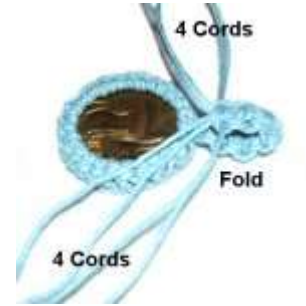


Move the working cords now on the **left** **under** the fillers and **over** the other working cords, as you pull them to the right. >>



<< Tie a total of 6 Square Knots. Tighten each one firmly.

Fold the loop forward, towards the **front** of the pendant. >>



Organize the cords into two groups of four. >>



Turn the Pendant Setting over, so you are working in the **back**.

Select one cord from each side and tie a **tight** Overhand knot. Repeat with the others.

Apply glue and allow it to dry completely, before cutting off the extra material.

## Flower Pendant



**Description:** This Flower Pendant features loops along the edges as the petals, and a second color added for contrast.

In the image above, you are looking at the **side** of the design, which is what this Macrame pattern takes advantage of.

The ends of the two cords can be used to make your favorite necklace design when you are finished making this unique pendant.

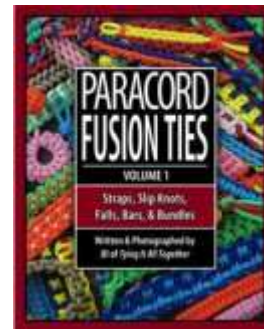
The decorative knot used is a variation of the technique called "[Endless Falls](#)". Click on the link to view that page. The difference is that you alternate front to back with each knot.

This is a really interesting knotting technique, and I recommend you experiment with it. You could use this knot pattern to make a belt, bracelet, or even a pet collar. With the right material, a choker style necklace can also be made.

This design is on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, under the name "**Desert Flower Medallion.**"

I changed the original design slightly, but the overall pattern is the same.

Click on the link or image to visit the knot gallery, to view tutorials for other interesting knotting techniques and designs.

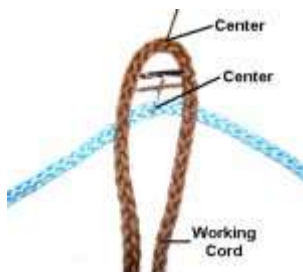


### Supplies Needed:

- 2mm to 4mm cord material (two colors)
- Project Board and pins

**Step 1:** Cut 2 cords to at least 90 inches, if you plan to use **both** of them for the necklace. Remember that the cords will be folded, so you will have four ends to create the necklace.

To make a necklace using only two ends, cut one cord 45 inches and the other one at least 90 inches. The short cord will be finished off when the Flower Pendant is completed.



Fold the **working cord** in half (brown) and secure it at the center. Secure the second cord, placing it under the first one, lower down (blue).



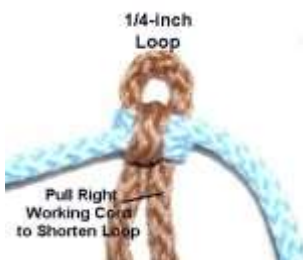
**Step 2:** Cross the ends of the **second** cord, left over right.

You can cross the other direction, just be sure you are consistent all the way through the design.



**Step 3:** Direct the **left** half of the working cord up and over the front of the crossed area made by the second cord.

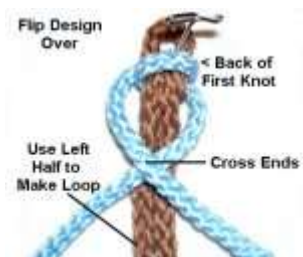
Bring it down **between** the two halves of the working cord.



**Step 4:** Tighten the knot by pulling on the **left** half of the working cord first (brown). Then tighten the second cord by pulling on each end (blue).

Finally, reduce the size of the loop at the top to 1/4-inch by pulling on the **right** half of the working cord.

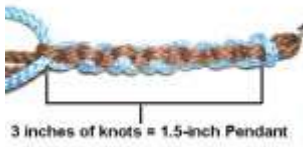
**Design Tip:** The size of the loop depends on the material you are using. The loop only needs to be large enough for two ends to pass through it, so make it as small as possible.



**Step 5:** Flip the design over, so you are working in the **back**. Repeat steps 2 - 4, tightening the second knot so it's close to the back of the first one.

Flip the knot again, and repeat.

**Design Tip:** As you continue making the Flower Pendant, **always** use the **left half** of the working cord to make the loops, so the pattern alternates properly.



**Step 6:** Repeat steps 2 - 5 several times, until the sennit is 3 inches long. This will give you a 1.5-inch pendant, since you will be folding it into a circle.

You can make the pendant any size you wish, by simply adjusting the length of the overall design.

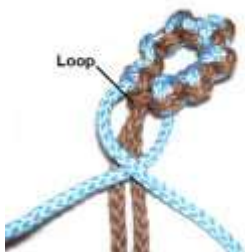


Turn the sennit so the **sides of it** are now facing up and down.

The v-shaped areas formed by the second cord should be obvious, with the loops along the sides.



**Step 7:** Pass the two ends of the working cord through the loop you left at the other end. Pull them snugly to form the circular shape.



**Step 8:** Turn the Flower Pendant sideways slightly, so you have access to both cords again.

Cross the ends of the second cord over the working cords, as you did before.



**Step 9:** Use BOTH ends of the working cord to make the final loops. The process is the same:

Bring them over the crossed area, and down behind it, passing between the two halves.



**Step 10:** Pull all four ends firmly to tighten.

You can now use the 4 ends to make the necklace, or weave 2 of them into the back of the pendant to finish them off.

## Celtic Cross



**Description:** This beautiful Celtic Cross pattern is easy to make, and requires only two cords. It can be doubled, if you plan to use very fine materials (less than 2mm thick).

This Macrame pattern demonstrates the woven pattern typical of all Celtic decorative knots. The [Satin Rosary](#) includes this design as a pendant, which is the best way to use it.

I used Nylon Paracord to make the Celtic Cross shown in the example, but Satin and Leather work really well, too.

### Supplies Needed:

- 2mm to 4mm Macrame Cord, in two different colors
- Project Board and pins (or tape)

## Cutting and Preparing Cords

**IMPORTANT:** Secure all the loops with pins. If using Leather or Satin cord, use **tape** or the [Cross-Pin Technique](#), to prevent the pins from damaging the fibers.

- Cut 1 **Color A** cord, 30 inches long.
- Cut 1 **Color B** cord, 72 inches or longer, depending on the size of the necklace you are making.

To figure out the length of the second cord, just **add 30 inches** to what you need to make the necklace.

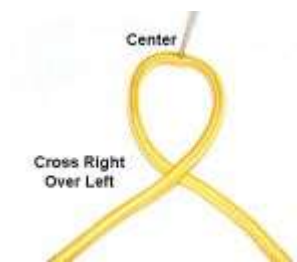
In the images, **Color A** is yellow, and **Color B** is green.

Prepare the ends with glue or tape to prevent unraveling.

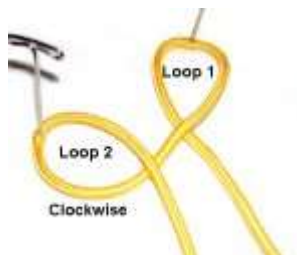


Click on the icons, and larger pictures will come up in a new window.

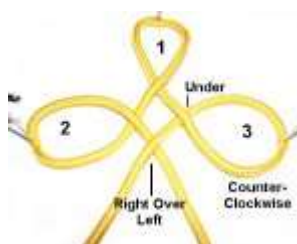
## Color A Cord Details



**Loop 1:** Take the **Color A** cord and make a loop in the **center**, so the right end crosses over the left.

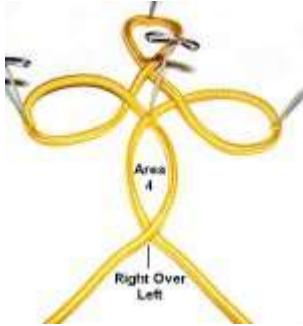


**Loop 2:** Use the end that is now on the left. Make the second loop in a clockwise direction, positioning it below and to the left of the first loop.



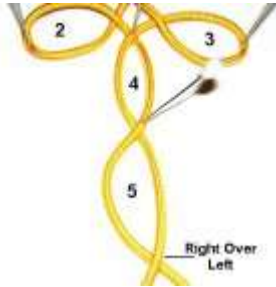
**Loop 3:** The third loop should be positioned across from loop 2. Rotate in a **counter-clockwise** direction, using the right half of the cord. The end should pass **under** to make the crossing point.

Cross the cords, right over left, and secure them to your board. **The crossing point should be lined up with the center of Loop 1.**



**Area 4:** Take the end that is now on the right, and cross it over the left. Secure the crossing point.

**The crossed area should line up with the one you made in the last step.**

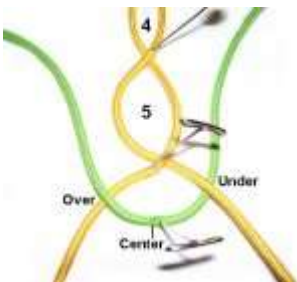


**Area 5:** Take the end that is now on the right, and cross it over the left.

**The third crossed area should line up with the other two above it.**

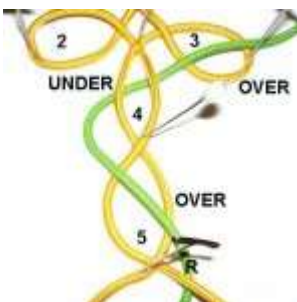
The first half of the Celtic Cross is now finished.

## Color B Cord -- Weaving Process



**Step 1:** Fold the Color B cord in half, and secure it in the center, **between the ends** of the **Color A** cord (at the bottom).

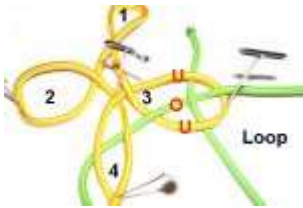
The right portion should pass **under** the right end of Color A. The left portion should pass **over** the end (Color A) on the left.



**Step 2:** Use the **right** portion of the **Color B** cord. Direct it upward to the left, passing **over** Area 5.

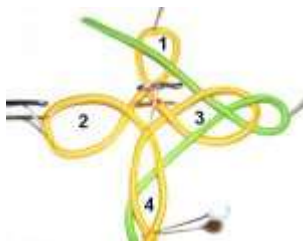
Bring it back to the right, passing **under** Area 4.

Bring the end to the upper right, and pass it **over** Loop 3.

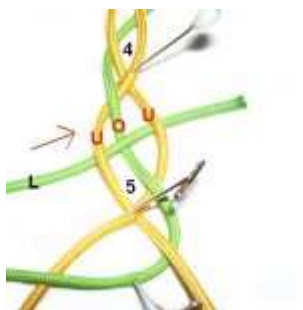


**Step 3:** Make a **clockwise** loop, still using the right portion of the Color B cord.

Weave the end **under - over - under** the three segments for loop 3.



**Step 4:** Direct the right end towards the upper left area of the Celtic Cross. It should rest **on top** of Loop 1.



**Step 5:** Now you will use the **left** portion of the **Color B** cord.

Direct it towards the right, weaving through Area 5, passing **under - over - under** the three segments.



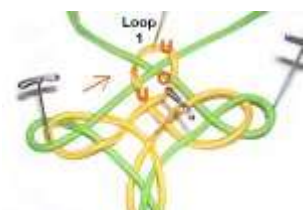
**Step 6:** Direct the left end back to the left, weaving through Area 4, **over - under - over** the three segments.

Pass the end **under** Loop 2 (left).



**Step 7:** Make a **counter-clockwise** loop, weaving the end through Loop 2.

Bring it **over - under - over** the three segments.



Bring the end up to loop 1, heading left to right. Weave through, passing **under - over - under**.

**Step 8:** Tighten the Celtic Cross gradually and evenly so it' s balanced.

Finish off the ends of the **Color A** Cords by directing them to the **back** of the design and applying glue to hold them in place. Since the **Color B** cord was cut longer, you can now use it to make the necklace.

## Sea Turtle Pendant



**Description:** This Sea Turtle Pendant is a lot of fun to make. You can use this Micro-Macrame decoration for a casual necklace by simply adding another cord, attaching it to the turtle knot. It can also be used to decorate other items. At the bottom of the page, I've added a couple photos to show you how to use it in a necklace design.

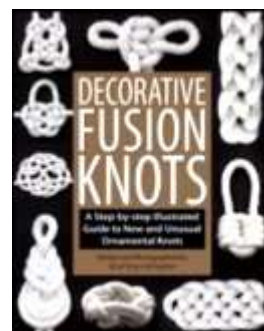
In the example shown, I used 450 weight Paracord, which is approximately 3mm thick. The size ended up approximately 1.5 inches wide. So by using 2mm cord, you can easily make this tiny turtle a smaller size.

**You can click on the small images to see a larger view.**

A Video tutorial of this unique design can be found in **J.D. Lenzen's website, "[Fusion Knots](#)".**

Just go to his knot gallery to find the Sea Turtle knot.

He has recently published 2 great books featuring his designs, so click on the image or link to visit his website for more information.



### Supplies Needed:

- Cord Material (60 inches)
- Project Board and Pins
- Needle Nose Pliers or Tweezers

## The Head (Slipknot)



Make a loop in the center of the cord. The right end should cross **over** the left.



Use the end that's now on the right to make a bight. Direct it through the loop.



Pull on the BIGHT as well as the ends to tighten the knot. The bight forms the head of the Sea Turtle Pendant.

## Josephine Knot Base



<< Use the left end to make a counter-clockwise loop. The end should pass **under** to make the crossing point.

Pass the right end over the loop & under the left end. >>



<< Still using the right end, rotate in a clockwise direction. Weave it through the four segments (over, under, over, under).

Tighten the knot. >>



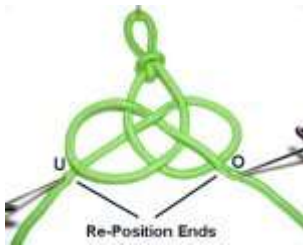
**IMPORTANT:** Look at the image above, on the **right** (the Josephine knot when completed).

### The two ends exit the knot in a specific way:

- The left end exits the knot from OVER the left loop.
- The right end exits the knot from UNDER the right loop.

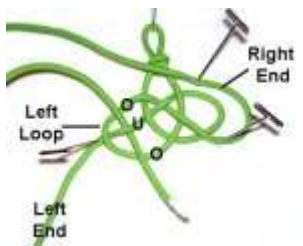
In the next step, you will **re-arrange the ends**. Refer to the photo as needed to help you see the change.

## Creating The Shell



Re-position the ends so the left end passes **under** the bottom of the left loop.

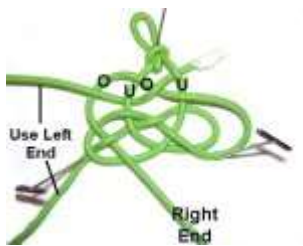
The right end should pass **over** the bottom of the right loop.



Bring the **right end** up and across to the left side of the Sea Turtle Pendant design, rotating counter-clockwise near the loop at the top.

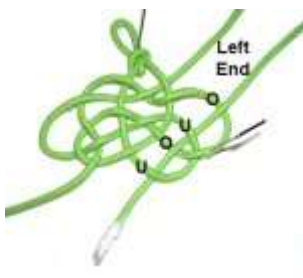
Direct it down to the **left loop** of the Josephine knot. Weave it **over - under - over** the three segments.

**Design Tip:** Notice that I left plenty of space on the right side of the Sea Turtle Pendant shell design. I secured the right end close to the right loop of the Josephine Knot. You should do the same, and avoid tightening anything at this point.



Bring the **left end** up to the top and weave it **over - under - over - under** the four segments, moving left to right.

**The two loops of the Josephine Knot are below the area you weave the cord through.**



Bring the same end (left) down to the lower right area of the Sea Turtle Pendant. Weave through the four segments **over - under - over - under**.

Note that you are passing through the right loop of the Josephine knot. **It helps if you spread the loops out before you do the weaving.**

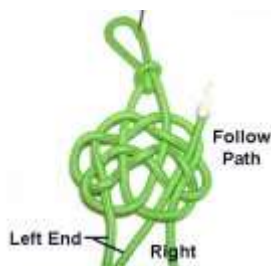




Tighten and balance the knot, so it's as round as you can make it. Leave enough room so you can double it.

Make sure the head of the Sea Turtle is small. The space between the Slipknot and the shell should be as small as possible, too.

## Double the Shell Design



Direct the **left** end to the place where the right end comes out of the knot.

Use it to **follow the path** of the **right** half of the cord, until you get to the top of the shell.

Pause temporarily to start this process with the other end.



Use the **right** end to **follow the path** of the **left** half of the cord, to the top of the shell.

Now you can continue, using each end fill in the rest of the shell.



Make sure you keep everything flat, and work slowly. The ends should be at the **top** when you finish.

Use your needle nose pliers or tweezers if you find your fingers can't do the job.

## Creating the Limbs



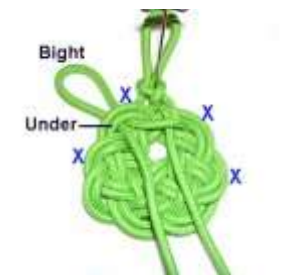
Take the right end and pass it through the space just below the Slipknot (head).



Turn the Sea Turtle Pendant over, so you are working at the **back** of it.

Cross the end that's now on the right over the left.

The **X** marks the areas that bights will be passed through in the following steps (for the limbs).



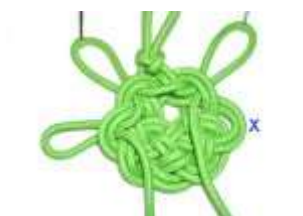
Use the end that's now on the left to make a bight. Direct it under the two loops in the **left upper area** of the shell.

Adjust the bight so it's slightly larger than the head.



Use the other end and make a bight. Pass it under the two loops in the **right upper area** of the shell.

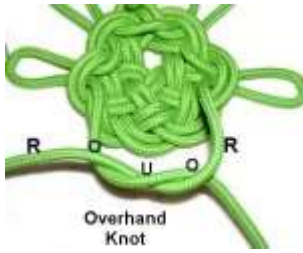
Adjust it so it's the same size as the first limb.



Repeat this process lower down.

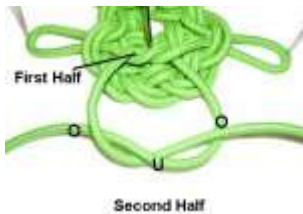
Make sure you direct the bights through the loops **just below** the areas where the first limbs are.

## Finishing the Sea Turtle Pendant



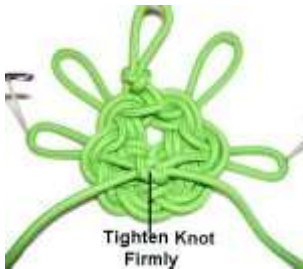
Secure the bottom limbs to your board, after you have adjusted the size of all four limbs.

Tie an Overhand, by passing the right end **over, under, over** the left as shown. Tighten the knot and secure it.



Tie another knot, using the same end, which is now on the left.

Pass it **over, under, over** the other end.



Tighten the knot firmly. Apply glue under the knot so it sticks to the back of the shell. Put a weight on it, or use a clip, to hold the knot to the shell while the glue dries.

Cut off the excess material. For Paracord, melt the ends with a flame to prevent unraveling.

There's a small opening in the shell, between the front and back limbs. You can add a cord there, to form a necklace. You can see the opening in the image above. Just tie an Overhand Knot in the center of a cord. Pass both ends through the opening, so the knot rests in the back of the shell. The ends are then used to make the necklace.

The images below show you another way to add a cord to make a necklace with the Sea Turtle Pendant.



Tie an Overhand knot in the center of a new cord. The crossing point should be at the top, or the back if you are holding it.



Slip it over the head of the turtle, so the crossing point is in the **back**. Tighten it securely.

Now you can use the two ends to make the necklace.

# Stone Cradle



**Description:** This Stone Cradle is a simple way to hold polished stones that do not have even surfaces. There is a knotted loop at the top for hanging from your favorite necklace design. The charm at the bottom is optional. You can use a variety of knots, but I found that Alternating Half Hitches worked best for this pendant design.

The best material for this Micro-Macrame pendant is cotton or hemp, less than 1mm thick. **Nylon will slip off the stone.** In the image above, I used 0.75mm cotton Embroidery cord.

For the images below, I used 1mm waxed cotton to help you see the details better. **Try to use material with no wax, if possible.**

## Supplies Needed:

- **0.5 to 1mm cord material**
- **One polished stone**
- **Charm (optional)**
- **Tape Measure**
- **Project board and Pins**

## Knots Used:

- [Alternating Half Hitch](#)
- [Half Hitch Patterns \(with Core\)](#)
- [Overhand Knot](#)

**Step 1:** Cut 2 cords, 36 inches long. Prepare the ends by applying glue to the tips.

If you decided not to use a charm for your Stone Cradle, just tie an Overhand knot in the center of the both cords, **linking them together.**



Slide the two cords through the ring on the charm, matching the ends so they fold in half. Organize the four cords vertically in front of you and mentally number them 1 - 4.

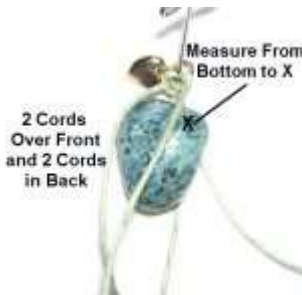
Tie a Half Hitch with cord 4, onto the two in the middle (2 and 3). Tighten the knot firmly.

**Half Hitch Instructions:** Bring the working cord **over** and **under** the cords holding the knot. Pass it **over** the working cord as you pull it to the side.



Tie a second Half Hitch with cord 1, around the cords in the middle (2 and 3).

Tighten the knot firmly.



Place the stone so the bottom is next to the charm. Arrange cords 2 and 3 under the stone, and 1 and 4 on top.

Measure the distance between the charm and the spot just above the curve at the bottom of the stone (shown by the X). That's where the first knots will rest.

**Design Tip:** The stone I used was 1 inch tall, and the distance from the charm to the first knot was 1/8 inch. You can just divide the stone height by 4 to get the correct distance, but it's a good idea to double check by placing the stone as described.



**Step 2:** Tie a Half Hitch with cord 3 (right) onto cord 2 (left), rotating clockwise.

**Tighten it at the spot you came up with in the last step.**

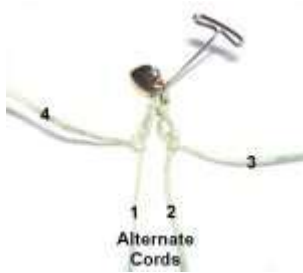
Remember that the cords will stretch somewhat, so it needs to come up just past the bottom curve of the stone.



**Step 3:** Tie the next Half Hitch with cord 2 (left), onto cord 3 (right), rotating counter-clockwise.

Tighten both knots as much as you possibly can.

**Step 4:** Repeat steps 2 and 3, using cords 1 and 4. **Make sure the distance between the knots and the charm is the same.**



**Step 5:** Alternate the cords so the next set of knots will be tied with cords 1 and 2, as well as 3 and 4.



Measure the distance between the first set of knots (steps 2 - 4), and the **middle** of the stone.

Tie 2 Half Hitches using the alternated cords, placing them at the point measured. The distance will be almost the same as the first set of knots.



**Step 6:** Place the stone in the cradle, **stretching the material to fit**. Organize the four cord in front of you, at the top of the stone.

Use 1 cord to tie a Half Hitch **around the other three**. Tighten the knot so it rests against the top of the stone.

**It's important that this knot be as tight as possible, so the Stone Cradle won't slip off.**



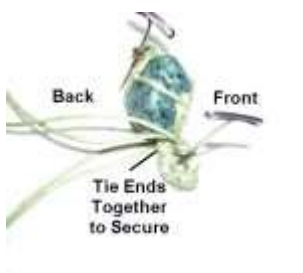
**Step 7:** Select a different cord and tie another Half Hitch around the other three.

It helps if you hold the Stone Cradle and let it dangle while you tie this knot. Before you tighten it, **make sure the first knot is still tight and firm against the top of the stone**.



**Step 8:** Organize the cords 2 right and 2 left. Tie the first knot with the left cords onto the right. The second knot is tied with the right cords onto the left.

Alternate back and forth to make the loop at the top of the Stone Cradle. **A 1-inch sennit will make a loop that's 1/2 inch in size (recommended size)**.



**Step 9:** Make a loop with the sennit. Direct the ends to the **back** of the loop. Tie an Overhand knot with two of them, and apply glue. Do the same with the other two cords. When the glue is dry, cut off the excess material.



# Owl Pendant



**Description:** This Owl Pendant is a fun project suitable for beginners who have experience with the basic Macrame knots.

**Make sure you review the instructions for all the decorative knots listed below, so you know what to expect.**

To change the appearance of this cute Micro-Macrame owl decoration, simply use different colors and beads than what was used in the example. Try using natural colors such as black, white and brown to make a more elegant pendant design.

**Important:** The key to making the stripes as shown in the example is to **organize** the cords in each step, so you don't mix them up. It really helps to apply small pieces of tape on each cord, with their numbers written on the tape.

This Macrame pattern was removed at one point, but by popular demand, I put it back with improved images and text. **It's the same as the original.**

## Supplies Needed:

- 1mm to 2mm cord material (in 3 different colors)
- Project Board and Pins
- 2 Round Beads for eyes (with holes large enough for 2 cords)
- 1 Flat bead for the nose
- 1 Small stick (optional)

## Knots Used:

- [Alternating V Patterns](#)
- [Double Half Hitch](#)
- [Square Knot](#)
- [Larks Head Knot](#)

## Cutting and Mounting

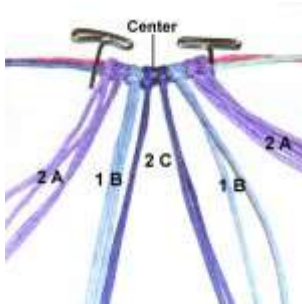
**Step 1:** Cut 1 or more cords that will be used for the necklace that the Owl Pendant will be attached to. You can usually multiply your neck size by 4 to get the proper length, unless you plan to use **complex** knots. In that case, increase

the length of the cords.

Secure the necklace cords to your board horizontally, and mark the center in some manner.

Cut the following cords, at least 32 inches long:

- 4 color A (purple in example)
- 2 color B (light blue)
- 2 color C (dark blue)



Fold each cord in half. Mount them to the holding cords in the following arrangement, with Larks Head knots:

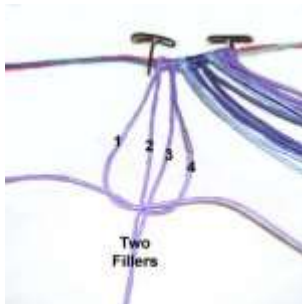
**2 color A, 1 color B, 2 color C, 1 color B, 2 color A**



## The Head

**Step 2:** Organize the cords into groups of four, as in the image above. Mentally number them 1 - 16, moving left to right.

In each group, cords 1 and 4 are the working cords, and the two fillers are cords 2 and 3. **This applies to all the Square Knots in the following steps.**



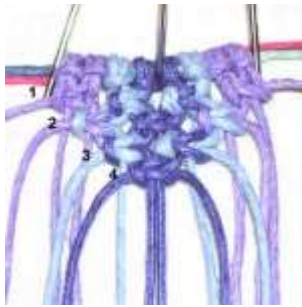
Use the first set of cords (**color A**) to tie a Square Knot (cords 1 - 4).

**Important:** Make sure the fillers are not crossed. The color pattern is dependent on the placement of the cords. So keep the four cords organized at all times.

The remaining 3 Square knots for the **first row** are tied as follows:

- Knot 2: Cords 5 - 8 (color B and C),
- Knot 3: Cords 9 - 12 (color B and C)
- Knot 4: Cords 13 - 16 (color A)

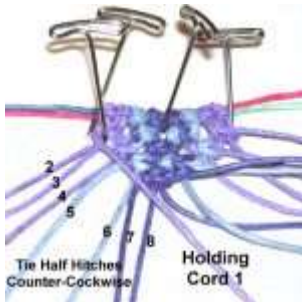
**Make sure the fillers are not crossed when you tighten the Square knots in this row, as well as the next.** Tighten the knots firmly.



**Step 3:** The next **3 rows** of ASK are tied using groups of 4 cords, as follows:

- Row 2: Use cords 3 - 6, 7 - 10, and 11 - 14
- Row 3: Use cords 5 - 8 and 9 - 12
- Row 4: Use cords 7 - 10

**Step 4:** Locate **cord 1** and move it down to the left, against the **left edge** of the V design. Secure it with tension.

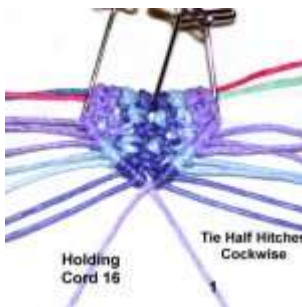


**Organize cords 2 - 8, so they do not cross over each other.** Cords 2 - 4 are color A, followed by 5 and 6, which are color B. Cords 7 and 8 are color C.

Attach each one to the holding cord, with a Double Half Hitch (see below).

These Half Hitches should be tied by rotating **counter-clockwise**, as follows:

Make a loop by passing the working cord **over** the holding cord, and then **under** it. Pull it down, passing **over** a portion of the working cord. Tighten the knot firmly. Tie a second knot the same way, so it rests against the first.

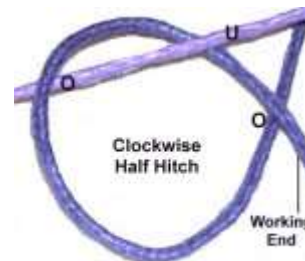


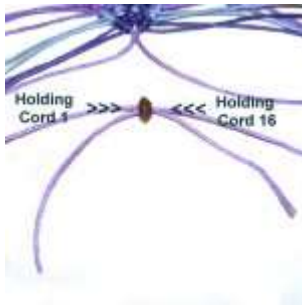
**Step 5:** Move cord 16 along the **right edge** of the V design. Secure it with tension, since it's a holding cord.

**Organize cords 15 - 9, and attach them to the holding cord with DHH (see below).**

These Half Hitches need to be tied in a **clockwise** direction, as follows:

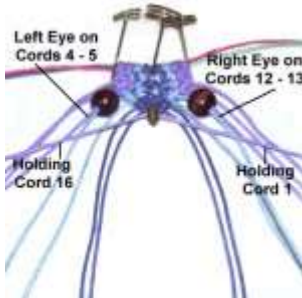
Make a loop by passing the working cord **over** the holding cord, and then **under** it. Pull it down, passing **over** the working cord, just below. Tighten the knot firmly. Tie a second knot, so it rests against the first.





**Step 6:** To attach the beak for your Owl Pendant, pass the holding cords through the flat bead, in **opposite directions**.

Holding cord 1 goes through the hole left to right. Holding cord 16 goes through right to left.

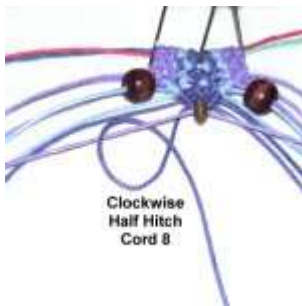


Slide one round bead onto **cords 4 - 5 (left eye)**.

Slide another one onto **cords 12 - 13 (right eye)**.

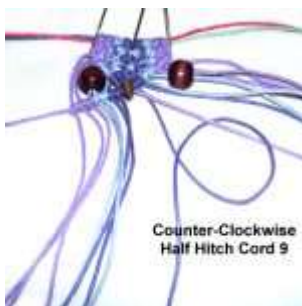
**Step 6, continued:** Move holding cord 16 to the **left**, and secure it on a slight angle as shown in the image above. Holding cord 1 should be secured on the **right**, on the same angle.

It's very important that the lower half of the Owl Pendant is the same on both sides. So secure the holding cords carefully, on the same angle, in each step.



**Step 7: Organize cords 8 - 2**, and attach them to holding cord 16, with DHH. The knots should be tied **clockwise**.

Make very sure you attach the cords in the proper order and **don't crisscross them**. This applies to the wings of the Owl Pendant, too.



**Organize cords 9 - 15**, and attach them to the other holding cord (1) with DHH.

These knots should be tied **counter-clockwise**.



## The Wings

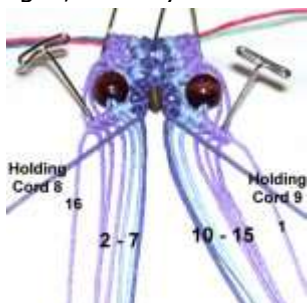
The wings for the Owl Pendant are made with **4 diagonal rows** of Double Half Hitches, similar to what you just did in step 7.

It's important to **organize** the working cords each time, so you attach them **in order**. Otherwise, the color pattern won't work out.

On the left, the DHH should be made rotating **clockwise**. On the right, they are tied **counter-clockwise**. You should tighten all the knots firmly, so the wings look neat.

After you complete one row, the holding cords will become part of the next row, and are considered working cords.

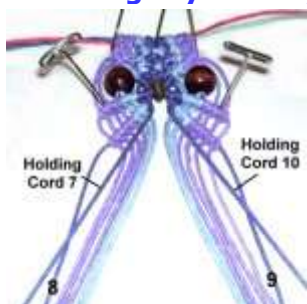
**Step 8:** The holding cords for the first row are 8 and 9, which are at the center, near the beak of the Owl Pendant. Secure cord 8 to the left, and cord 9 to the right, so they have tension.



Attach working cords 7 and 6 to holding cord 8 with DHH. Move the holding cord slightly to the right, to change the angle. Attach cords 5 - 2 and 16.

Attach working cords 10 - 11 to holding cord 9 with DHH. Move the holding cord slightly to the left, and attach cords 12 - 15 and 1.

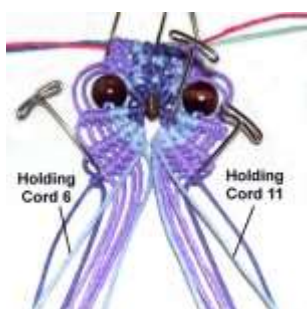
On the left, the new holding cord is 7. The right holding cord is 10. Secure them on the same angle as the previous row. **Change the angle of the holding cords slightly after tying the first two knots.**



Attach working cords 6 - 2 along with 16 and 8 (previous holding cords), to holding cord 7.

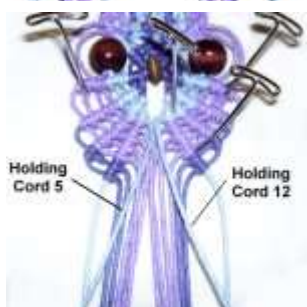
Attach working cords 11 - 15, along with 1 and 9, to holding cord 8.

For the third row, the holding cord on the left is 6, and on the right it's 11. Secure them both, on the same angle as the previous row. **Change the angle after you tie the first two knots.**



Attach cords 5 - 2, along with 16, 8, and 7, to the left holding cord with DHH.

Attach cords 12 - 15, along with 1, 9, and 10, to the right holding cord.

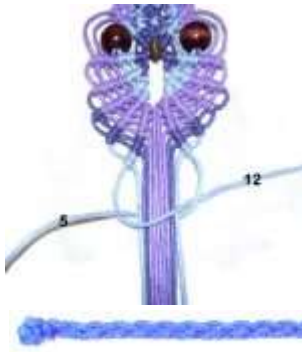


**Step 9:** The final row for the wings of the Owl Pendant is tied with holding cords 5 and 12.

Attach cords 4 - 2, as well as 16, 8, 7, 6 to the left holding cord. Attach cords 13 - 15, as well as 1, 9, 10 and 11, to the right holding cord.

**Change the angle as you progress**, so the holding cords are **almost vertical** when you are finished.





To complete the wings for your Owl Pendant, use the previous holding cords (5 and 12), to tie a Square Knot.

The rest of the cords are the fillers, and should be organized and straight.

## The Tail + Finishing

**Step 10:** You can stop here, and bring **cords 5 and 12** to the **back** of the Owl pendant. Tie a tight Overhand knot with the two cords, similar to step 13 below.

Apply glue and tie another knot. When the glue is dry, cut off the excess material.

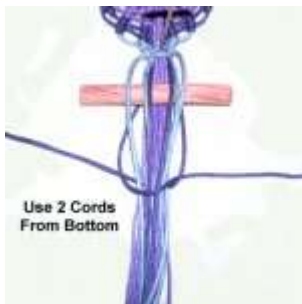
The remaining cords should be trimmed to 1 - 2 inches, for the tail.

To add a stick, follow the instructions below:



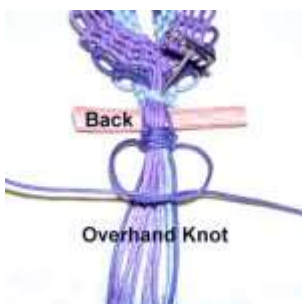
**Step 11:** Locate cords 5 - 7 on the left, and 10 - 12 on the right. Separate them from the others.

Place the stick on top of the remaining cords. Move the six cord on top of the stick.



**Step 12:** Select two cords from the group at the **bottom**, which rest **under** the stick. Use them to tie two **very tight** Square Knots around all the others, which are the fillers.

As you tighten, push the stick up close to the SK tied in step 9. Apply glue and let it dry completely before moving on.



**Step 13:** Flip the Owl Pendant over. Bring the two cords you were just using to the back.

Tie a tight Overhand knot with the two cords. Apply glue and tie another one. When the glue is dry, cut off the extra material.

**Step 14:** Trim the remaining cords to 1 - 2 inches, to form the tail. At the top of the Owl Pendant, use the two necklace cords to make your favorite design.

Make sure the first knots are tied on either side of the head, so it can't move.



# Cross Pendant



**Description:** This Cross Pendant is easy to make and is a suitable project for beginners. This Macrame cross is made with only two types of decorative knots.

You can use any type of cord to make this Micro-Macrame decoration, but it looks better with delicate material (1.5mm to 2mm).

In the example shown, I used **4mm material** to show the details more clearly. I recommend you use material that's [3mm or less](#).

**To see a similar Macrame Pattern, go to the [Beaded Cross](#).**

## Supplies Needed:

- 1.5 to 3mm Cord Material
- Project Board and Pins
- Needle Nose Pliers or Tweezers
- Fabric Glue

## Knots Used:

- [Lanyard Knots](#) (Spiral)
- [Linked Overhand Knots](#) (Shamrock Knot)

## Cut the cords as follows:

- 4 cords, each at least 40 inches long

## Shamrock Knot

To form a base for the Lanyard knots, you will need to tie a [Linked Overhand Knot](#).

The technique I chose for the Cross Pendant is called the [Shamrock knot](#), but a [Rosendahl's Bend](#) works well too.

**The ends need to rest in four different directions**, if you prefer to start with a different knot.



**Step 1A:** Make an Overhand Knot in the middle of one 45-inch cord.

The crossing point needs to be at the **top**.

Don't tighten the knot just yet.



**Step 1B:** Pass a second 45-inch cord **through** the first Overhand Knot.

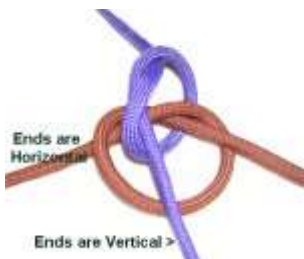
Center it by matching up the ends, so there is an **equal amount at the top and bottom**.

It should pass **over** at the bottom and **under** the crossed area at the top.



**Step 1C:** Complete the **second** Overhand knot by bringing the upper segment downward (over) the crossed area of the first knot.

The crossing point for the second knot needs to be at the **bottom**, and rest **inside** the first knot.



**Step 1D:** Turn the **second** Overhand knot sideways, so the ends are heading **vertically**.

The ends of the **first** knot should be **horizontal**.



# Horizontal Arms

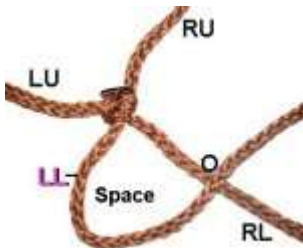


**Step 2:** Secure the Shamrock knot to your board, with the ends arranged in four directions.

Place the design so it forms an X shape, so it matches the Lanyard knots.

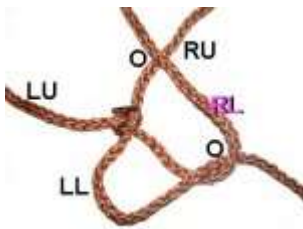
Mentally label the ends as follows:

- **LU = Left Upper**
- **LL = Left Lower**
- **RU = Right Upper**
- **RL = Right Lower**



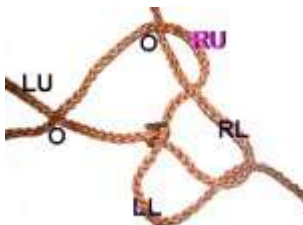
Curve the **left lower** end toward the right, so it passes over the **right** lower end.

Secure it to your board. Make sure you leave a space for the fourth end to pass through.



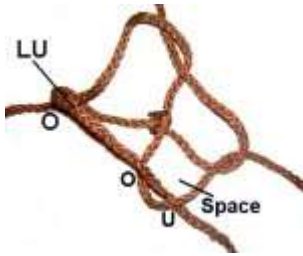
**Step 3:** Direct the **right lower** end upward, so it passes over the right **upper** end.

It should automatically pass over the left lower end as you move it.



**Step 4:** Direct the **right upper** end to the left, passing over the **left** upper end.

It should automatically pass over the right lower end as you move it.



**Step 5:** Direct the left upper end down to the space you left in step 2.

Make sure you pass into the space from the **top, which is over - under.**



**Step 6:** Tighten the first Lanyard Knot as much as you can.

The Cross Pendant looks best if the knots are tight and compact.



**Step 7:** Continue to tie more Lanyard knots until the sennit measures 2 inches.

The knots will be stacked on top of one another as you tie them, and the sennit will get taller as you progress.

**Design Tip:** You can secure the sennit to your board easily by placing the pin through it on an angle.



**Step 8:** The horizontal arms for the Cross Pendant need to be similar at both ends. So now you need to make another Shamrock knot, but with some changes.

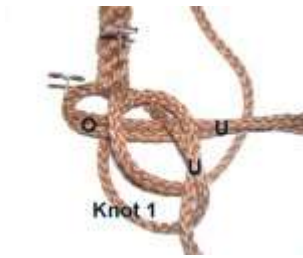
Direct two ends to the right and secure them.



**Step 9:** Bring **one** of the other ends down and **over** the secured ones, **rotating clockwise.**

Pass it **under** the secured end before you complete the first Overhand knot.

The crossing point should be on the **right.**



**Step 10:** Take the remaining end and bring it **over** the secured ends. Direct it **through** the first knot, so it passes **under** the crossing point.

As you rotate it **counter-clockwise**, bring it **under** the secured ends.



**Step 11:** Complete the second Overhand knot, so the crossing point is on the **left**. Turn it sideways and tighten it.

As you tighten the **first knot**, apply fabric glue. Allow it to dry and cut off the excess material.



This is what the **horizontal arms** of the Cross Pendant will look like when you are through.



## Vertical Portion



**Step 12:** Repeat Step 1A - 1D to make a Shamrock knot, using the other two cords.

Repeat Steps 2 - 7 to make another Lanyard knot sennit, but stop when it's **1-inch in size**.

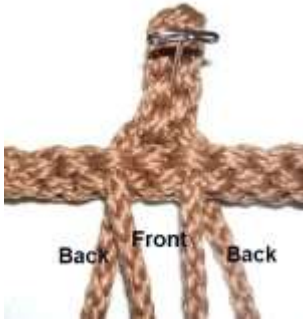


**Step 13:** Secure the **first** sennit on your board horizontally, next to the **new** one, which should be vertical.

Use your pliers to pull two of the ends through **two different loops** at the **CENTER** of the first sennit.



**Design Tip:** I found it was better to bring the ends through loops along the **outside** of the horizontal sennit.



**Flip the Cross Pendant over**, and do the same with the other two ends. This way there are two cords in the front as well as the back, as shown.

Pull on all four ends until the second sennit is right up against the horizontal arms.

**Step 14:** Re-secure the vertical portion to your board, so the next set of knots can stack as before. They will rest on the opposite side of the horizontal arms.

Tie a series of Lanyard Knots to create the lower vertical portion of the Cross Pendant. The first knot should be **tight**, resting against the bottom of the horizontal arms.

Stop when the sennit is at least 1.5 inches. You can make it longer if you wish.

**Step 15:** You now have several options to consider, to finish off the ends:

You can tie the second Shamrock knot like you did in steps 8 - 11.

You can also use both ends together and tie a completely different type of knot for the bottom of the cross.

Another option is to add beads to the four ends, and let them dangle.

You can also apply fabric glue to the last Lanyard knot, and cut off the excess when it's dry.

**Step 16:** Once the Cross Pendant is completed, simply pass cords for the necklace through it near the top of the 1-inch segment (step 12).



# Beaded Cross



**Description:** The Beaded Cross is similar to the [Cross Pendant](#), listed separately. This Micro-Macrame design features Lanyard knots, which allow seed beads to be added to the cords.

This Macrame pendant is rated **Moderate**, because the material used is very thin and the small beads a challenge to work with.

Cotton Embroidery cord and glass E-beads were used in the example shown,

## Supplies Needed:

- **1mm cord materials**
- **Beads with 1mm holes**
- **Project Board and pins**
- **Fabric glue that dries clear**

## Knots Used:

- [Lanyard knots](#) (Spiral)
- [Overhand knot](#)
- [Linked Overhand Knots](#) (Shamrock Knot)



## Horizontal Arms

The first step in making the Beaded Cross is to work on the horizontal portion (arms).

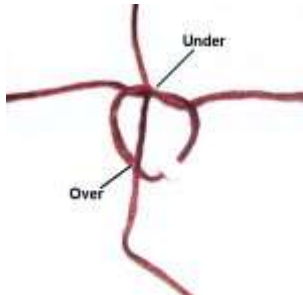
You'll be tying a **Shamrock Knot**, which is two Overhand Knots linked in a specific way.

Other decorative knots can be used, but need to result in **four ends heading in different directions.**

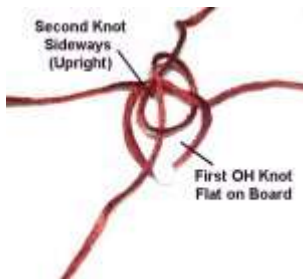


**Step 1:** Cut 4 cords, each at least 25 inches long. Prepare the ends with glue to stiffen the material, to make beading easier.

Place a bead in the center of one cord. Make an Overhand knot, but **don't tighten it**.



**Step 2:** Pass a second cord through the Overhand knot, so it's **under** the crossed area and **over** the curve at the bottom.



**Step 3:** Bring the top half of the second cord down, and complete the Overhand knot. Turn the second knot upright and sideways.

The first Overhand knot should rest **flat** on the board.

Tighten both knots **firmly**.

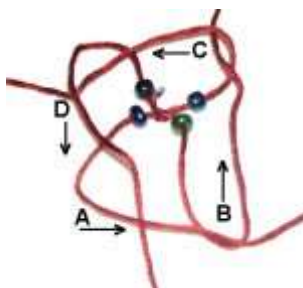
**Design Tip:** You will create the horizontal arms for the Beaded Cross first, followed by the vertical portion. You can make them any size, as long as the two portions are balanced.



**Step 4:** The knot you just tied should rest below the first bead.

Add four more beads, 1 on each end. Slide them close to the first bead.

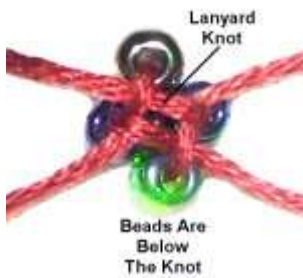
**Design Tip:** Now you will make the [Lanyard knots](#). If you don't understand the directions below, click on the link to view the page, which has more information.



**Step 5:** Arrange the ends to form an X shape. **Curve** cord A (lower left) to the **right**, passing over cord B (lower right).

Move cord B **upward**, passing over cord C (upper right).

Move cord C **left**, over cord D (upper left). Bring cord D **down**, passing through the curved area of cord A.



**Step 6:** Tighten the Lanyard knot slightly, so it's balanced.

**Pick up** the four end to let the beads **dangle**. Gravity will hold them in place while you tighten the knot further.

**The beads need to rest below the knot as shown.**



**Step 7:** Now you will need to turn the design so the first bead is at the bottom. Secure it to your board.

Tie at least one more Lanyard knot, **without beads**, to secure the first knot. You can add another knot if you want the beads separated.

**Step 8:** Continue on, repeating steps 4 - 7, until the first half of the the Beaded Cross is the size you want.

I recommend you make the arms **2 inches in size**, and make the **vertical** portion a total of 4 inches (**step 9 - 10**).



**Important:** There needs to be an **even number** of bead groups.

In the example, there were 8 groups.

The vertical portion was secured between groups 4 & 5. This way the two sides were balanced.

To finish the end, add a bead to one cord. Combine it with one other, and tie a regular Overhand knot. Do the same with the other 2 cords.

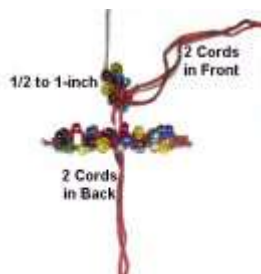
Apply glue and cut off the remaining material when it's dry.



## Vertical Portion of Cross

**Step 9:** Start the vertical portion of the Beaded Cross by following step 1 - 7, using two **new** cords. Stop when the sennit measures **1/2 to 1-inch in size**.

**For a cross over 4 inches tall, make the top section longer.**



Position the horizontal portion on top of two cords. The other two go over the front.

Fit the cords between the beads, so the horizontal arms are the **same size** on both sides.

Tie the ends together with a **tight** Overhand knot to connect the two parts.



**Step 10:** To make the lower vertical portion of the Beaded Cross, start by placing 4 beads on each cord.

Secure the finished sections so they are upright. You can hold them between your knees if that's easier.

Arrange the cords to form an X, and continue tying 1 - 2 Lanyard knots, followed by beads.

**Step 11:** To finish, add a final bead to one cord. Combine it with another cord and tie a tight Overhand knot. Do the same with the other two cords. Apply glue while tightening these knots. When it's dry, cut off the excess material.

To add cords for the necklace, tie an Overhand knot, fitting it around the top of the Beaded Cross. Tighten it firmly. **It's best if you attach one cord at a time.**

## Heart Pendant

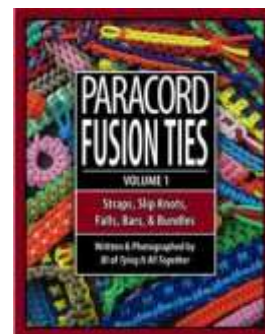


**Description:** This Heart Pendant features the woven elements common to all Celtic knots. It's easy to make and will look great on many types of Macrame necklace designs.

To make a small Celtic heart, use 1mm to 1.5mm material. For a heart over 1-inch, use 2mm to 3mm material. In the example shown, I used 3mm nylon Paracord.

This heart design can be found on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, under the name "Big Celtic Heart".

Click on the image or link to visit the site, and view the **video tutorial** for this design, as well as many other interesting knots.



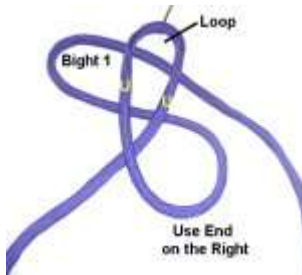
To practice just the pendant, you need one cord, at least 36 inches long.

To make a necklace after the pendant is finished, increase the length by adding what you need for the necklace.



**Step 1:** Make a loop in the **center** of the cord, crossing **left over right**.

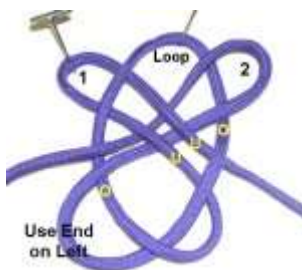
The first time you create the Heart Pendant, make the loop at least 1-inch in size.



**Step 2:** Fold the end on the **right** to form a **bight**.

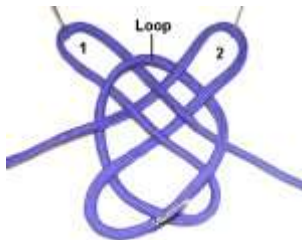
Arrange it so it rests **under** the loop, on an angle as shown.

Enlarge the first loop slightly (see image below).



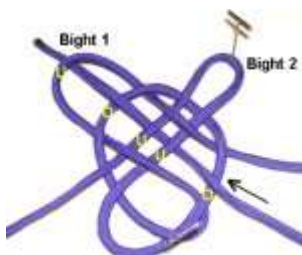
**Step 3:** Fold the end on the **left** to form the second bight.

Weave it through the first loop, by passing **over** the left segment, **under** the **two** in the center, and **over** the right segment.



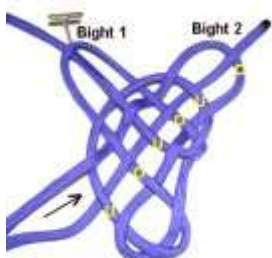
**Step 4:** Balance the design by pulling on the lower area, which will move the top of the loop down.

Spread all areas so you have room for the weaving.



**Step 5:** Use the end on your **right** to weave through the **middle of Bight 1**.

Pass the end **over - under - under - over - under**, moving **right to left**.



**Step 6:** Use the end on your **left** to weave through the **middle of Bight 2**.

Weave **under - over - under - over - under - over**, moving **left to right**.



**Step 7:** Tighten the Heart Pendant by pulling on the bottom area first, to decrease the size of the first loop.

Reduce the size of each bight, including the weaving.

You can leave some space, or tighten the design completely.

## Star Pendant



**Description:** The Star Pendant features the decorative knot called the [Zipper Sennit](#). You will tie short chains of zippers, followed by a transition called an elbow. This causes the design to change directions, which forms the angles for the star.

This Micro-Macrame project is easy to make and fun for the holidays. By using very fine material (0.5mm to 1mm thick), you can use this design to make a pair of very unique earrings.

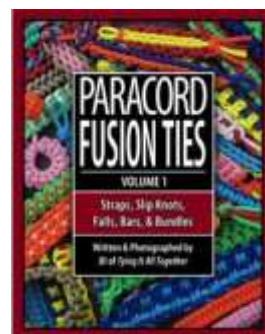
To make this Macrame star for use as a pendant, I recommend 2mm material, as shown in the image above.

Using 4mm material will make the star the appropriate size for a holiday ornament, as in the images below.

I found this design on the [Fusion Knots](#) website, under the name [DeAna Star Sinnet](#).

Click on the image or link to visit this site.

The knot gallery contains a wide variety of combination knots and techniques, all described in [video tutorials](#).



## First Zipper Sennit

**Preparation:** Cut one cord, at least 3 yards long if using material 2mm size (or



finer) to make the Star Pendant. For heavier material, you need at least 4 yards.

Prepare the ends of the cord using a method most suitable for the material you are working with. For Paracord or Satin, melt the ends with a flame.

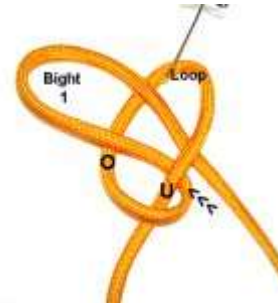
### Step 1



<< Make a **loop** in the center of the cord, crossing **left over right**.

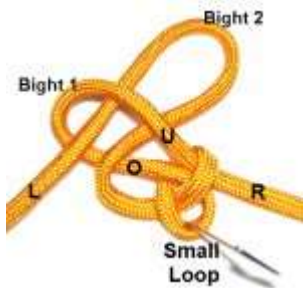
Fold the end resting on the **right**, to make **bight 1**. >>

Push it through the loop from below (**under - over**). >>



**Step 1, continued:** Pull on the **bight** to tighten the loop **slightly**, but leave some space for now.

Mentally label the ends **where they are resting now**, on the right and left.



**Step 2:** Fold the **left** end to form **bight 2**. Pass it through bight 1 from the top, which is **over - under**.

Pull on the **right** end to tighten **bight 1** first. Leave a small loop at the bottom as shown.

Pull on **bight 2** to tighten it, and then the **left** end to make it smaller.



Fold the **right** end to make **bight 3**. Pass it through bight 2 from the top (**over - under**).

Pull on the **left** end to tighten **bight 2**.

Tighten **bight 3** by pulling on it, and then reduce the size by pulling on the **right** end.



<< Fold the **left** end to make the **4th bight**. Pass it through bight 3, and tighten it as you did in the previous steps.

**Bight 5** is made with the **right** end. Pass it through bight 4 and then tighten it. >>



This completes the first Zipper Sennit for the Star Pendant. Each time you repeat the process, you will form a total of **5 bights**, similar to what you just did.

You can change this number if you wish, but make sure you tie an odd number of bights, such as 7, 9, 11, etc. You must also be **consistent** all the way through the design.

The next step is called a **transition**. It's formed with a bight, but is different from the regular zippers.

**A transition is not counted as part of the zipper sennits.**

## Right to Left Transition



**Step 3:** Use the **right end again**, and fold it to form another bight.

Pass it through bight 5 from **below (under - over)**. It should be **horizontal**.

**Important:** The only time you pass the bight through under - over is at the transitions. When you make the Zipper sennits, it's always over - under.

**Step 3, continued:** Make sure the right end is at the **top**, and nothing is twisted. Follow the steps below to tighten the transition:



<< Tighten **bight 5** first, by pulling on the segment at the **lower right**.

Pull **firmly** on the **new** bight, and then reduce the size by pulling on the right end. >>



## Next Zipper Sennit



**Step 4:** To start the next Zipper sennit for the Star Pendant, fold the left end to make bight 1.

Pass it through the transition vertically, **over - under**.

Tighten by pulling on the right end, followed by bight 1, and then the left end.

**Important:** Start counting the bights **after** the transition is completed, so you don't include it in the count.

Remember that you make **a total of 5 bights** in each section of the Star Pendant, unless you have previously decided to change the number.



**Bight 2** is made by folding the **right** end. Pass it through bight 1 **over - under**.

Try to arrange it **horizontally**, so the corner is sharp.

Tighten by pulling on the left end, followed by bight 2, and then the right end.

**Step 4, continued:** The next step is to make **bight 3** with the **left** end.

**Bight 4** is made with the **right** end.



Since you started on the left to make bight 1, the **5th bight** will be made with the **left** end.

The transition is then made left to right, following the instructions below.

---

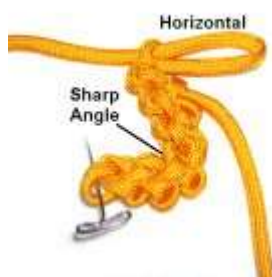
## Left to Right Transition



**Step 5:** Form the bight for the next transition in the Star pendant.

Pass it through **bight 5** from **below (under - over)**.

Pull on the area indicated at the lower left, to tighten bight 5. Pull on the transition bight firmly, and then the left end.



After you tighten the transition, make sure the bight is horizontal.

The previous Zipper sennits for the Star Pendant should be manipulated to form a sharp angle.

---

## Design Details



**Step 6:** Repeat the process to make the rest of the Star Pendant design, alternating directions each time.

You need a total of 10 zipper sennits to create the star.

For this next Zipper sennit, bights 1 and 5 are made with the right end. This is similar to step 2.

<<< Transition



The transition will be made moving **right to left**, with the **right** end. This is the same as step 3.

Make sure you pass the bight through **under - over**, the same as all the other transitions.



Start and End with Left Cord

The next section of Zipper Sennit starts and ends with the **left** end.

This is the same as step 4.

Transition >>>



The next transition is made with the left end, the same as step 5 (**left to right**).



**Step 7:** I'm sure you understand the process by now, so just continue on, until you have **10 sections** of Zippers. Be sure to count the **sennits**, not the angles.

The last section should begin and end with a bight made by the **left end**.



## Finishing Touches



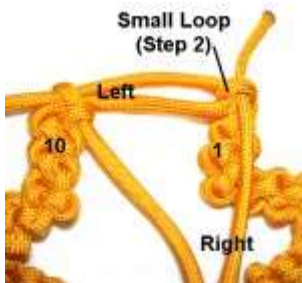
**Step 8:** Pull the **left end** out of the last bight you tied for the 10th sennit.

Don't remove the entire bight. As you pull the end, it will be moving left to right.



**Step 9:** Pass the **left end** through the small loop you made in section 1 (step 2). Enter it from the front.

Bring the end back to the left, and direct it through bight 4 (section 10), where you pulled the end out in the last step.



Pass the right end through the small loop in section 1 (step 2), from the front.

Pull both ends to tighten the top of the Star Pendant.



**Step 10:** Arrange the various segments and angles as needed to form the star shape.

The best way to finish off the ends is to slide them through the back of the knots in the upper area.

Another option is to attach other cords to them, for the necklace. A button knot in that area looks good, too.

## Loop Weave Bracelet



**Description:** The Loop Weave Bracelet features one of the Celtic Mat designs called the Basket Weave. I decided to change the shape, pulling out four loops in the corners of each knot.

Beads should be used to decorate this Micro-Macrame bracelet, to separate the knotted areas. In the example shown, I used Satin cord material and painted wood beads. The closure was a simple loop-button clasp.



If you decide to use Satin material, do not put pins through it, since it's delicate. Instead, **lean** the pins over the cord, or use the [Cross-Pin Technique](#).

This bracelet design is easy enough for beginners to make, provided you have practiced the knots used in this pattern.

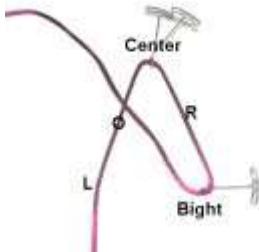
### Supplies Needed:

- **1mm to 2mm cord material**
- **Beads with holes large enough for 2 cords**
- **One button for the clasp**
- **Project board, pins, tape**
- **Fabric glue that dries clear**

### Knots Used:

- [Celtic Mat \(Basket Weave variation\)](#)
- [Overhand Knot](#)

**Step 1:** Cut 1 cord, at least 72 inches long (2 yards). Prepare the ends with glue and allow it to dry, before tying the first knot in the Loop Weave bracelet. Secure the **center** of the cord to your project board.



Make a long bight with the **right half**, so the fold is 3 to 4 inches below the center (top).

Make sure it passes **over** the left half of the cord as you bring it up to the top left area.



**Step 2:** Make a bight with the **left half**, passing **over** and **under** the two segments of the right cord.

Mentally label the left and right portions of each bight (see next photo).





**Step 3:** Flip the left side of each bight over the right side, creating two long loops.

The crossing point should be arranged **close to the top** of the knot.



**Step 4:** Cross the right loop over the left loop. Curve them both slightly so they are tilted as shown.

**Make sure they are wide and open, so you can see the details clearly.**



**Step 5:** Weave the end that's now on the right, down through the center of the right loop, which is now tilted towards the left.

The cord should pass **over - under - under - over** the four segments.



**Step 6:** Weave the left end down the center of the other loop, which is now tilted towards the right.

Pass it **under - over - under - over - under** the five segments.

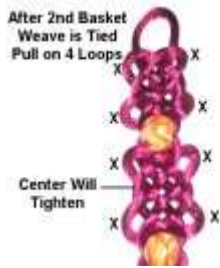
**Step 7:** Tighten the knot **in the order the loops were made**, starting at the center. It should be about 1 inch in size when you are done.

**Design Tip:** It's important to make the knots in the Loop Weave bracelet as small as possible, so the design has a delicate appearance.



Make sure the first loop (top center) is the appropriate size for the button used for the clasp.

Pass both ends through a bead in **opposite directions**. This will help prevent the knot from being pulled out of shape.



**Step 8:** Repeat steps 1 - 7 to make the next knot. After the second one is tightened, pull on the four loops at the corners of the first knot.

The central portion will tighten as you do this. The loops can be any size.

**Design Tip:** It's important to pull on the four loops as you progress, rather than wait until the Loop Weave bracelet is finished. **Make sure you tie one knot, then tighten the one previously made.**



**Step 9:** Repeat Steps 1 - 8 until the bracelet is the size you need.

Pass both ends through the shank in the button, in opposite directions, as you did the beads. Make sure it fits the loop at the other end.

Apply glue **on the shank**. Tie an Overhand knot with the two ends, tightening it firmly, so it rests on the glue.

**Step 10:** Turn the Loop Weave Bracelet over, and tie a second Overhand knot, applying the glue close to the shank. When the glue is dry, cut off the extra material.

(OPTIONAL) If you wish, you can give all the loops you pulled another tug, tightening the center of each knot even more. When they are as you want, apply a thin coat of glue to the **back** center portion of the knots. The glue will help prevent the knots from loosening as the bracelet is worn.

**Glue will darken Satin material permanently, so keep that in mind if you decide to use it in this manner.**

## Woven Cross Bracelet



**Description:** The Woven Cross Bracelet has elements similar to those of the [Celtic Cross](#).

The loops on each side of the woven design represent the arms of a cross. There are crisscrossed areas above and below the arms.

This Celtic bracelet is easy to make, and is a suitable Micro-Macrame project for beginners. You can also use this design to make a necklace or a belt. The clasp is a simple loop - button closure, which can be changed if you prefer something else.

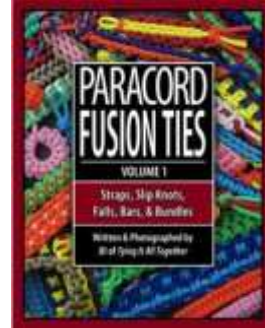
In the example shown, I used **Satin** cord, which I recommend. **Paracord** is another great option.

I found this design on the [Fusion Knots](#) website.

Click on the image to go visit the site.

Go to the knot gallery and you will find this pattern near the bottom of the page (**Woven Celtic Cross**).

A **video tutorial** is available.



### Supplies Needed:

- 2mm cord material in **2 colors**
- One button for clasp -- **optional**
- Project Board and pins
- Tape
- Fabric Glue that dries clear



## Preparation and Loop

**Step 1:** For bracelets up to 7 inches, cut 1 cord of each color, 60 inches long. Larger sizes require more material.

Prepare the cords by applying glue to the tips. For Satin and Paracord, you should heat the tips to prevent unraveling, before adding the glue.

In the images, color A is **dark blue**, and color B is **light blue**.

**Step 2:** The four images below show you how to make the loop at one end of the Woven Cross Bracelet.

At the other end, a button is attached.





<< Form a loop in the center of one cord (color A), crossing the ends right over left.

<< Pass the color B cord through the loop, over - under as shown.

Bring the left portion over the **front** of the crossed area, and the right portion over the **back**. >>



<< Tie a Half Knot by moving the **right half** of color A to the left, **over** color B and **under** the other half of the color A cord.

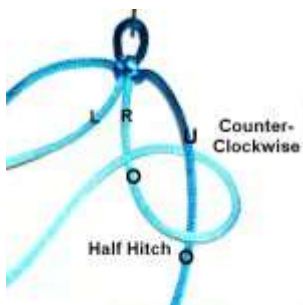
Bring the **left half** of color A **under** color B and **over** the right half of the color A cord. >>



**Step 3:** Adjust the size of the loop so the button fits through it, and then tighten the Half Knot firmly.

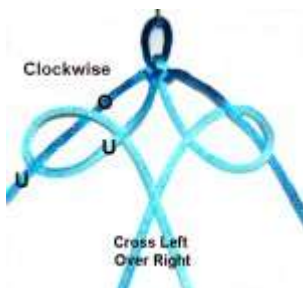


## Woven Celtic Cross Design



**Step 4:** Rotate the **right** half of the **color B** cord **counter-clockwise**, passing **over - under** the color A cord next to it. (Half Hitch)

As you pull it left, the end should pass **over** to make the crossing point of the loop.



**Step 5:** Rotate the **left** half of the **color B** cord **clockwise**, passing **under - over** the color A cord next to it. (Reverse Half Hitch)

As you pull the end right, it should pass **under** to make the crossing point of the loop.

**Step 6:** Tighten both knots, and cross the left half of the **color B** cord over the right half.

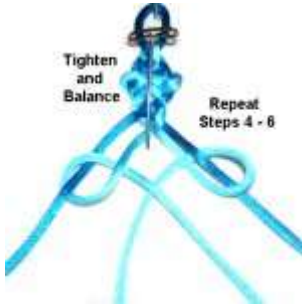
When describing the crossing of cords for the Woven Cross Bracelet, I refer to the ends **where they are currently resting** (right or left).



<< Move the ends of the **color A** cord **over** color B on the right, and **under** color B on the left.

Cross the left end over the right.

Just below, repeat with **color B**, passing over and under color A, before crossing the ends. >>



Tighten and balance the first design, so it resembles the image at the top of the page.

**Step 7:** Repeat steps 4 - 6 several times, until the Woven Cross Bracelet is the size you want.



## Finishing + Clasp

**Step 8:** Before you complete the clasp, you should tie a **Square Knot** to secure the last cross design. The best place is after **step 6**.

Use color A as the working cords and color B as the fillers. Apply glue to the **fillers** before tightening the Square knot (so it's on the inside of the SK).



Fold the **color B** cords to the **back** of the Woven Cross Bracelet.

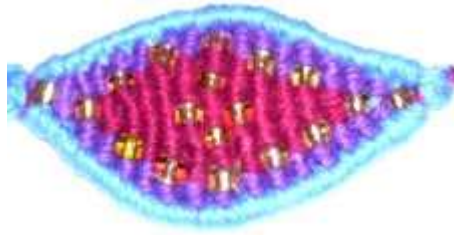
Apply glue under them and use a clip to hold them against the back of the the last cross design. When the glue is dry, cut off the excess material.



Pass the ends of the color A cord through the shank of the button, in **opposite directions**.

Tie a tight **Overhand knot** to secure the button, once it's positioned where you want it. Apply glue to the shank during tightening. When it's dry, cut off the extra material.

## Beaded Eye Bracelet



**Description:** The Beaded Eye Bracelet features the classic decorative knot called the [Double Half Hitch](#).

The **strap** for this Micro-Macrame bracelet can be made with a number of knotting techniques. Visit the **Learn Macrame** section to find instructions for various knots to choose from.

Use a knot that can be tied to produce either a sennit (chain), braid, or bar. Make sure it can be tied with **4 cords**.

The eye design shown above needs to be finished so it's comfortable, since it's supposed to rest against the skin. So make sure you use **fabric glue** for this Macrame project.

In the example shown, I used cotton Crochet cord, since you need **flexible** material for this design. Glass E-beads are part of the pattern, but you can choose any style, as long as they are small.

The closure is a simple bead clasp, which can be changed to a [Sliding Clasp](#).

#### **Supplies Needed:**

- 2mm **flexible** cord material
- 18 small beads
- **Project Board and pins** (small size that can be rotated easily)
- One bead for clasp -- **optional**

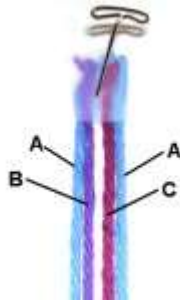
#### **Knots Used in Pattern:**

- [Double Half Hitch](#)
- [Reverse Larks Head](#)
- [Interlaced Plaits](#) (or other knot for strap)
- [Overhand knot](#)
- [Square knot](#)



## **Preparation**





Cut four cords, each **at least** 36 inches long. Secure them vertically to your board.

Increase this length if you choose to use a decorative knot other than a simple braid, for the strap of the Beaded Eye Bracelet.

In the example shown, color A is **blue**, color B is **purple** and color C is **wine**.

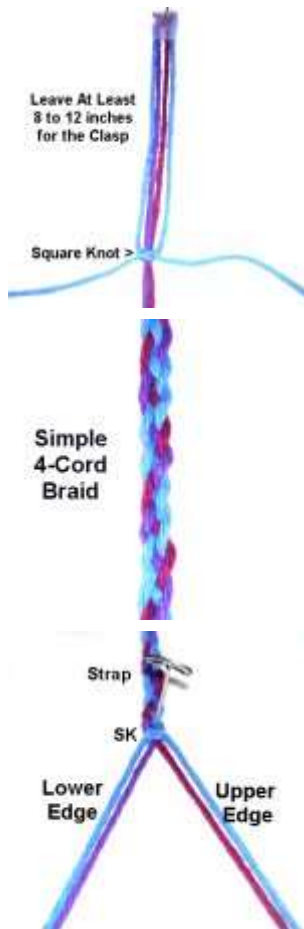


## First Half of Strap

Move down **at least** 8 to 12 inches below the secured ends, so you have plenty of material for the clasp.

Begin the strap by tying a **Square knot**.

A simple 4-cord braid was tied for the Beaded Eye Bracelet shown. See [Interlaced Plaits](#) for braiding instructions.



Determine your wrist size with a tape measure. The bracelet fits **against the skin**, so measure as if you were wearing it.

**Subtract 2.5 inches** for the eye. Divide the result by two, and tie the first half of the strap to that size.

Tie a **Square knot** to complete the strap.

Secure the strap to your board. Separate the four cords as shown, and secure them so they have tension.

These long holding cords form the upper and lower edge of the eye. (Look at the image at the top of the page, where you can see the edges, which are blue).

From this point on I will call these long cords the **top** or **lower edge**.

I'll be describing the cords attached to them as **holding cords**.

The **working cords** and **beads** are attached to the holding cords.



## First Half of Eye Design

While working on the Beaded Eye Bracelet, you should try to tie all the Double Half Hitches **horizontally**.

You do this by **rotating the board** rather than the bracelet. You can arrange it diagonally if that's easier for you.

Cut 17 cords of **Color A**, each at least 8 inches long (holding cords). Prepare the

ends with **glue** and/or beeswax.

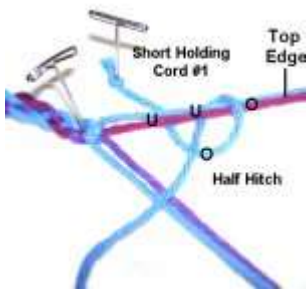
Before it dries, roll the end between your fingers to make the tip as small as possible (for beading).

Another option is to use a **wire threader**:

Fold a piece of fine wire in half and slide both ends through the bead. Place the end of the cord through the wire, close to the fold. Pull on the ends of the wire, which will draw the cord through the bead.



It will be a tight squeeze, but flexible cord can get through very small holes this way.



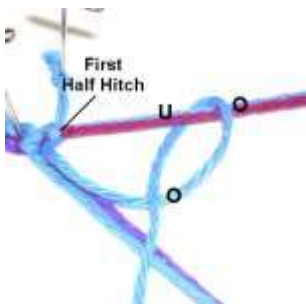
**Step 1:** Rotate the board as shown, with the strap on your left. Secure the **1st holding cord** to your board. Slide it **under** the two for the top edge.

Tie a Half Hitch by making a loop, **over - under - over** as shown.

As you tighten it, move it as close to the strap as possible (left).

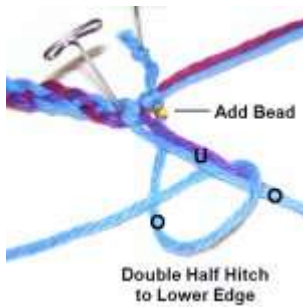
### Important Tips:

- **Always** start by moving the short holding cords **under** those for the top edge. When you attach the cords to the lower edge, do the same thing.
- Slide the knots close to the others, just before tightening.
- When you tighten the first Half Hitch, pull it **firmly**. The second knot will be tighter if you do this. The knots for the Beaded Eye Bracelet need to be neat and uniform.
- The arrangement of the beads can be changed. In this example, they were added every other row.



Tie another Half Hitch, placing it to the right of the first.

**Two knots = 1 Double Half Hitch (DHH)**



Add one bead to holding cord 1.

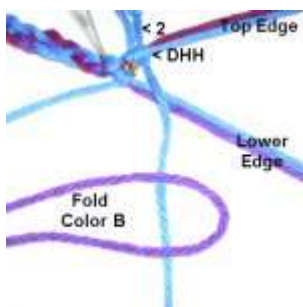
Move cord 1 **under** the long cords for the **lower edge**, and then attach it to them with a Double Half Hitch.

Remember, you can **turn the board** so the knots for the Beaded Eye Bracelet are horizontal.

**Step 2:** You will now be adding the **working cords**, by attaching them to the **8-inch holding cords** with a **reverse** Larks Head knot.

Cut 1 **color B** cord, 38 inches long (purple)

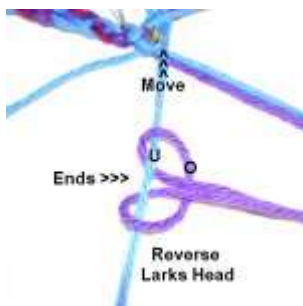
Cut 2 **color C** cords, 35 inches long (wine)



Secure the **2nd holding cord** to the right of the first one. Attach it to the top edge with a DHH, as described in step 1.

Fold the **color B** cord in half and place it **on top** of holding cord 2.

The folded area should be on the right, with the ends on the left.

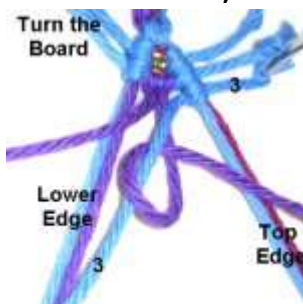


To complete the reverse Larks Head knot, bring the ends of the color B cord **under** the holding cord. Pass them **over** the folded area.

**Before tightening the knot**, move it between the top and lower edges, next to the bead.

**Step 3:** Attach the **3rd holding cord**, as you did the others, to the top edge of the Beaded Eye Bracelet.

**Turn the board**, so the working cords are vertical.



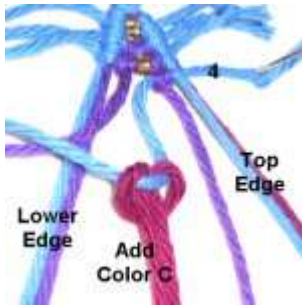
Attach the **right** half of the working cord to the holding cord with a DHH.

**Add a bead** to the holding cord, and then attach the **left** half.

**Important:** I moved the holding cord on an angle, only to show the details more clearly. **It should be horizontal as you tighten the knots.**

**Design Tip:** You do not need to secure each holding cord as you tie the knots for this area of the Beaded Eye Bracelet. You can simply hold them with your left hand, while tying the DHH with your right. This way you can control the tension.

**Step 3, continued:** Turn the board to its original position, and attach the holding cord to the lower edge. Pull firmly so the cord is straight.



**Step 4:** Attach the **4th holding cord** to the top edge with a DHH.

Attach the **right color B** cord to the holding cord with a DHH.

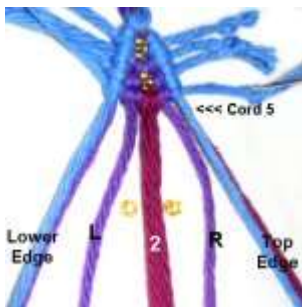
Add one **color C** cord with a reverse Larks Head knot.

Attach the **left color B** cord with a DHH.

**Step 4, continued:** Slide the holding cord under the two for the lower edge.

Pull firmly on holding cord 4, so it's **straight**. In the image above, it's on an angle only to show the details.

Attach cord 4 to the lower edge, as you did the others.



**Step 5:** Attach the **5th holding cord** to the top edge of the Beaded Eye Bracelet.

Attach the right color B cord, followed by a bead. Next are the 2 Color C, followed by a bead, and then the left color B cord.

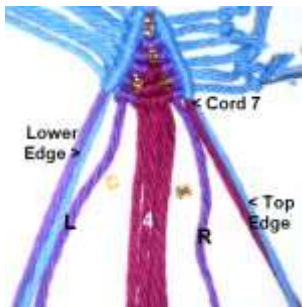
Attach the holding cord to the lower edge. Pull firmly, so it's straight.



**Step 6:** Attach the **6th holding cord** to the top edge.

Attach the four working cords to it with DHH.

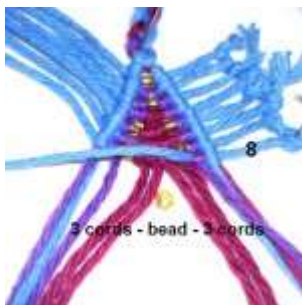
Attach the holding cord to those for the lower edge, as you did the others.



**Step 7:** Attach the **7th holding cord** to the top edge of the Beaded Eye Bracelet.

Attach the right color B cord, followed by a bead. Next are the 4 Color C, followed by a bead, and then the left color B cord.

Attach the holding cord to the lower edge.

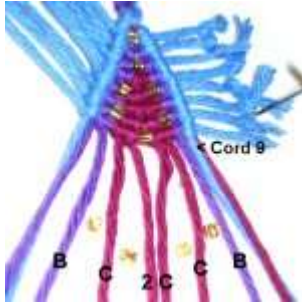


**Step 8:** Attach the **8th holding cord** to the top edge.

Attach the **first 3** working cords to the holding cord.

Add a bead, and then attach the other 3 working cords.

Attach the holding cord to the lower edge.



**Step 9:** Attach the **9th holding cord** to the top edge.

Attach the cords and beads as follows:

Color B -- bead -- color C -- bead -- 2 color C -- bead --  
- color C -- bead -- color B.

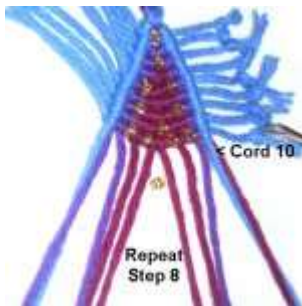
Attach holding cord 9 to the lower edge

This completes the first half of the Beaded Eye Bracelet. You will be **dropping cords** to make the second half, so it resembles the first half.

The best way to drop cords is to cut each one shorter. Push it under the knotted portion of the eye. The rest of the cords are used to tie the knots.



## Second Half of Bracelet



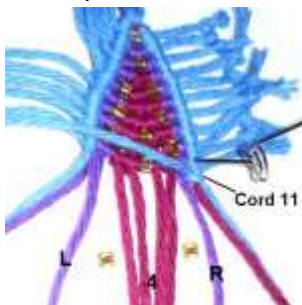
**Step 10:** Attach the **10th holding cord** as you did the others, to the top edge of the Beaded Eye Bracelet.

**Repeat step 8**, which is 3 cords, followed by a bead, and then the other three cords.

**Important:** Remove the pins from the long cords for the top and lower edge of the Beaded Eye Bracelet. You will need to move them towards each other as you progress.

The long cords for the top and lower edge have been moved to the sides in the images below, to show the details.

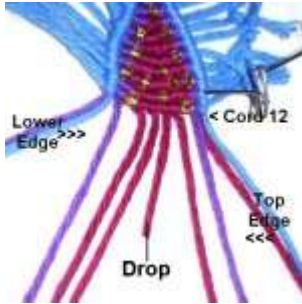
They need to be moved **towards the inside of the eye**, so both edges will curve. By the time you get to step 19, the four long cords should be resting side-by-side.



**Step 11:** Attach the **11th holding cord** to the top edge of the Beaded Eye Bracelet. The long cords should be vertical.

**Repeat step 7.** Attach the holding cords to the cords for the lower edge, which should be vertical.



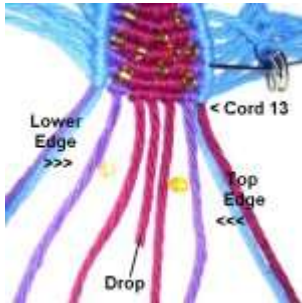


**Step 12:** Cut one **color C** cord to 2-inches. **Drop it from the group** by moving it under the first half of the eye.

Attach holding cord 12 to the upper edge, moving the long cords to the left slightly to increase the curve.

The remaining 5 working cords should be attached to the holding cord with DHH.

**Step 12, continued:** Attach the 12th holding cord to the lower edge, curving that side of the design, too.

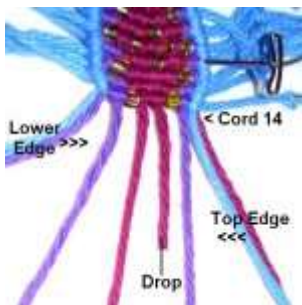


**Step 13:** Attach cord 13 to the upper edge, increasing the curve by moving the long cords to the left.

Cut 1 **color C cord** to 2-inches, and drop it from the group. Attach the remaining working cords as follows:

Right color B -- bead -- 2 color C -- bead -- left color B

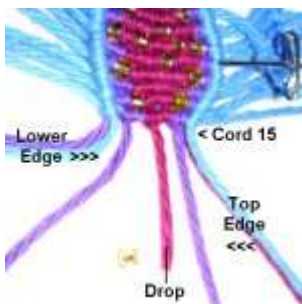
**Step 13, continued:** Attach the holding cord to the lower edge, moving the long cords to the right, to increase the curve on the left side of the Beaded Eye Bracelet.



**Step 14:** This is where you need to curve the top and lower edges inward sharply. When you attach holding cord 14, direct the long cords on a **diagonal** slant towards the center of the eye.

Drop 1 **color C** cord, and attach the remaining three to the holding cord.

Attach holding cord 14 to the lower edge, curving it inward sharply, too.



**Step 15:** Attach holding cord 15 to the cords for the top edge, which should be diagonal.

Drop the last **color C** cord as you did the others. Attach the two color B cords to cord 15, with a bead between them.

Attach the holding cords to those for the lower edge, which should be diagonal.

**Step 16:** Attach holding cord 16 to the top edge of the Beaded Eye Bracelet.

Drop one **color B cord**, and attach the other one to the holding cord with a DHH.

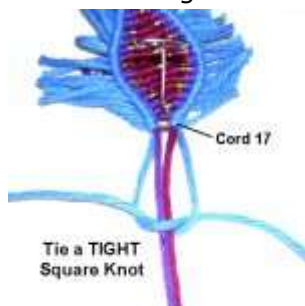
Attach holding cord 16 to the lower edge.

**Step 17:** Attach the last holding cord (17) to the top edge.

Drop the last **color B cord**, and apply only a bead.



Attach holding cord 17 to the lower edge.



**Step 18:** Organize the four long cords for the edges.

Use them to tie a Square Knot, which will close the eye design.

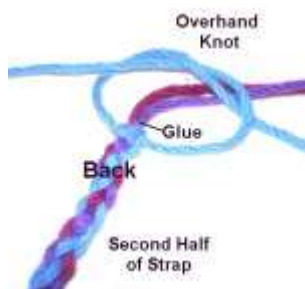
**Step 19:** Tie the **second half of the strap**, the same length as the first half.

Measure carefully, so the Beaded Eye Bracelet will be balanced.

Finish it by tying a Square Knot.



## Finishing Process

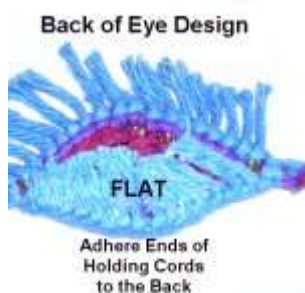


**Step 20:** Turn the strap over so you work in the **back**.

Finish off the two working cords from the Square Knot by using them to tie a **tight** Overhand knot.

Apply glue close to the back of the Square Knot, so it's on the inside when the knot is tightened. Let the glue dry and cut off the two ends. **The remaining two cords are used for the clasp.**

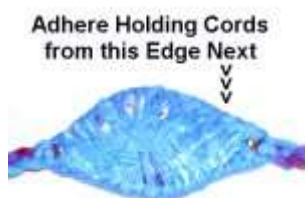
**Step 21:** Trim the **working cords** that were dropped to 1-inch. Apply glue to each one and adhere them to the **back** of the design. Hold them flat while the glue dries.



Trim the ends of the **holding cords** to 1-inch. Push those along the lower edge to the **back** of the eye design.

Apply fabric glue to each one, and adhere them to the eye so they are flat. Press firmly while the glue dries.

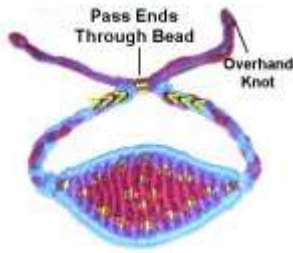
They will rest on top of the working cords already present. **Make sure they are arranged neatly.**



**Step 22:** Move the holding cords for the top edge to the back, and adhere them with glue. They will rest partially over the ends already present.

Add plenty of glue and press them down firmly, so they are flat while drying. **They should be neatly arranged.**

**Let the glue dry completely before moving on.**



**Step 23:** To make a simple bead clasp, pass the two cords from each end of the strap through a bead.

Make sure they pass through in **opposite directions**.

Pull the ends to **close** the Beaded Eye Bracelet. Move down at least 3 inches and tie Overhand knots at the tips. Apply glue while tightening, and more on the outside of the knots.

## Spiral Bracelet



**Description:** The Spiral Bracelet is a Micro-Macrame design featuring the Half Hitch Spiral, which is very easy to tie. There is a sliding bead clasp, which makes this Macrame bracelet adjustable. The thickness of the bracelet can be changed, simply by using more or less holding cords.

I recommend you use cord materials that are soft and comfortable, like the Cotton Embroidery cord I used in the example.

When using beads for decoration, try to find the smallest beads you can, with holes suitable for the material you use. The bead used for the clasp needs to have a hole large enough for all the holding cords to fit, **from both ends**.

Remember the cords will be compressed, so the hole size can be smaller than you expect. In the example shown, I had a total of 12 cords through the bead, which had a 4mm hole.

### Supplies Needed:

- **1mm cord material**
- **Small beads for decoration (optional)**
- **One bead for clasp**
- **Project board, pins, tape**
- **Fabric Glue that dries clear**

### Knots Used:

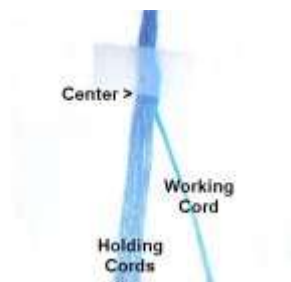
- [Half Hitch Spiral](#)

- [Overhand knot](#)

Size of Bracelet	Working Cord	Holding Cords (Width)
6 - 7 inches	2 yards x 1	24 inches x 6 (3mm)
7 to 8 inches	2.5 yards x 1	26 inches x 7 (3.5mm)
8 to 9 inches	3 yards x 1	28 inches x 8 (4mm)

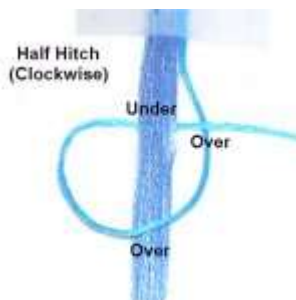
Determine your wrist or ankle size, and cut the cords to the lengths in this chart.

If you want to change the thickness of the Spiral Bracelet, simply change the number of **holding cords**. The cords will **overlap**, so take that into account.



**Step 1:** Arrange the cords vertically, matching the centers. Place a piece of tape across the cords horizontally, so the bottom is at the center.

Make sure the working cord is on the right.



**Step 2:** Tie the first Half Hitch by passing the working cord **over** the holding cords, **under** them, and **over** the portion of the working cord on the right. Tighten the knot so it rests next to the tape.



**Step 3:** To encourage the knots to spiral, rotate the working cord after you have tied 5 more knots.

**You bring the cord to the left, then rotate under the holding cords, moving back to the right.**



**Step 4:** Continue on, tying more knots for the Spiral Bracelet, until the design measures 1/2 inch.

**OPTIONAL:** Add a small bead to the working cord, and then continue for another 1/2-inch.

**Step 5:** When the Spiral Bracelet is **half the size** you plan to make, select one of the **holding cords** to make the final knots.



Tie a Half Hitch with the holding cord, around **ALL** the other cords, **including the working cord**. Apply glue close to the last knot tied, before tightening.

Tie an Overhand knot with the working cord and this same holding cord.



**Step 6:** Turn the bracelet design around, and go back to the center. Start the second half by adding a bead, if you decided to use them.

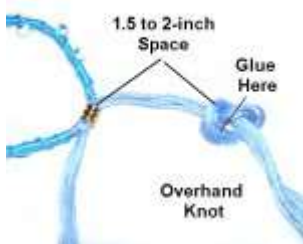
Repeat what you did for the first half (steps 2 - 5). Stop when the Spiral Bracelet is the size you need.



**Step 7:** Trim the holding cords so the ends are even. You can cut off what's left of the working cord and the holding cord used in step 5, but the others should be part of the clasp.

To make the clasp, pass the holding cords through the bead in **opposite directions**.

The easiest way to slide multiple cords through a bead is to use a **cord threader**. Use a piece of fine wire, folded in half. Pass the ends through the hole in the bead. Put the group of cords through the area near the fold. Pull on the **ends**, which will bring the wire through the bead, along with the cords.



**Step 8:** Pull the ends of the Spiral Bracelet, so the clasp is in the **closed position**.

Leave a 1.5 to 2-inch space, and tie a **loose** Overhand knot with all the cords in one group working together.

**Check to make sure your hand fits through when you open the bracelet.**

Tighten the Overhand knot firmly. Apply glue before tightening. When the glue is dry, cut off the extra material.

Repeat this process with the other group of cords.

















